

英语语法实践指南

(第五版)

郭凤高 编著

復旦大學 出版社

内 容 简 介

本书按英语语法项目分类,以单项填空形式,设计了名词与主谓一致、代词、形容词和副词、动词的时态和语态、虚拟语气、动词的非谓语形式等 16 个项目。全书除语法各项目、词的用法和日常交际用语外,还增加了近两年全国部分省、市高考英语试卷语法和词汇部分的试题,因此本书包含了中学英语全部语法和重要的语言现象,覆盖面广,练习充分,针对性极强,是广大英语学习者很好的语法实践指导书。

前 言

语法是从语言实践中总结出来的规律,并非是哪一位语法家闭门编写出来的。因此,学习语法不能脱离语言实践。但有些人,尤其是自学者,往往只爱看书而不愿做练习,以为只凭看书和记规则,就可以学会英语。他们不知道通过练习,可以发现和纠正错误。而另有一些人,尤其是准备考试的学生,往往只喜欢做练习而忽视了认真看书。多做练习固然可以检查水平和发现不足,但缺乏正确的理论指导就无法将各方面的知识融会贯通起来,结果只能是事倍功半。编写本书的目的就是想把语法理论和语言实践结合起来,以优化学习效果。

本书共分16章,1—15章每章包含三个部分。第一部分为“十年高考真题”(含1998—2007年全国高考题、上海高考题及北京、上海春季高考题);第二部分为“解题指导”;第三部分为“分类练习”。透过“十年高考真题”,读者可以了解历年高考命题要求和推测今后高考命题的动向。“解题指导”是对中学生应掌握的重点语法项目进行简明扼要的归纳、总结,内容丰富翔实,论述清晰透彻,通过认真阅读,定能大大提高解题能力。“分类练习”是作者根据多年的教学经验精心编写的,其内容新颖、重点突出、覆盖面广,有利于巩固所学知识。第16章选用近两年全国部分省、市高考英语试卷语法和词汇部分的试题,通过练习,让广大学生对各地高考要求有个粗略的了解。

《英语语法实践指南》第五版保留了第四版的一切优点,并对其中的某些不足之处作了调整和修改,同时也吸收了当代语言的新现象和语法研究的新成果,因此,在内容上更加充实。

书中若有欠妥之处,敬请专家、同仁与读者批评指正。

郭凤高

2007年7月于上海

目 录

第一章 名词和主谓一致	1
第一部分 十年高考真题	1
一、全国高考题	1
二、上海高考题	1
三、上海春季高考题	2
第二部分 解题指导	3
(一) 名词的数	3
1. 不可数名词	3
2. 可数名词规则的复数形式	4
3. 可数名词不规则的复数形式	5
4. 复合名词的复数形式	6
5. 单复数同形的名词	7
6. 特殊的复数形式	8
(二) 名词所有格	9
1. 表示有生命的名词的所有格	9
2. 表示无生命的名词的所有格	10
3. 名词作定语修饰名词	11
4. 双重所有格	12
(三) 主谓一致的三个原则	13
1. 语法形式上的一致	13
2. 意义上的一致	13
3. 就近一致	13
(四) 主谓一致原则的具体应用	14
1. 名词作主语	14
2. 由连接词连接的名词作主语	17
3. 代词作主语	18
4. 数词、量词作主语	20
5. 名词化的形容词作主语	24
6. 从句作主语	25

第三部分 分类练习	26
第二章 冠词和数词	32
第一部分 十年高考真题	32
一、全国高考题	32
二、上海高考题	33
三、北京春季高考题	34
四、上海春季高考题	34
第二部分 解题指导	35
(一) 冠词的用法	35
1. 冠词的位置	35
2. 不定冠词的用法	36
3. 定冠词的用法	38
4. 不用冠词的情况	43
(二) 数词的用法	48
1. 基数词的构成和用法	48
2. 序数词的构成和用法	49
3. 其他几种数词的构成和用法	50
第三部分 分类练习	50
第三章 代词	54
第一部分 十年高考真题	54
一、全国高考题	54
二、上海高考题	55
三、北京春季高考题	56
四、上海春季高考题	57
第二部分 解题指导	58
(一) 代词的种类	58
1. 人称代词	58
2. 物主代词	60
3. 反身代词	61
4. 疑问代词	62
5. 指示代词	62

6. 不定代词	64
7. 复合不定代词	71
8. 关系代词	73
(二) 限定词与限定词之间的搭配	74
1. 限定词的搭配位置	74
2. 限定词的搭配关系	75
3. 限定词搭配的跨类现象	75
第三部分 分类练习	76
 第四章 形容词和副词	 79
第一部分 十年高考真题	79
一、全国高考题	79
二、上海高考题	80
三、北京春季高考题	82
四、上海春季高考题	82
第二部分 解题指导	83
(一) 形容词	83
1. 形容词的构成	83
2. 形容词的作用	84
3. 形容词后置的几种情况	85
4. 形容词既可前置也可后置的几种情况	86
5. 多个形容词作修饰语时的排列顺序	87
6. 复合形容词的构成	89
(二) 副词	90
1. 副词的构成	90
2. 副词的位置	90
3. 副词的作用	92
4. 某些副词有两种形式, 两种含义	93
5. cannot too 的特殊含义	93
6. 注意下列几组容易混淆的词	94
(三) 形容词和副词的比较等级	98
1. 比较级和最高级的构成	98
2. 表达比较含义的几个特殊结构	100

3. 比较级的用法	101
4. 比较级的比较对象要明确	102
5. than 后接句子时的省略情况	102
6. 比较时须把自身排除在比较范围之外	103
7. 用于修饰比较级的词	103
8. 用形容词比较级构成的短语	104
9. than 在一些常见词组中的用法	104
10. 表示倍数比较的三个句型	107
(四)形容词和副词的最高级	108
1. 最高级的用法	108
2. 用于修饰最高级的词	108
3. 用形容词最高级构成的短语	108
第三部分 分类练习	109
 第五章 情态动词	115
第一部分 十年高考真题	115
一、全国高考题	115
二、上海高考题	116
三、北京春季高考题	117
四、上海春季高考题	118
第二部分 解题指导	119
(一)情态助动词	119
1. can 和 could 的用法	119
2. may 和 might 的用法	122
3. must 和 have to 的用法	124
4. ought to 的用法	126
5. shall 和 should 的用法	126
6. will 和 would 的用法	128
(二)半情态助动词	130
1. dare 和 need 的用法	130
2. used to , had better , would rather 的用法	132
(三)情态助动词 + 不定式的完成式	133
1. could + 不定式的完成式	134

2. may/might + 不定式的完成式	134
3. must + 不定式的完成式	134
4. needn't + 不定式的完成式	135
5. should + 不定式的完成式	135
6. will + 不定式的完成式	135
7. ought to + 不定式的完成式	135
第三部分 分类练习	136

第六章 动词的时态和语态	140
第一部分 十年高考真题	140
一、全国高考题	140
二、上海高考题	143
三、北京春季高考题	145
四、上海春季高考题	147
第二部分 解题指导	148
(一) 动词的时态	148
1. 一般现在时的用法	149
2. 一般过去时的用法	151
3. 一般将来时的用法	152
4. 现在进行时的用法	154
5. 过去进行时的用法	156
6. 将来进行时的用法	157
7. 现在完成时的用法	158
8. 过去完成时的用法	161
9. 将来完成时的用法	162
10. 过去将来时的用法	163
11. 现在完成进行时的用法	164
(二) 被动语态	165
1. 各种时态的被动语态	165
2. 一些特殊的被动结构	165
3. 主动形式表示被动意义	167
4. 某些动词不能构成被动结构	168
第三部分 分类练习	169

第七章 虚拟语气	178
第一部分 十年高考真题	178
一、全国高考题	178
二、上海高考题	178
三、上海春季高考题	179
第二部分 解题指导	179
(一) 虚拟语气用于条件状语从句	180
1. 表示与现在事实相反	180
2. 表示与过去事实相反	180
3. 表示与将来事实相反	180
4. if 的省略	180
(二) 一些特殊的虚拟条件句	181
1. 错综时间条件句	181
2. 虚拟条件句中可含有陈述语气的从句	181
3. 含蓄条件句	181
4. 虚拟语气在简单句中	183
(三) 虚拟语气在某些从句中的运用	183
1. 虚拟语气用于宾语从句	183
2. 虚拟语气用于表语从句、同位语从句	184
3. 虚拟语气用于主语从句	184
4. 虚拟语气用于 It's (high) time 后的从句中	185
5. 虚拟语气用于定语从句	186
6. 虚拟语气用于 wish, if only, as if(though) 等句中	186
7. 虚拟语气用于 "as if/though + 句子"	187
8. 虚拟语气在 would rather 后接从句的应用	188
9. 虚拟语气在 even if, what if, imagine 引导的句中的应用	188
10. 虚拟语气在 If it were not for 中的应用	189
11. 虚拟语气用于 if 以外的某些连词引导的条件状语从句中	189
12. 虚拟语气用于某些连词引导的条件状语从句和目的状语从句中	189
13. 虚拟语气用于让步状语从句中	190
(四) 虚拟语气用于祝愿及某些固定表达形式	190
1. 虚拟语气用于祝愿	190

2. 虚拟语气用于某些固定的表达式	190
第三部分 分类练习	191
第八章 动词的非谓语形式	196
第一部分 十年高考真题	196
一、全国高考题	196
二、上海高考题	198
三、北京春季高考题	203
四、上海春季高考题	204
第二部分 解题指导	208
(一) 不定式	208
1. 不定式的用法	209
2. 不定式的时态	214
3. 不定式的语态	215
4. 不带 to 的不定式	217
5. 不定式的复合结构 for sb. to do sth. 在句子中的作用	218
(二) 动名词	219
1. 动名词的用法	219
2. 接动名词作宾语的情况	220
3. 动名词的惯用语	221
4. 动名词的复合结构	223
5. 动名词的时态和语态	223
6. 动名词和不定式结构在意义上的区别	224
(三) 分词	226
1. 分词的时态和语态	226
2. 分词的用法	228
3. 现在分词和过去分词作前置定语时的区别	231
4. 接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词分类	232
5. catch 等几个特殊动词接分词作宾语补足语的情况	233
6. 分词与不定式作状语的区别	234
7. 从属连词引导非谓语动词的情况	234
8. with/without 引导非谓语动词及非动词的情况	236
第三部分 分类练习	237

第九章 介词	250
第一部分 十年高考真题	250
一、全国高考题	250
二、上海高考题	250
三、北京春季高考题	251
四、上海春季高考题	252
第二部分 解题指导	252
(一) 介词的分类和介词短语在句中的作用	253
1. 介词的分类	253
2. 介词短语在句中的作用	253
3. 介词后直接接形容词的情况	253
4. 省略介词直接接名词的情况	254
5. It is brave of you to do that. It is easy for you to do that.	254
(二) 注意几个常用介词的用法	255
1. 表示时间 (at, in, on, by, through)	256
2. 表示在附近 (near, by, beside, at)	257
3. 表示地点 (at, in, on)	258
4. 表示除外 (besides, except, except for, but)	258
5. 表示方位 (in, to, on)	260
6. 表示“在.....上/下” (above, over, on, beneath)	260
7. 表示方式 (by, through, with)	260
8. 表示原因 (through, with, from, for, at, due to, owing to, because of, on account of, thanks to)	262
9. 表示价格, 比率, 对比 (at, by, for, against)	263
10. 表示属性, 特性 (of, with)	264
11. 表示比较	265
(三) 注意下列短语中介词的搭配	265
1. 动词 + 介词/副词	265
2. 动词 + 副词 + 介词	267
3. 动词 + 名词 + 介词	267
4. 形容词 + 介词	268
5. 名词 + 介词	268
6. 介词惯用短语	269

第三部分 分类练习	272
-----------------	-----

第十章 简单句	275
---------------	-----

第一部分 十年高考真题	275
-------------------	-----

一、全国高考题	275
---------------	-----

二、上海高考题	276
---------------	-----

三、北京春季高考题	277
-----------------	-----

四、上海春季高考题	278
-----------------	-----

第二部分 解题指导	278
-----------------	-----

(一)陈述句	279
--------------	-----

1. 肯定式	279
--------------	-----

2. 否定式	279
--------------	-----

(二)疑问句	280
--------------	-----

1. 一般疑问句	280
----------------	-----

2. 特殊疑问句	280
----------------	-----

3. 反意疑问句	281
----------------	-----

4. 选择疑问句	287
----------------	-----

(三)祈使句	287
--------------	-----

1. 祈使句的肯定式和否定式	287
----------------------	-----

2. 祈使句的进行式和被动式	287
----------------------	-----

3. 祈使句表条件和让步	287
--------------------	-----

4. 祈使句中保留主语的情况	288
----------------------	-----

(四)感叹句	288
--------------	-----

1. 用 How 引导的感叹句	288
-----------------------	-----

2. 用 What 引导感叹句	289
-----------------------	-----

第三部分 分类练习	289
-----------------	-----

第十一章 复合句	293
----------------	-----

第一部分 十年高考真题	293
-------------------	-----

一、全国高考题	293
---------------	-----

二、上海高考题	296
---------------	-----

三、北京春季高考题	300
-----------------	-----

四、上海春季高考题	302
-----------------	-----

第二部分 解题指导	305
(一) 名词性从句	305
1. 主语从句	305
2. 表语从句	306
3. 同位语从句	307
4. 同位语从句与定语从句的区别	307
5. 宾语从句	308
6. whether 与 if 的用法	309
(二) 定语从句	310
1. 由 who ,whom ,whose 引导的定语从句	311
2. 由 which 引导的定语从句	311
3. 由 of which /whom 等引导的定语从句	311
4. 由 that 引导的定语从句	312
5. 关系代词作表语或宾语补语的情况	313
6. 关系代词的省略	314
7. 由关系副词 when ,where ,why 引导的定语从句	314
8. 准关系代词 as 的用法	316
9. 准关系代词 but 的用法	319
10. 准关系代词 than 的用法	320
11. 复合关系代词 what 的用法	320
12. 复合关系代词 whoever ,whichever ,whatever 的用法	322
13. 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句	323
14. 插入语	324
(三) 状语从句	324
1. 时间状语从句	325
2. 原因状语从句	327
3. 地点状语从句	329
4. 条件状语从句	330
5. 让步状语从句	332
6. 目的状语从句	334
7. 结果状语从句	335
8. 方式状语从句	336
9. 比较状语从句	336

10. 状语从句中省略主语的情况	337
第三部分 分类练习	338
第十二章 it 的用法	348
第一部分 十年高考真题	348
一、全国高考题	348
二、上海高考题	348
三、上海春季高考题	349
第二部分 解题指导	350
(一) 实词(代词)	351
1. 用作人称和前指	351
2. 用作无人称	351
(二) 虚词(助词)	352
1. 作形式主语	352
2. 作形式宾语	352
3. 用于构成强调句型 强调主语、宾语或状语	353
4. 用于强调特殊疑问句	354
5. It is that 用于让步句	354
第三部分 分类练习	355
第十三章 倒装	358
第一部分 十年高考真题	358
一、全国高考题	358
二、上海高考题	358
三、北京春季高考题	359
四、上海春季高考题	360
第二部分 解题指导	361
(一) 完全倒装	361
1. 地点副词或时间副词位于句首时	361
2. 方位副词位于句首时	361
3. 表地点的介词短语位于句首时	362
4. 某些表语位于句首时	362
5. 用于 so nor neither 开头的句子	362

6. 为了保持句子平衡 或为了使上下文紧密衔接时	363
(二) 部分倒装	363
1. 用于三个表示强调的句型中	363
2. 用于 only 开头的句子	364
3. 某些否定词位于句首时	364
4. So, Such 等表程度的副词位于句首时	364
5. 带 To such 表程度的词组位于句首时	365
6. 用于省略 if 的虚拟条件状语从句	365
7. 用于让步状语从句和原因状语从句	365
8. 用于 as 和 than 引导的状语从句	367
9. 用于 the the 结构的主句中	367
10. 宾语置于句首的倒装	367
11. 宾语补足语提前的倒装	367
12. 主语修饰语后置的倒装	367
13. 用于几个特殊结构的让步状语从句	367
14. 宾语从句为直接引语的句子位于句首时	368
15. 用于某些表示祝愿的句子	368
第三部分 分类练习	368

第十四章 词的用法

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题

二、上海高考题

三、北京春季高考题

四、上海春季高考题

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 注意下列几组词语的正确用法

1. likely, probable, possible

2. lost, missing, gone

3. illness, sickness, disease

4. calm, quiet, silent, still

5. wound, injure, hurt, harm, damage, destroy, ruin

6. pleased, pleasant, pleasing, pleasure

7. call , call on , call at , call in , call up , call for	395
8. beach , coast , shore , bank	396
9. at first , first of all , first	396
10. most , mostly , almost , at most	397
11. game , sport , match , contest , competition	397
12. be familiar with , be familiar to	398
13. view , scene , sight , scenery	398
14. rather than , more than , other than , instead of	399
15. value , worth , worthwhile , worthy	402
第三部分 分类练习	404

第十五章 日常交际用语 417

第一部分 十年高考真题..... 417

一、全国高考题 417

二、上海高考题 418

三、北京春季高考题 422

四、上海春季高考题 423

第二部分 解题指导..... 425

(一) 日常交际用语用法举例 425

1. 问好(GREETINGS) 425

2. 道歉(APOLOGIZING) 425

3. 感谢(EXPRESSING GRATITUDE) 426

4. 求助(ASKING FOR HELP) 426

5. 祝愿(GOOD WISHES AND CONGRATULATIONS) 427

6. 同情(EXPRESSING SYMPATHY) 427

7. 问路(ASKING THE WAY) 427

8. 问天气(ASKING ABOUT THE WEATHER) 427

9. 介绍(INTRODUCING PEOPLE) 428

10. 邀请(INVITATION) 428

11. 看病(SEEING A DOCTOR) 428

12. 告别(SAYING GOODBYE) 429

13. 购物(SHOPPING) 429

14. 打电话(MAKING TELEPHONE CALLS) 429

(二) 口语中替代词 do , so , do so , not 和 to 的使用情况	430
1. 替代词 do 的用法	430
2. 替代词 so 的用法	430
3. 替代词 do so 的用法	431
4. 替代词 not 的用法	433
5. 替代词 to 的用法	433
第三部分 分类练习	434

第十六章 近两年全国部分省市高考试题

(语法和词汇部分)	439
一、2006 年	439
1) 全国(1) 2) 全国(2) 3) 天津 4) 重庆 5) 江苏 6) 浙江	
7) 福建 8) 湖南 9) 湖北 10) 广东 11) 安徽 12) 江西	
13) 山东 14) 辽宁 15) 四川 16) 陕西	
二、2007 年	459
1) 全国(1) 2) 全国(2) 3) 天津 4) 重庆 5) 江苏 6) 浙江	
7) 福建 8) 湖南 9) 湖北 10) 安徽 11) 江西 12) 山东	
13) 辽宁 14) 四川 15) 陕西	
参考答案	477
历届全国高考和上海高考单项填空各项语法考查统计表	481

第一章 名词和主谓一致

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (04)1. The teacher , with 6 girls and 8 boys of her class , ____ visiting a museum when the earthquake struck.
A. was B. were C. had been D. would be

答案 1. A

说明 由于从 2004 年开始，“全国高考英语试卷”的使用范围仅限于部分省，本书从 2004 年起的“全国高考题”部分改用“北京高考题”，下同。

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. “ Each of the students , working hard at his or her lessons , ____ to go to university. ”
“ So do I. ”
A. hope B. hopes C. hoping D. hoped
- (99)2. E-mail , as well as telephone , ____ an important part in daily communication.
A. is playing B. have played
C. are playing D. play
- (99)3. Books of this kind ____ well.
A. sell B. sells C. are sold D. is sold
- (01)4. As a result of destroying the forests , a large ____ of desert ____ covered the land.
A. number ; has B. quantity ; has
C. number ; have D. quantity ; have
- (03)5. The young dancers looked so charming in their beautiful clothes

that we took ____ pictures of them.

A. many of

B. masses of

C. the number of

D. a large amount of

(05) 6. Professor Smith , along with his assistants , ____ on the project day and night to meet the deadline.

A. work

B. working

C. is working

D. are working

答案 1. BAABB 6. C

三、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

(00) 1. Every possible means ____ to prevent the air pollution , but the sky is still not clear.

A. is used

B. are used

C. has been used

D. have been used

(01) 2. The ____ is just around the corner and you won't miss it.

A. bicycle s shop

B. bicycle shop

C. bicycles shop

D. bicycles shop

(02) 3. He is the only one of the students who ____ a winner of scholarship for three years.

A. is

B. are

C. have been

D. has been

(03) 4. When and where to go for the on-salary holiday ____ yet.

A. are not decided

B. have not been decided

C. is not being decided

D. has not been decided

(04) 5. The village is far away from here indeed. It's ____ walk.

A. a four hour

B. a four hour s

C. a four-hours

D. a four hours

(04) 6. No one in the department but Tom and I ____ that the director is going to resign.

A. knows

B. know

C. have known

D. am to know

(05) 7. On top of the books ____ the photo album you're looking for.

A. is

B. are

C. has

D. have

答案 : 1. CBDDD 6. AA

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 名词的数

1. 不可数名词

不可数名词一般没有单复数之分, 它包括抽象名词、物质名词和专有名词。例如:

health, advice, glass, wood, English, America

下列名词常用作不可数名词, 因此没有复数形式, 其谓语动词须用单数形式:

advice 劝告	air 空气	baggage 行李
behaviour 举止	bread 面包	butter 奶油
clothing 衣服	damage 损坏	dust 尘土
equipment 设备	fun 乐趣	furniture 家具
glass 玻璃	harm 损害	housework 家务
honesty 诚实	grass 草	homework 家庭作业
ice 冰	luck 运气	money 钱
information 消息	news 新闻	paper 纸
knowledge 知识	sugar 糖	soap 肥皂
progress 进步	traffic 交通	trouble 烦恼
rice 稻, 米, 饭	weather 天气	wealth 财富

注意: ①不可数的物质名词表示个体时, 须用单位名词(量词)来表示其数量概念, 常用的有:

a piece of advice/bread/cake/chalk/cloth/equipment/furniture/information/kindness/land/news/paper/poetry/wood/work

an article of clothing/furniture

a bar of chocolate/soap

a bottle of ink/milk/wine

a cake of soap

a loaf of bread

a pair of glasses/shoes/socks/trousers/scissors

a herd of cattle/deer/elephant(s)

three/five/fifty head of cattle/sheep/horses

注意：②不可数名词可数化的几种情况：

- 不可数名词有了定语(前置定语或后置定语) 动作名词有了逻辑宾语时。例如：

a great help 极大的帮助

a knowledge of grammar 语法知识

a love of freedom 热爱自由

a hatred for invaders 对入侵者的仇恨

- 物质名词表示具体的东西或该物质的数量之多时。例如：

glass 玻璃→glasses 玻璃杯 paper 纸→papers 文件

sand 沙→sands 沙漠 water 水→waters 大片水域

- 抽象名词由抽象概念变为具体的人或物 ,或被形容词或冠词修饰使之具体化时。例如：

youth 青春→a youth 一位青年→youths 年轻人们

pleasure 愉快→a pleasure 一件高兴的事

experience 经验→an experience 一段经历

kindness 友善→a kindness 做一件好事, 帮一个忙

A good knowledge of English is necessary.

很好地掌握英语知识是必要的。

2. 可数名词规则的复数形式

可数名词包括个体名词和集体名词，有单、复数形式。复数名词构成方法如下：

1) 一般情况在名词后加-s。例如：

student→students , horse→horses , hand→hands

2) 以-s, -x, -ch, -sh 结尾的名词后加-es, 读作[iz]。例如:

bus→buses , watch→watches , box→boxes , brush→brushes

但是 :stomach - stomachs

3) 以“辅音字母 + o”结尾的名词后加-es, 读作[z]。例如:

hero→heroes

tomato→tomatoes

Negro→Negroes

potato→potatoes

但不少以-o 结尾的外来词变复数时只加-s。例如：

radio→radios photo→photos piano→pianos ,
有些以-o 结尾的名词有两种复数形式。例如 :

zero→zeros / zeroes 零

volcano→volcanos / volcanoes 火山

mosquito→mosquitos / mosquitoes 蚊子

但以-oo 结尾的名词只加-s。例如 :

bamboo→bamboos zoo→zoos

4) 以“辅音 + y”结尾的名词,把 y 改成 i ,再加-es ,读作[iz]。例如 :

factory→factories country→countries

5) 以“元音 + y”结尾的名词,或以 y 结尾的专有名词,直接在词尾加-s ,读作[z]。例如 :

boys , toys , Germanys , Henrys ,

6) 以-f 或-fe 结尾的名词的复数形式,有以下三种情况 :

①规则变化形式(直接加-s)。例如 :

roof→roofs chief→chiefs gulf→gulfs serf→serfs ,

belief→beliefs proof→proofs safe→safes

②不规则变化(一般把“f”或“fe”改成“v” ,再加-es ,读作[vz])。

例如 :

leaf→leaves life→lives knife→knives shelf→shelves half→

halves loaf→loaves thief→thieves wife→wives

③既有规则变化形式又有不规则变化形式。例如 :

handkerchief→handkerchiefs/handkerchieves

scarf→scarfs/scarves

7) 以-th 结尾的词,直接在词后加-s。在长元音后,“th”读作[ðz] ,在短元音后,“th”读作[θs]。例如 :

mouths[mauðz] , paths[pɑ:ðz] , months[mʌnθs]

但 youths 一词读作[ju:θs]或[ju:ðz]均可。

3. 可数名词不规则的复数形式

1) 改变单数名词中的元音字母,或其他形式。例如 :

foot→feet 脚

goose→geese 鹅

mouse→mice 老鼠

child→children 儿童

ox→oxen 公牛	medium→media 媒体
bacterium→bacteria 细菌	datum→date 数据
analysis→analyses 分析	axis→axes 轴心
basis→bases 基础	crisis→crises 危机

2) 表示“某国人”的名词的单、复数形式因习惯不同而各异。

①单、复数形式相同

{ a Chinese→two Chinese
 { a Japanese→two Japanese

这类词包括所有以 -ese (或 -ss) 结尾的民族名称, 如 Vietnamese, Portuguese, Swiss 等。

②词尾加-s

{ a German→three Germans
 { an American→two Americans

这类词还有 African, Asian, Australian, Canadian, Italian, Belgian, European, Greek, Hungarian, Swede, Arab 等。

③变-man 为-men

{ an Englishman→five Englishmen
 { a Dutchman→four Dutchmen

这类词还有 Frenchman, Irishman 等。

3) 缩写、数词、字母和单词的复数形式在词后加“s”或“s”。例如：

CDs (CDs)	CD 片
Ph Ds (Ph Ds)	哲学博士
some VIPs (VIPs)	一些重要人物
in the 1990s (1990s)	20 世纪 90 年代
a man in his 40s (40s)	一个四十几岁的人

There are two f's in the word "office". "office" 一词中有两个 "f"。

They came in twos and threes. 他们三三两两地来了。

4. 复合名词的复数形式

1) 将复合名词的中心词变为复数

①复合名词的前面部分为中心词。例如：

father(s)-in-law 岳父,公公 daughter(s)-in-law 媳妇
 passer(s)-by 过路人 prisoner(s)-of-war 战俘
 bride(s)-to-be 未来的新娘 looker(s)-on 旁观者
 commander(s)-in-chief(s) 总司令

② 复合名词的后面部分为中心词。例如：

film-goer(s) 看电影的人 tooth-brush(es) 牙刷
 shoe-maker(s) 鞋匠 store-keeper(s) 店主
 step-mother(s) 继母 horse-men 骑兵

2) 复合名词前后两个词都是中心词(通常第一个词是 man 或 woman), 前后两部分皆变为复数形式。例如：

men singers 男歌手 women servants 女仆
 men cooks 男厨师 women doctors 女医生

3) 复合名词中没有可数名词时, 在最后一个词后加“-s”。例如：

forget-me-not(s) 勿忘我 grown-up(s) 成年人
 go-between(s) 中间人, 媒人 breakdown(s) 故障

4) 复合名词为 boy, girl, lady, maid 加另一个词构成, 将第二个词变成复数。例如：

boy friend(s) 男朋友 girl friend(s) 女朋友
 lady driver(s) 女司机 maid servant(s) 女仆

5) 词尾为-ful(表数或量)的复合名词一般在-ful 后加“-s”。例如：

spoonful(s) 一匙(之量) mouthful(s) 一口(之量)
 bucketful(s) 一桶(之量) cupful(s) 一杯(之量)

注意下面 3 个词的两复数形式：

handfuls/handsful, housefuls/housesful, bagfuls/bagsful

5. 单复数同形的名词

常见的单复数同形的名词有如下几种：

1) 某些动物的名称：

deer, sheep, fish, goldfish 等。

注意：也可用 fishes 表示不同种类的鱼。表示鱼肉时只能用单数形式。例如：

We caught three little fishes.

He wrote a book on Chinese fresh water fishes.

Could you catch those fish ?

Help yourself to some fish !

2) 以-ese 或-ss 结尾的表示某国人的名词, 如 Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese, Swiss 等。

3) craft 及由此构成的合成词, 如 aircraft(飞行器), hovercraft(气垫船), spacecraft(宇宙飞船) 等。

4) 由汉语音译表示度量衡、货币制等单位的名词, 如 yuan(元), jiao(角), fen(分), jin(斤), mu(亩) 等。

5) 其他: crossroads(十字路口), head(牲畜的头数), means(方法, 手段), peacock(孔雀), series(系列), species(种类), headquarters(总部), works(工厂) 等。

6. 特殊的复数形式

1) 单数形式代表复数含义

单数形式代表复数含义的词有 cattle, people, police 等。

注意以下两种情况:

① people, police 一般要被大于“1”的数词修饰;

② cattle 一般被十、百或千等整数修饰。否则用“数字 + head of”修饰。例如:

Two or three people were wounded.

Five police came to the spot.

ten cattle two thousand cattle two/three head of cattle

2) 只用复数形式。例如:

武器 arms	灰 ashes	所有物 belongings
圆规 compasses	目录 contents	衣服 clothes
工资 收入 earnings	眼镜 glasses	郊区 outskirts
遗物 遗体 remains	财富 riches	储蓄金 存款 savings
天平 scales	剪刀 scissors	长统袜 stockings
郊区住宅区 suburbs	裤子 trousers	感谢 thanks
环境 surroundings	工资 wages	

3) 复数形式可以表示特别的意义。例如:

papers 报纸, 文件	manners 礼貌	goods 货物
letters 文学	looks 外表	glasses 眼镜

greens 青菜	hairs(几根)头发	times 时代
sands 沙滩 沙地	irons 脚镣手铐	drinks 饮料
forces 军队	spirits 酒精 情绪	customs 海关

4) 以下短语中的名词常用复数：

in high spirits 情绪高涨 as follows 如下
 take turns 轮流 hurt one's feelings 伤人感情
 take/make notes 做笔记 in rags 衣衫褴褛

5) “word”一词的几种用法

word 作“消息”或“通知”解时,前面不加“a”或“the”,也不用复数形式。例如：

Word came that the meeting would be held on Friday.

Please send me word of your safe arrival.

注意下列词组中的单、复数：

keep (break) one's word 守(失)信
 leave word 留言
 a man of his word 守信用的人
 word for/by word 逐字地
 in a word 简言之
 in other words 换句话说
 eat one's words 收回前言,认错
 the last words 临终的话
 waste one's words 白费口舌
 have words with sb. 与某人吵嘴
 have a few words (a word) with sb. 与某人说几句话

(二) 名词所有格

1. 表示有生命的名词的所有格

1) 一般情况,在名词后加“s”。例如：

my brother's bag, the boy's mother

2) 以-s 或-es 结尾的复数名词,在名词右上方加“'”。例如：

the workers' club, the birds' song

3) 复合名词的所有格,在该复合名词词尾加“s”。例如：

her son-in-laws photo

4) 如果一样东西为两个人共有,则只在后一个名词后加上“ s ”;
如果不是共有,两个名词后面都要加上“ s ”。例如:

Jane and Mary s father (共有)

Jane s and Tom s fathers (不共有)

5) 在表示“某人家”、“店铺”的名词所有格后面,一般省略它所修饰的名词。例如:

at Mr Green s 在格林先生家 to my uncle s 到我叔叔家

at the tailor s 在裁缝店 at the doctor s 在诊所

6) 以-s 结尾的专有名词所有格,若以读音[z]结尾,一般可在名词右上方加“ ’”,也可加“ s ”,其读音分别为[z]、[iz]。例如:

Engels /Engels s works, Dickens /Dickens s books

但若不以读音[z]结尾,则仍用“ s ”。例如 Ross s book

7) 注意下列短语中的所有格

a bird s-eye view 鸟瞰

a wolf in sheep s clothing 披着羊皮的狼 ;口蜜腹剑的人

at a snail s pace 爬行地 缓慢地

at one s wits end 智穷计尽 不知所措

have sth. at one s finger s tips/ends 对某事了如指掌

in one s mind s eye 在想象中 在心目中

keep sb. at arm s length 对某人保持距离

make a cat s paw of sb. 利用某人

to one s heart s content 尽情地

2. 表示无生命的名词的所有格

1) 通常采用“of + 名词”结构来表示无生命东西的名词的所有关系。例如:

the gate of the school, the window of the room

the contribution of science and technology

有时,即使有生命的,也常用“of + 名词”这一后置修饰语表示其所有关系。例如:

the people s support

但 the support of the people across the world

the students' suggestion

但 the suggestion of the students of Class One

2) 有些表示时间、距离、国家、城市、团体、机构等无生命东西的名词,也可以加“s”来构成所有格。例如:

today's newspaper ten minutes' walk

China's industry the station's waiting room

3) 注意下列表示无生命的短语中的所有格

to get one's money's worth 钱花得合算

get sb. out of harm's way 使某人免受损害

at death's door 死到临头,面临死亡;生命危在旦夕

at sword's point 剑拔弩张;处于紧张状态

by a hair's breadth 只差一点;一发之差

within a stone's throw 在投石可及的距离内,在附近

3. 名词作定语修饰名词

1) 有些名词没有相同意义的形容词形式,起修饰作用时也不表示所有关系,此类作定语的第一个名词大部分是对第二个名词进行分类,或是对第二个名词的属性、来源、时间、地点加以说明,这时可以用“名词(单数)+名词”构成。例如:

a flower garden a kitchen table a tooth brush

a time table the room number a shoe shop,

a fashion magazine a trouser pocket a scissor sharpener

2) 有些名词虽有相同意义的形容词形式,但为了意义上的需要,仍用“名词(单数)+名词”构成。例如:

表功能 beauty shop(美容院), safety belt(安全带)

表成分 silk stockings(丝袜), gold watch(金表)

3) 有时因某些名词本身以-s结尾或与惯用法有关,就用复数名词作定语。例如:

accounts department chemicals company customs office

entertainments society clothes shop goods train

greetings telegram honours student incomes policy

savings bank systems analysis wages policy

sales tax/manager/department sports shirt/car/meet

4) 当名词中心词为集体名词或组织机构名词时,复数人称名词作前置定语既可用普通格,又可用所有格,两者意义相同,但一般不用单数名词加“s”形式。例如:

Scientists/Scientists Institute for Public Information

National Agricultural Chemists/Chemists Association

Wilson State Teachers/Teachers College

4. 双重所有格

1) 双重所有格的结构

有时我们将 of 属格和 s 属格结合起来表示所有关系。兼用两种属格的后置修饰语叫双重所有格。例如:

a book of my friend s

很明显,当不定冠词“a”与所有格名词“my friend s”同时修饰一个名词“book”时,由于“a”和“my friend s”均属中位限定词,不能同时位于名词“book”之前,这时就得用双重所有格。双重所有格的结构为:

不定冠词、不定代词或数词 + 名词 + of + 所有格名词

如 a book of Li Ming s , a novel of Sidney Sheldon s

some friends of his father s , a few poems of my friend s

2) 双重所有格的使用

①of 后的名词一般都特指某人,不用于指物;且必须是特指,不用于泛指。例如:

a leg of the man s , 不说 a leg of the table s

a friend of Lao Wang s , 不说 a friend of a doctor s

a car of ours , 不说 a car of us

②of 前的名词通常有不定冠词 a(n)、不定代词 some , any , a few , several 或数词 three , five 等来修饰,但不能用定冠词修饰。例如:

a friend of my brother s , 不说 the friend of my brother s

③of 前的名词用指示代词 this , that , these , those 等修饰时含有爱憎褒贬的感情色彩。比较下面句子在感情色彩上的差别:

Tom s big nose 汤姆的大鼻子

that big nose of Tom s 汤姆的那个大鼻子

Those daughters of your aunt s are disgusting.

④portrait , picture , photo 等后的名词或代词用所有格,意为“某人

拥有或收藏的……” ;用宾格 ,意为“某人自己的……”。例如 :

a picture of my father's

我父亲收藏的一张照片(照片上不是父亲本人)

a picture of my father 我父亲本人的一张照片

⑤在具有动词含义名词 criticism , opinion , judgement , estimate 等与 of 连用时 ,of 后的名词或代词用所有格表示主谓关系 ;用宾格表示动宾关系。例如 :

an criticism of the critic's 这位批评家所作的批评

an criticism of the critic 对这位批评家的批评

(三) 主谓一致的三个原则

1. 语法形式上的一致

主语为单数形式 ,谓语动词用单数形式 ;主语为复数形式 ,谓语动词用复数形式。例如 :

The number of mistakes was surprising.

Jane and Mary look healthy and strong.

2. 意义上的一致

1) 主语形式为单数而意义是复数 ,谓语动词用复数。例如 :

The crowd were running for their lives.

单数形式表示复数意义的词有 people , police , cattle 等。

2) 主语形式为复数而意义上是单数 ,谓语动词用单数。例如 :

The news was very exciting.

形复意单的单词有 news 和一些以 ics 结尾的学科名称 ,如 physics , politics , mathematics 等。

3. 就近一致

就近原则即谓语动词的单、复数形式取决于最靠近它的主语。如用连词 or , either ... or 等连接的并列主语 ,一个是单数 ,一个是复数 ,陈述句中谓语动词与靠近它的主语 B 一致。

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \text{ or } B \\ \text{Either } A \text{ or } B \\ \text{Neither } A \text{ nor } B \\ \text{Not only } A \text{ but also } B \end{array} \right\} + \text{谓语动词(与 } B \text{ 一致)}$$

例如：

Either your students or Mr Wang knows this.

疑问句中与靠近它的主语 A 一致。例如：

Are you or she to blame? 是你还是她该受到责备？

在 there be 结构中,如果出现两个或两个以上的主语时,谓语动词通常与靠近它的主语保持一致。例如：

There is a dictionary and two books on the desk.

(四) 主谓一致原则的具体应用

1. 名词作主语

1) 某些集体名词作主语时,如果作为一个整体看待,谓语动词用单数形式,如果就其中一个个成员而言,谓语动词用复数形式。例如：

His family is going to have a long journey.

The whole family are watching TV.

The population in China is very large, and eighty percent of the population in China are farmers.

The couple are spending their honeymoon.

Each couple was asked to complete a form.

①这类名词有:audience, class, club, committee, company, couple, crew, crowd, data, enemy, government, group, majority, media, party, public, staff, team, youth, etc.

②在整体或个体概念不十分明显时,美式英语倾向于谓语动词用复数,英式英语倾向于谓语动词用单数。例如：

Today, about a quarter of the world's population speak/speaks English.

③在概念上不致引起误解,则谓语用单数复数均可。例如：

The public are/is requested not to litter in the park.

2) 某些集体名词(如 people, police, cattle(牛))只当复数看待,谓语动词必须用复数。例如：

The police are searching for the thief.

Domestic cattle provide us with milk and beef.

3) 单数形式的单、复数同形的名词作主语时,谓语动词应根据意

义决定单、复数。常见的有 deer, sheep, fish 等。例如：

A sheep is over there.

Some sheep are over there.

There are some deer in the woods.

The best fish smell when they are three days old.

Fish begins to stink(发臭) at the head.

鱼从头烂起。(上梁不正下梁歪。)

4) 复数形式的单、复数同形的名词作主语时 按意义一致的原则。作单数意义时,谓语用单数;反之,谓语用复数。这类名词有 means(方法), works(工厂), species(种类)等。例如：

The/This glass works was set up in 1980.

这家玻璃厂建于1980年。

The/These glass works are near the railway station.

这些玻璃厂在火车站附近。

The species that live there will be facing extinction.

When a whole species dies out, we say the organism has become extinct.

当它们前面有 a, such a, this, that 修饰时,谓语用单数;有 all, such, these, those 修饰时,谓语用复数。但 means, no means, the means 等词前没有以上修饰语时,可用作单数,也可用作复数。

注意:work 作“工作”解时是不可数名词,作“著作”解时是可数名词,有单复数之分。例如：

What time do you get home from work?

Shakespeare's works include plays and poems.

5) 名词所有格之后的名词被省略的情况一般只指商店、公共建筑物、住宅等,作主语时,动词一般用单数。例如：

The doctor's is on this side of the street.

My uncle's is not far from here.

常见的省略名词有：

the baker's, the barber's (指商店)

my aunt's, the Johnsons (指住宅)

St Paul's (Cathedral), St James (Palace) (指公共建筑物)

6) 当名词词组中心词为表示度量、距离、金额、时间、书名等复数名词时, 往往可以根据意义一致的原则, 把这些复数名词看作一个整体, 谓语用单数形式。例如:

Three years has passed.

The Selected Poems of Li Bai was published long ago.

Five miles is not a long distance.

Ten thousand dollars is more than I can afford.

7) 下列以-s 结尾的名词作主语, 谓语动词一般用复数形式。以-s 结尾的复数名词有下列几种情况:

①由两个部分构成的表示衣物或工具等的名词。例如:

Your trousers are really too short.

这类词有:

glasses 眼镜 clothes 衣服 trousers 裤子

shoes 鞋子 compasses 圆规 chopsticks 筷子

scissors 剪刀 scales 天平 slippers 拖鞋

socks 短袜 stockings 长袜

②以 -ing + s 结尾的名词。例如:

Our total earnings were about forty dollars.

The surroundings are very satisfactory.

这类词有:

earnings 所挣的钱 savings 储蓄

findings 调查结果 shortcomings 缺点

belongings 所有物 surroundings 环境

③某些名词的复数形式含有特定的意义, 作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。例如:

Riches do not always bring happiness. 财富并非总是带来幸福。

My pains have been rewarded. 我的辛劳得到了回报。

Your manners are improving. 你变得礼貌多了。

How are the sales today? 今天生意如何?

这类词有:

arms 武器 ashes 骨灰 brains 智慧

congratulations 贺辞 contents 目录 customs 海关

funds 资金 现款	damages 赔偿	fireworks 烟火
goods 货物	manners 礼貌	pains 辛苦
outskirts 郊区	regards 致意	riches 财富
suburbs 市郊住宅区	sales 售货总量	troops 部队

注意 :①以 -s 结尾的学科名词 ,如 mathematics , economics , physics , politics , gymnastics 等 ,虽然形式上是复数 ,常作不可数名词 ,谓语动词用单数。例如 :

Physics is taught by Professor Molecule.

注意 :②某些以-s 结尾的指单一事物的专有名词常作单数。例如 the United States , the United Nations , etc.

8) this kind/sort/type of 加名词的用法

这种书 : $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{this kind of book/books} \\ \text{a book of this kind} \end{array} \right\} + \text{单数谓语动词}$

这一类人 : $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{men of this kind} \\ \text{this kind of men(口语)} \end{array} \right\} + \text{复数谓语动词}$

This kind of men is dangerous.

Men of this kind are dangerous.

9) 如果名词词组中心词是 all , most , half , rest , part 等词语 ,表示的是复数意义 ,谓语动词用复数形式 ;反之 ,用单数。例如 :

All of my classmates work hard.

All of the water is gone.

10) 在倒装的句形中 ,谓语动词的数应与其后的主语一致。例如 :

Between the two windows hangs a picture.

2. 由连接词连接的名词作主语

1) 用 and 或 both and 连接并列主语 ,谓语动词通常用复数形式。例如 :

Plastics and rubber never rot.

Walking and riding are good exercises.

但是 ,并列主语如果指的是同一个人、同一事物或同一概念 ,谓语动词要用单数形式(这时 and 后面的名词没有冠词)。例如 :

Truth and honesty is the best policy.

The girl's teacher and friend is a young doctor.

Going to bed early and getting up early is a good habit.

A knife and fork is on the table. (视为一件东西)

Bread and butter is nutritious. (视为一种食物)

Fish and chips is one of the most common English dishes.

2) 当主语后面跟有 as well as 等引导的词组时,其谓语动词的单、复数根据主语的单、复数而定。

主语 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as well as, with} \\ \text{together with, along with} \\ \text{rather than, no less than} \\ \text{accompanied by, followed by} \\ \text{but, except, besides} \\ \text{in addition to, including} \\ \text{like, unlike, plus, among} \end{array} \right\} + (\text{名词}) + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{谓语动词} \\ \text{与主语} \\ \text{一致} \end{array} \right.$

The teacher as well as the students was excited.

Everyone else, in addition to his parents, was excited at the news.

The room with its furniture was rented.

3) 以 or, nor, either or, neither nor, whether or, not only but also 等连接的名词(代词)作主语时,谓语动词的单复数应根据就近一致的原则。例如:

Tom or his brothers are waiting in the room.

Either you or he is to go.

Neither you nor I nor anybody else knows anything about it.

3. 代词作主语

1) 名词型物主代词后的动词,既可以用单数,也可以用复数,这取决于它所代替的是单数还是复数。例如:

Ours (= Our Party) is a great Party.

Your shoes are black, mine (= my shoes) are brown.

2) such, the same 起指示代词作用时,应根据其所指的内容来决定单、复数。例如:

Such is our plan.

Such are his words.

3) 关系代词 who , that , which 等在定语从句中作主语时 , 其谓语动词的数应与句中先行词的数一致。例如 :

Those who want to go please sign your names here.

Some of the energy that is used by man comes from the sun.

4) 疑问代词 who , what , which 作主语时 , 谓语动词可根据说话人所要表达的意思决定单复数。例如 :

“ Who lives next door ? ” “ It is Xiao Liu. ”

“ Who live next door ? ” “ It is Zhang and Liu. ”

Which is (are) your book (s) ?

What produce (s) heat ?

5) 不定代词作主语时有以下几种情况 :

① each , either , much 作主语时 , 动词常用单数。例如 :

Much of the research has already been completed.

② both , several , a few , many 作主语时 , 动词常用复数。例如 :

Some visitors to the new gallery are enthusiastic but many have expressed their disappointment.

③ neither , none 修饰复数名词作主语时 , 谓语通常用单数。但在口语中或非正式文体的书面语中 , 谓语也可用复数。例如 :

None of the students is/are willing to accept the increase in course-work.

Neither of them has/have seen the film.

④ any , half , some , a lot , all 等作主语时 , 有以下两种情况 :

A. 单独作主语 , 视其在文中的意义 , 动词可用单数或复数形式。

So all is going well.

All are present. Let s begin the meeting.

Any is good for me.

“ We can t get many books to the schools in the disaster area. ”

“ Don t worry. Any (books) are better than none. ”

B. 后接 of 加名词或代词时 , 根据 of 后的名词或代词的数而定 :

any , half , all } + of { 不可数名词 : 谓语动词用单数
some , a lot , } { 复数名词或代词 : 谓语动词用复数

Some of the information is considered top secret.

Some of us are hiring a minibus to go to the match.

6) 不定代词 each, every, no 所修饰的名词即使以 and 或逗号连接成多个并列主语, 谓语动词仍用单数形式。例如:

Each boy and each girl wants to serve the people in the future.

Every teacher and student has their own shortcomings.

7) 如果主语由 more than one 或 many a 构成, 尽管从意义上看是复数, 它的谓语动词仍用单数形式。例如:

More than one student has seen the film.

Many a ship has been damaged in the storm.

但是, 在“more + 复数名词 + than one”结构之后, 谓语动词一般用复数形式。例如:

More members than one are against your plan.

4. 数词、量词作主语

1) 基数词单纯表示数字作主语时, 谓语动词通常用单数形式, 但当基数词表示的不是数值而是数量时, 谓语动词可用复数形式。例如:

Ten billion is a large number.

Twelve were boys.

英语中算术式作主语时, 若是减法和除法算术式, 谓语通常用单数形式; 若是加法和乘法, 谓语动词有时也可用复数形式。例如:

Three taken from eight leaves five.

Twelve divided by four is three.

Two and (plus) two is/are four.

Three times five is/are fifteen.

在提问加、减、乘、除得数时, 如用 how much, 谓语动词多用单数形式; 如用 how many, 谓语动词多用复数形式。例如:

How much is eight divided by two?

How many are two times five?

2) a (great) number of 等修饰可数复数名词, 其短语作主语时, 谓语动词用复数。例如:

a great number of , a few
 a great many , a group of
 a variety of , an average of
 a/the majority of , a total of

} + 复数形式 + 复数谓语动词

A number of students have gone to the countryside to help with the autumn harvest.

A group of us have decided to hire a boat and travel through Holland by canal.

A total of 20 ,000 people are said to have visited the castle since it was open to the public.

A variety of views are published.

A wide variety of opinions have been expressed on the plausibility (真实性) of these threats.

An average of ten students are absent each day.

A majority of the town s younger men are moving to the city.

The majority of doctors believe smoking is harmful to health.

注意 :①a group of + 复数名词,遵循概念一致的原则,通常后接复数动词,但有时将这集体名词视为一个整体,后接单数动词。类似的还有 a crowd of , a gang of 等。

注意 :②a variety of 也见于这样的句中 :

A considerable variety of opinions on this subject has at different times been advanced from the earliest times.

There is a wide variety of opinions regarding the issue.

注意 :③an average of 后常接数词加复数名词

3) 分数、百分数及 a proportion of 等短语作主语时,以 of 后的名词的单复数形式来决定谓语动词的单复数。这是因为短语后的名词是中心词。例如 :

分数/百分数/小数 + of all/some of , any/none of half/most of , a lot of lots of , plenty of heaps of , the rest of a proportion of , loads of a part of , the part of masses of , the mass of	}	+	{ 复数形式 } + { 复数谓语动词 } { 单数形式 } + { 单数谓语动词 }
---	---	---	--

About three-fourths of the earth's surface is covered with water.

Three-fifths of the workers here are women.

Lots of damage was caused by fire.

Plenty of English books are on the shelf.

A high proportion of Americans go to college.

A large proportion of my time is spent in studying.

The mass of men share this belief.

A part of the students admitted are workers.

The greater part of the land is uncultivated.

The greater part of apples are bad.

The great mass of the continent is buried under the ice cap.

Large masses of the people lack the basic necessities of life.

Masses of evidence has been accumulated.

4) a little , much 等修饰不可数名词，其短语作主语时，谓语动词用单数。例如：

a little , a great deal of much , a large sum of a large amount of	}	+	不可数名词 + 单数谓语动词
--	---	---	----------------

A great deal of trouble lies before us.

A large sum of money was saved.

A large amount of (A great deal of) damage was done in a very short time.

5) 短语 a collection of , a mass of 等不管修饰复数名词还是不可数名词，其短语作主语时，谓语动词仍用单数形式。例如：

a collection of , a mass of
 a pile of , a portion of
 a set of , a species of

$$\left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} a collection of , a mass of \\ a pile of , a portion of \\ a set of , a species of \end{matrix}} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{复数名词} \\ \text{不可数名词} \end{matrix} \right\} + \text{单数谓语动词}$$

There is a collection of pictures at the Town Hall.

There is a collection of dust in an unused room.

There was a mass of children in the yard.

There was a mass of sand in front of his house.

A substantial portion of the reports is missing.

A pile of logs was set beside the stove.

There is a set of rules that you must follow if you re going mountain-climbing.

6) 短语 a pair of 等与复数名词连用时, 其短语作主语, 谓语动词仍用单数形式。例如:

a pair of , a range of
 a bunch of , a series of
 a line of , a / this kind of
 a / this sort / type of

$$\left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} a pair of , a range of \\ a bunch of , a series of \\ a line of , a / this kind of \\ a / this sort / type of \end{matrix}} \right\} + \text{复数名词} + \text{单数谓语动词}$$

A pair of shoes was under the desk.

A series of lectures on language is said to be given by Mr Stone.

There is a broad range of choices of course in colleges and universities.

A long line of flags and coloured umbrellas was seen moving towards the gate of the palace.

This kind of apples isn t clearly priced.

7) the number of , the average of 等后接复数名词, 谓语动词仍用单数形式。例如:

the number of , the variety of
 the total of , the proportion of

$$\left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} the number of , the variety of \\ the total of , the proportion of \end{matrix}} \right\} + \text{复数名词} + \text{单数谓语动词}$$

The number of students in our school is increasing.

The variety of pictures at the exhibition pleases me.

The average of letters received each month is 300.

The total of his gains has amounted to millions.

The proportion of boys to girls in my class is three to one.

8) quantity 和 amount 的用法如下：

量 词	复数 名词	不可数 名词	谓语动词	
			复数	单数
a large/small quantity of	✓		✓	
a large/small quantity of		✓		✓
quantities of	✓	✓	✓	
the quantity of	✓	✓		✓
a large/vast amount of		✓		✓
large/vast amounts of		✓	✓	
the amount of		✓		✓

例如：

A large quantity of bananas were on sale.

A large quantity of beer was sold.

Quantities of nuts were on the table.

Large quantities of wheat are being sent abroad.

The quantity of books in the library is amazing.

The quantity of heat in the office has not been increased.

Large amounts of money were spent on the bridge.

9) 表示数量的 one and a half 后只能接复数名词。其短语作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

One and a half apples is left on the table.

One and a half months has elapsed.

a month and a half 被看作是一个时间段，作主语时，谓语动词用单数，如 A year and a half has passed.

5. 名词化的形容词作主语

如果主语由“the + 形容词(或过去分词)”结构充当，表示一类人，谓语通常用复数。这类词有：

the blind	the brave	the dead	the injured
the old	the oppressed	the poor	the rich
the sick	the unemployed	the wounded	the young

例如：

The blind study in special schools.

这类形容词或分词如果要表示个体时，就要与名词 man, person 或表示人的单数连用。例如：

an old man, a rich person, the (a) wounded soldier

有少数过去分词与定冠词连用时指个别，则用单数。例如：

The departed(死者) was a well-known engineer.

6. 从句作主语

1) 由 what 引导的主语从句，谓语动词通常用单数；所指的具体内容若是复数意义，谓语动词一般用复数形式。例如：

What we need is more time.

What we need are doctors.

What was real to him were the details of his life.

What I say and think are no business of yours.

2) “one of + 复数名词”与“the only one of + 复数名词”后接定语从句时谓语动词的数的形式

①在“one of + 复数名词”后接定语从句时，关系代词 who/that/which 的先行词是靠近它的“复数名词”而不是“one”，因此，从句中的动词应该是复数形式。例如：

This is one of the most interesting questions that have been asked.

这是人们提出的十分有趣的问题之一。

David is one of those people who have trouble making up their minds. 大卫是那些难于做出决定的人之一。

②当“the only one of + 复数名词”后接从句时，关系代词的先行词是“one”而不是靠近它的“复数名词”，因此从句的动词应是单数形式。例如：

She was the only one of the girls who was late for the meeting. 她是那些女孩中唯一开会迟到的人。

Sara is the only one of those students who plays in the band. 莎拉是那些学生中唯一参加乐队演奏的人。

第三部分 分类练习

- The plural forms of the words "photo" and "potato" are _____.
 A. photoes and potatoes
 B. photos and potatos
 C. photoes and potatos
 D. photos and potatoes
- He found a lot of _____ were _____.
 A. passers-by grown-ups
 B. passer-bys grows-up
 C. passer-bys grown-ups
 D. passers-by grows-up
- There _____ no life on the moon.
 A. is said to have
 B. are said to have
 C. is said to be
 D. are said to be
- A group of _____ are eating _____ and _____ at the foot of the hill.
 A. sheep grass leaves
 B. sheeps grasses leaves
 C. sheep grass leaf
 D. sheeps grass leafs
- My family raise a lot of _____, including two _____.
 A. cattles cows
 B. cows cattle
 C. cattle cows
 D. cow cattles
- What he says and what he does _____.
 A. does not agree
 B. do not agree
 C. does not agree with
 D. not agree
- Two _____ and three _____ attended the meeting.
 A. Englishmans German
 B. Englishmen German
 C. Englishmen Germans
 D. Englishmans Germans
- He left _____ with my secretary that he would call again in the afternoon. He said he would keep _____.
 A. words his words
 B. word his word
 C. word word
 D. the word his word
- The _____ of those buildings were broken in the hurricane.
 A. roof
 B. rooves
 C. roofs
 D. roofes
- "Would you like _____, sir?"
 "No, thanks. I have had much."
 - any more oranges
 - some more oranges
 - any more orange
 - some more orange
- The boy and the girl each _____ toys.
 A. have their own
 B. has their own

- C. have her own D. has her own
12. She is the only one among the ____ writers who ____ stories for children.
A. woman ,writes B. women ,write
C. women ,writes D. woman ,write
13. My sister has two ____.
A. tooth-brushes B. tooth-brush
C. teeth-brushes D. teeth-brush
14. The railway station is ____ from our school.
A. two hour s drive B. two hours drive
C. two hour drive D. two hours drive
15. This is an old photo of my aunt s when she had black ____, but now she has some white ____.
A. hair ; hairs B. hairs ; hair C. hair ; hair D. hairs ; hairs
16. Li Ming s handwriting is better than ____ in his class.
A. anyone else s B. anyone s else s
C. anyone s D. anyone else
17. This is the ____.
A. students exercise-book B. student s exercise-book
C. students exercise-books D. student s exercise-books
18. Mike and John s ____.
A. father is a teacher B. fathers are teachers
C. father are teachers D. fathers are teacher
19. A great deal of talking and listening that ____ under casual circumstance may seem to be aimless.
A. is occurred B. are occurred C. occurs D. occur
20. "What does Mr Brown do for a living ?"
"He s one of the most successful ____ in the city. "
A. newspaper reporter B. newspaper s reporters
C. newspaper s reporter D. newspaper reporters
21. The museum he paid a visit ____ at the end of the street.
A. stand B. stands C. to stand D. to stands
22. ____ the classroom needs to be cleaned.
A. Either the offices or B. The offices and
C. Both the office and D. The office and
23. ____ food is kept in his new cave.

- A. Large quantities of B. A great deal of
C. A large number of D. Quite a few
24. She wore clothes that _____.
A. was better than the other girls
B. was better than that of the other girls
C. were better than those of the other girls
D. were better than that of the other girls
25. In every province of China _____ found rich natural resources.
A. have B. are C. has D. is
26. Three-fourths of the homework _____ today.
A. has finished B. has been finished
C. have finished D. have been finished
27. "I like your furniture very much. "
"Thank you. We bought _____ in Shanghai. "
A. the most of them B. most of them
C. most of it D. the more of it
28. I don't take John's pen because I don't like _____.
A. the pen of his B. that pen of his C. the pen of him D. his that pen
29. Jane is one of the best students in her class who _____ by their teacher.
A. were praised B. have praised
C. was praised D. has been praised
30. On the wall _____ two large portraits.
A. hang B. hangs C. hanged D. was hanging
31. How close parents are to their children _____ a strong influence on the character of their children.
A. has B. have C. having D. to have
32. Her _____ to her children's faults _____ quite unusual.
A. blind ;is B. blind ;are C. blindness ;is D. blindness ;are
33. In winter wet clothes _____ near a fire.
A. often hanged up B. are often hanged up
C. often hung up D. are often hung up
34. A library with five thousand books _____ to the nation as a gift.
A. are offered B. is offered C. have offered D. has offered
35. _____ the presents _____ a set of tea things from Jack.
A. In ; was B. In ; were C. Among ; was D. Among ; were

36. The rest of the magazines ____ within half an hour.
A. is sold out B. are sold out C. was sold out D. were sold out
37. Although the town had been attacked by the storm several times , ____ was done.
A. little damage B. a little damage C. few damages D. a few damages
38. " All ____ present and all ____ going on well , "our monitor said.
A. is is B. are are C. are is D. is are
39. Yesterday the League secretary and monitor ____ asked to make a speech at the meeting.
A. is B. was C. are D. were
40. Mary as well as her sisters ____ Chinese in China.
A. are studying B. have studied C. studies D. study
41. He played on the ____ for two hours and when he returned he found half his goods ____ stolen.
A. sand ,were B. sand ,was C. sands ,were D. sands ,was
42. I , who ____ your teacher , will try my best to help you with your studies.
A. being B. am C. are D. is
43. The rich ____ not always happy.
A. are B. is C. will D. may
44. ____ can be done ____ done.
A. All have been B. All that have been
C. All has D. All that has been
45. Either of the plans ____ equally dangerous.
A. are B. is C. has D. have
46. The police ____ the murderer everywhere when he suddenly appeared in a theatre.
A. is searching B. were searching for
C. are searching D. was searching for
47. About 40 ____ of the population of that country ____ on farms.
A. percent lives B. percent live C. percents live D. percents lives
48. This kind of apples ____ .
A. taste good B. tastes well C. tastes good D. taste well
49. Your trousers ____ dirty , you must have ____ washed.
A. is it B. are it C. are them D. is them
50. Where ____ rubbish , there are flies.
A. there are B. there is C. is D. there has
51. The Olympic Games ____ held every four ____ .

- A. is years B. are years C. is year D. are year
52. The scale is a series of marks , which ____ used for measuring something.
A. are B. is C. have D. has
53. Alice , together with two boys , ____ for having broken the rule.
A. was punished B. punished
C. were punished D. have been punished
54. The results of the examination ____ that you have all made great ____.
A. show progress B. shows progress
C. show progresses D. shows progresses
55. Many people say 10 ,000 ____ a lot of money.
A. dollar is B. dollars are C. dollars is D. dollar are
56. No bird and no beast ____ in the lonely island.
A. are seen B. is seen C. see D. sees
57. Every means ____ prevent the water from ____.
A. are used to polluting B. get used to polluting
C. is used to polluted D. is used to being polluted
58. The news of victories ____ spreading far and wide.
A. is B. are C. have been D. were
59. She has set a new record , that is , the sales of her latest book ____ 200 ,000.
A. are reached B. have reached
C. is reached D. has reached
60. A wide range of washing machines and refrigerators ____ displayed in our show-room.
A. has B. have C. is D. are
61. Each of the ____ in the ship.
A. passenger has his own room B. passengers have their own room
C. passenger have their own room D. passengers has his own room
62. What we need ____ good textbooks.
A. is B. are C. have D. has
63. I went to my ____ last Sunday and had a good time there.
A. uncles B. uncles C. uncle s D. uncle
64. "Where s your brother ?" "At ____ ."
A. the Mr Green s B. Greens C. Mr Green s D. the Greens
65. A long line of flags and coloured umbrellas ____ seen moving towards the gate of the palace.

- A. are B. is C. has D. have
66. Not everybody exposed to cases of SARS _____ likely to develop it.
A. is B. are C. have D. has
67. _____ has been done.
A. Ninety-nine percents of the work B. Half of what he promised
C. Two-fifths of the articles D. Three quarter of the business
68. Neither of the novels which _____ popular with us _____ been translated into Chinese.
A. are ~~has~~ B. are ~~have~~ C. is ~~have~~ D. is ~~has~~
69. Every boy and every girl _____ to attend the evening party.
A. wish B. wishes C. hope D. are hoping
70. Large quantities of water _____ needed for cooling purpose.
A. is B. are C. has D. have

第二章 冠词和数词

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (99)1. Paper money was in ____ use in China when Marco Polo visited the country in ____ thirteenth century.
A. the ; / B. the ; the C. / ; the D. / ; /
- (00)2. Most animals have little connection with ____ animals of ____ different kind unless they kill them for food.
A. the ; a B. / ; a C. the ; the D. / ; the
- (01)3. The warmth of ____ sweater will of course be determined by the sort of ____ wool used.
A. the ; the B. the ; / C. / ; the D. / ; /
- (02)4. Jumping out of ____ airplane at ten thousand feet is quite ____ exciting experience.
A. / ; the B. / ; an C. an ; an D. the ; the
- (03)5. The sign reads "In case of ____ fire , break the glass and push ____ red button. "
A. / ; a B. / ; the C. the ; the D. a ; a
- (04)6. ____ on-going division between English-speaking Canadians and French-speaking Canadians is ____ major concern of the country.
A. The ; / B. The ; a C. An ; the D. An ; /
- (05)7. It is often said that ____ teachers have ____ very easy life.
A. / ; / B. / ; a C. the ; / D. the ; a
- (06)8. She went to the bookstore and bought ____.
A. dozen books B. dozens books
C. dozen of books D. dozens of books
- (06)9. - I knocked over my coffee cup. It went right over ____ key-

board.

- You shouldn't put drinks near ____ computer.

A. the ; / B. the ; a C. a ; / D. a ; a

(07)10. I looked under ____ bed and found ____ book I lost last week.

A. the ; a B. the ; the C. / ; the D. the ; /

答案 1. CBBCB 6. BBDBB

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

(98)1. "Who did you spend last weekend with?" " ____ . "

A. Palmer s B. The Palmers
C. The Palmers D. The Palmer s

(98)2. It is ____ work of art that everyone wants to have a look at it.

A. so unusual B. such unusual
C. such an unusual D. so an unusual

(99)3. It is not rare in ____ that people in ____ fifties are going to university for further education.

A. 90s ; the B. the 90s ; /
C. 90s ; their D. the 90s ; their

(00)4. ____ of the land in that district ____ covered with trees and grass.

A. Two fifth ; is B. Two fifth ; are
C. Two fifths ; is D. Two fifths ; are

(01)5. A bullet hit the soldier and he was wounded in ____ leg.

A. a B. one C. the D. his

(02)6. One way to understand thousands of new words is to gain ____ good knowledge of basic word formation.

A. / B. the C. a D. one

(03)7. I earn 10 dollars ____ hour as ____ supermarket cashier on Saturdays.

A. a ; an B. the ; a C. an ; a D. an ; the

答案 1. CCDCC 6. CC

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. Summers in ____ south of France are for ____ most part dry and sunny.
A. / ; a B. the ; / C. / ; / D. the ; the
- (01) 2. Mr Smith , there s a man at ____ front door who says he has ____ news for you of great importance.
A. the ; / B. the ; the C. / ; / D. / ; the
- (02) 3. I don t like talking on ____ telephone ; I prefer writing ____ letters.
A. a ; the B. the ; / C. the ; the D. a ; /
- (03) 4. There s ____ dictionary on ____ desk by your side.
A. a ; the B. a ; a C. the ; a D. the ; the
- (04) 5. On ____ news today , there were ____ reports of heavy snow in that area.
A. the ; the B. the ; / C. / ; / D. / ; the
- (05) 6. ____ recent report stated that the number of Spanish speakers in the U. S. would be higher than the number of English speakers by ____ year 2090.
A. A ; the B. A ; / C. The ; / D. The ; a

答案 1. DABAB 6. A

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. “ Where s ____ nearest bookstore ? ”
“ There s one at ____ end of the street. ”
A. the ; an B. a ; the C. the ; the D. a ; an
- (01) 2. His daughter is always shy in ____ and she never dares to make a

speech to ____.

A. the public ; the public B. public ; the public

C. the public ; public D. public ; public

(01) 3. ____ people in the world are sending information by E-mail every day.

A. Several million B. Many millions

C. Several millions D. Many million

(02) 4. The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have ____ third one because , ____ second one is rather too small.

A. a ; a B. the ; the C. a ; the D. the ; a

(03) 5. An accident happened at ____ crossroads a few metres away from ____ bank.

A. a ; a B. / ; a C. / ; the D. the ; /

(04) 6. As a rule , domestic servants doing odd jobs are paid ____.

A. by the hour B. by hour

C. by an hour D. by hours

答案 : 1. CBACA 6. A

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 冠词的用法

1. 冠词的位置

冠词通常置于名词或名词词组之前, 或有形容词修饰的名词或名词词组之前。例如 :

Articles can be a problem area in English for students even at advanced level.

Now we come to the most important thing.

但是下列情况冠词须后置 :

1) 不定冠词的后置 :

① quite / rather / such / what / half + a(n)。例如 :

quite a good book , rather a pity , what a day , half an hour

注意 :与 half 连用时,不定冠词 a(n) 可置于 half 前或后。例如 :

half a mile = a half mile half an hour = a half hour

但只能说“and a half”,不说“and half a”。例如 ;

两个半小时 two hours and a half = two and a half hours

②so/as/too/how/however + 形容词 + a(n) + 名词。例如 :

She is as clever a girl as you can wish to meet.

It's too difficult a book for us.

Now I can see how serious a problem it is.

2) 定冠词的后置 :

all/both/half + the。 例如 :

all the information , both the twins , half the story

2. 不定冠词的用法

1) 泛指人、事或物的类别。 例如 :

A steel worker makes steel.

A plane is a machine that can fly.

2) 泛指某人或某物。 例如 :

A boy is waiting for you.

There is a book on the table.

3) 表示 one 或 every。 例如 :

I have a mouth , a nose and two eyes.

We study 8 hours a day.

4) 当序数词不表示顺序,意为“又一”、“再一”时。 例如 :

Why do you carry a second arrow?

5) 用于带有一个修饰语的时间名词前,表示一时的特点。 例如 :

It was a hot August.

It's certainly a July to be remembered.

有时可不带修饰语,表示不确定指哪一个。 例如 :

His birthday is on a Friday next month but I'm not very certain about it.

6) 用于动词转化来的名词前,表示一次动作。

结构 :“have/give/make/take + a + 动作名词”。 例如 :

have a go at 试一试(做某事) make a move 出发

give (sb.) a lift 让(某人)搭便车 take a step 走一步

7) 用在某些物质名词前

①指用这种材料制成的物品。例如：

a glass 一个玻璃杯 an iron 一个熨斗

a clean cloth 一块干净的布 a paper 一份报纸

②食品、饮料的一份。例如：

a chocolate an ice-cream a beer a sandwich

a good breakfast a big dinner a good cheese

③一些自然现象的名词前。例如：

a shower a heavy rain a thick fog

8) 用在抽象名词前

①抽象名词具有特定概念，表示“一种”、“一类”、“这种”、“那种”等。例如：

It's a shame to behave like that.

It's a pleasure for me to work with you.

Physics is a science.

Painting is an art.

After a swim, she had a rest.

The girl has developed a love for poems.

②“a certain + 抽象名词”表示某种情绪。例如：

a certain coldness a certain honesty

a certain reluctance a certain unwillingness

③抽象名词被一个形容词修饰，或被一个 of 短语限定时。例如：

a great unity a good memory

When he was young, he received a good education.

A knowledge of English is a must.

9) 用在专有名词前

①用于姓名、作品前，表示“具有……特征的人”、“……的作品”。

I wish to become an Edison.

They have a Picasso in their living room.

②用于一个带头衔的“姓”前，意为“一位姓……的小姐/先生”，表示说话人对此人不认识。

A Miss Chen came to see you this morning.

He introduced me to a Mr. Robertson, a lawyer.

③用于地方名词前，表示“某时的某地”、或“某种样子的某地”。

She is now a different Japan from what she was ten years ago.

Did you dream of such a Paris?

10) 当 sun, moon, world, sky 等名词被一个描绘性形容词修饰表达某种景象时。例如：

a burning/hot/newly-risen sun

a bright/full/new moon

a dark/free/new/sad world

a bright/blue/clear/cloudless/dark/sunny sky

下列短语中的形容词不表达某种景象，因此仍用定冠词 the：

the setting/risen/June/summer sun；

the night/summer sky

11) 用于下列特殊结构中

①“a(an) + 单数名词 + of + a + 单数名词”，其中第一个名词相当于一个形容词。例如：

an angel of a wife 天使般的妻子

a fool of a man 傻里傻气的人

a poem of a night 一个诗一般的夜晚

第一个不定冠词可改用 the, this, that, my, your 等。例如：

that rascal of a boss 那个恶霸般的老板。

②“(be) of a + 名词”，表示不同事物的共同性。例如：

Birds of a feather flock together. 物以类聚，人以群分。

The machines are of a kind.

③“(be) of a + 形容词修饰的名词”，表示人或物的特性。例如：

He is a man of an unyielding spirit.

3. 定冠词的用法

1) 表示上文已提到过的人或物,或特指某人或某物。例如:

I am very interested in the film.

Give me the book.

Who is the girl you just said hello to?

2) 表示世界上独一无二的东西。例如:

the air the earth the moon the sun the sky
the world the universe the atmosphere

3) 对两个人或物进行比较时起特定作用的比较级前。例如:

He is the taller of the two children in his family.

the more the merrier all the better

4) 用在形容词最高级、序数词及 last, next, only, same, right, wrong 前。例如:

the largest room the second story

the same school the only one

the right answer the wrong way

5) 用在江河、海洋、山川、群岛、港湾等的名词前。例如:

the Changjiang River the English Channel

the Pacific (Ocean) the Red Sea

the Rocky Mountains the Philippines

the Himalayas the Gulf of Mexico

注意:①湖名前一般不加冠词,如:Lake Baikal, Lake Victoria,
Lake Dongting, Lake Taihu,

但是 the Great Lake, the West Lake, the Dongting Lake

注意:②孤岛与单独的山峰前不加定冠词,如:Taiwan Island(台湾岛), Mt. Ali(阿里山), Mount Blanc(勃郎峰)

6) 由普通名词构成的专有名词前

①用于国家、党派、组织团体。例如:

the United States the Communist Party of China

the United Kingdom the Ministry of Education

the Xinhua News Agency the Associated Press (美联社)

②用于某些公共机构、建筑物的名称。例如:

the British Museum the Philadelphia Orchestra

the Pentagon (五角大楼)	the Hilton (Hotel)
the London Zoo	the Louvre (Palace)
the Great Wall	the Grand Theatre
the Beijing Hotel	the Capital Cinema

③用于报刊、杂志、学校、历史朝代、三军、船只等前。例如：

the People's Daily	the Times(泰晤士报)
the University of Beijing	the Song Dynasty
the Air Force	the Titanic (泰坦尼克号)

但是 Beijing University	London University
Life 《生活》周刊	China Pictorial 《中国画报》
Time 《时代》周刊	News Week 《新闻周刊》

7) 用在方位、方向等名词前或某些表示时间的词组或习惯语中。

例如：

on the left(right)	in the east(west)
in the future	at the present
in the end	in the daytime

但是，方位词用作状语时，前面不加冠词。例如：

My bedroom window faces south.

The ship sailed west.

8) 用在名词化的形容词、过去分词前表示一类人或物。例如：

the poor	the rich	the old	the young
the sick	the dead	the blind	the wounded
the good , the beautiful and the true 真善美			
the unknown 未知的世界		the unemployed 失业者	
the disabled 残疾人		the accused 被告	

注意：此时仍具有形容词的特征，可被副词修饰，有比较级和最高级的词尾变化。例如：

The extremely old need a great deal of attention.

The wise look to the wiser for advice.

9) 用在身体某部位的名词前代替一个物主代词。其结构是：

及物动词 + 宾语 + 介词 + the + 身体部位 (笼统的内容)	(具体的内容)
--	---------

例如：

The ball hit the boy on the nose.

He took the thief by the collar.

The soldier was wounded in the leg.

- 10) 在姓氏复数形式前，表示全家人，或这一姓氏的夫妇俩。例如：

The Turners are sitting at the breakfast table.

- 11) 用在单数可数名词前，表示某一类人或事物。例如：

The horse is a useful animal.

The brain is the centre of thought.

- 12) 演奏乐器时，乐器的名称前通常用定冠词。例如：

Do you like to play the guitar or the violin ?

- 13) 在逢十的复数数词之前，指世纪的某个年代。例如：

In the 1870 s , when Marx was already in his fifties ,

- 14) 在表示发明物的单数名词前加冠词。例如：

The compass(指南针) was invented in China four thousand years ago.

- 15) 用在人名或地名前

①人名或地名转化为普通名词时。

当一个专有名词被 of 属格或后置定语修饰，表示别的人或物具有该专有名词的特质。例如：

He is the Newton of the age.

Suzhou is the Venice of China.

The Europe of the 16th century was different from that of the 20th century.

Dorathy today is no longer the Dorathy I knew ten years ago.

②人名或地名被性质形容词修饰时。例如：

the ambitious John Smith

the dauntless Sun Yat-sen

- 16) 用在物质名词和抽象名词前

①当物质名词或抽象名词被一个后置定语修饰时。例如：

The breakfast we had today was wonderful.

People admire the honesty of his speech.

The on-going division between English-speaking Canadians and French-speaking Canadians is a major concern of the country.

②虽没有后置定语,但根据上下文,对话双方对所谈内容都已明了时。例如:

Please pass me the salt.

The coffee was all right, but the cream was sour.

17) 用在某些与动词同形的名词前。例如:

The number of students in our school has been constantly on the increase.

They came to the rescue.

on the rise 在上涨中 on the run 奔走,在逃亡中

on the fall 在下跌中 on the decrease 在减少中

on the march 在行进中 on the watch 在戒备中

18) 复数普通名词前加冠词,表示特指;复数普通名词前不加冠词,表示泛指。例如:

Did you notice what the tourists in the park were doing? (表特指)

They are the teachers of our school. (表特指,强调全体)

Tourists are often blamed for changing the character of a place. (表泛指)

They are teachers of our school. (表泛指,强调部分)

On the news today, there were reports of heavy snow in that area.

今天的新闻里,有关于那个地区大雪的报导。(大雪报道是新闻的一部分)

19) 与表示计算单位的名词连用,含有“每”、“每一”(= a, per, each 等)的意思。例如:

Sugar is sold by the pound/gram.

He is paid by the hour/day/week/month.

We sell eggs by the dozen.

There are 16 ounces to the pound.

20) 有些关于国家和民族的形容词前加上定冠词,可泛指这个国家和民族的全体人员(这些形容词是以-sh, -ch, -ese结尾的)。例如:

the Irish , the Welsh , the English , the Scotch , the French , the Chinese , the Japanese , etc.

4. 不用冠词的情况

1) 专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词前，一般不加冠词。

①专有名词是指一人，一地或一事物所专用的表示独指意义的名词，如人名和地名和以人名或地名命名的路名和街名、广场和公园、车站和桥梁、学校和教堂等。

- 人名和地名 :Mr Smith , China , Beijing , New York , (North) America , (Central) Australia , (Northern) Florida , Lake Michigan
- 路名和街名 :Nanjing Road , Zhongshan Road , Fifth Avenue , Downing Street , Madison Avenue , Park Lane , Oxford Street
- 广场和公园 :Tian An Men Square , Trafagar Square , Zhong Shan Park , Hyde Park , Greenwich Village , Central Park
- 车站和桥梁 :Beijing Railway Station , Paddington Station , Beijing Airport , London Bridge , Waterloo Bridge
- 学校和教堂 :Beijing University , Oxford University , Holy Mother Church , Westminster Abby

试比较：

the University of London	the People s Park
the Yu Garden	the Red Square
the Tower Bridge	the Golden Gate Bridge

②物质名词是指各种材料、食品、气体、液体、固体的化学名词。

beef , coffee , gold , ice , metal , milk , oil , silk

注意：不可数的物质名词表示类指时，不能使用冠词，但当它们表示特指时，可与定冠词连用。例如：

Sugar is bad for you.

The sugar you bought yesterday has got damp.

当不可数的物质名词表示大类指中的某一种(小类指)时，可与不定冠词连用。例如：

The North Sea produces a light oil.

This is a very good coffee.

③抽象名词是指无形状，只表示性质、动作、状态、学科、疾病等的名称。

action, kindness, history, wealth, cancer

抽象名词即使受形容词修饰，一般也不加冠词。例如：

Japanese history American literature

lung cancer 肺癌 German measles 风疹

Real friendship is more valuable than money.

其后虽有定语修饰，但并无特定的概念，仍不加定冠词。例如：

Prospects of peace are now better than ever before.

Doctor Jones has delivered sentence of death of many men.

动作名词后接介词短语，并无特定概念时，也不加冠词。例如：

Construction of a modern theatre began this spring.

Admission to any college or university is by examination.

但若其后的修饰语含有特定的概念时，则须加定冠词。例如：

the history of Japanese

The love of money is the root of all evil.

2) 普通名词复数表示一类时，不加冠词。例如：

African elephants have larger ears than Indian elephants.

Birds have burst into song in bright morning light.

3) 季节、月份、星期、节假日、一日三餐名称前一般不加冠词。

例如：

spring summer March Sunday May Day

National Day Children's Day Women's Day

Spring is the best season of the year.

Have you had supper?

注意：①英语中用“Day”表示“某某节”时，往往不加冠词。但我国的传统节日常用“the Festival”表示，则要加冠词。例如：

Mid-Autumn Day the Mid-Autumn Festival

the Spring Festival

注意：②如果季节名词被一个限定性定语修饰，就要加冠词。例如：

He joined the army in the spring of 1992.

注意 :③“秋季”英语用 autumn ,美国英语用 fall ;泛指时 ,autumn 前的 the 可有可无 ,但在 fall 前必须加 the。例如 :

They keep a few cows in (the) autumn/the fall.

4) 表示日、夜、早、晚、周、年的名词前一般不加冠词。例如 :

Towards evening he came back.

It was late afternoon before he reached home.

I shall be back this day next month.

At this time of year even the lake is frozen over.

但表示特定的时间概念或某一段特定的时间前则须加冠词。例如 :

He usually gets up early in the morning.

in the year 2005 ,the year after next

5) 称呼语及表示独一无二的头衔职务名称作表语、补语或同位语 ,一般不加冠词。例如 :

①称呼语

What's this ,Mother ?

Thanks a lot ,doctor.

②官职、头衔在人名前作称号

Premier Zhou ,Professor Liu

③某个独一无二的身份或职务(即只有一人担任此职务或正职)作表语、补语或同位语

He is head of the organization. (表语)

Lincoln was made President of the United States again. (补语)

This is Mr Zhang ,director of our hospital. (同位语)

Three cheers for Miss Shirley ,winner of the Avery(艾维里奖金)!

(独一无二的身份作同位语)

注意 :①表示某个类别中的一员 ,仍使用不定冠词。例如 :

John has asked Dr Brown , a famous lawyer , to represent him in court.

注意 :②某个著名人物作同位语 ,通常加定冠词。例如 :

Albert Einstein , the American physicist ,

注意 :③用不定冠词或不用冠词含义是不同的。例如 :

He is a dean of the department. (意为该系有几个主任)

He is dean of the department. (意为他是唯一的一个主任或他任正职)

6) 学科名称、球类、棋类名词前不加冠词。例如：

Do you study mathematics?

He likes playing football/chess.

7) 在下面一个特殊结构中，单数可数名词前不加冠词：

be + 某些表示个体的单数可数名词 + enough + 不定式

在这一结构中，名词起形容词作用，所以前面不加冠词。例如：

I was not scholar enough to read the inscription.

Adams and Joe were not man enough to admit their mistakes.

8) 在下列结构中，of 后的名词前通常不加冠词：

a kind of	a sort of	a type of	types of
a class of	classes of	a variety of	varieties of
a form of	forms of	a style of	styles of

Do you know what kind of jacket she wants to buy?

Alice is a fine type of school girl.

These kinds of film (films) are worth seeing.

9) 集体名词前不用冠词。例如：

①单数集体名词前

Society must deal with the unemployed or the unemployed will deal with society.

②复数集体名词前

They will be divided into groups.

10) “by + 名词”构成表示方式的短语，通常不加冠词。

①表交通工具。例如：

by car by bus by bike by train

但 take a bus come in a boat on the train/bus

②表传达、传递方式。例如：

by air mail by letter by post by radio by telephone

③表示一般行事的方法、方式。例如：

by hand(用手) by machine(用机械)
by weight(以重量) by contract(以承包方式)

11) 表示语言的名词前一般不用冠词。例如：

Chinese English French

在 the Chinese language , the English language 等中要用定冠词。

12) 在 turn , go (作“变成”解)后作补语的名词前一律不用冠词。

例如：

He was a medical student before he turned writer.

He has gone Democrat/socialist.

13) 在一个以“普通名词(或形容词最高级) + as (though) (虽然)”开始的让步状语从句中，前面不用冠词。(参阅“倒装”。)例如：

Child as he is , he knows a lot.

Shortest though he is , he runs fastest in our class.

14) 在若干独立结构中不用冠词。例如：

He entered the forest , gun in hand.

15) 某些固定词组，介词短语前不用冠词。

①成对使用的词组：

husband and wife teachers and students

bread and butter knife and fork

②由 from to , between and 构成的词组：

from time to time from beginning to end

from first to last between lawyer and client

③表地点意义的短语中

to/at/from school ; in/to/at/from university

to/in/into/from church ; to/in/out of prison/hospital

④表时间意义的短语中

at dawn/daybreak/sunrise/sunset/noon/midnight 等

in spring/summer/autumn/winter 等

on Sunday/September 11th 等

但是在口语中说几月几日时要加冠词。例如：

September the eleventh , the tenth of May

注意：有些词组中，有没有冠词含义是不同的。试比较：

- { in hospital 住院(因病)
- { in the hospital 在医院(参观或工作)
- { in front of 在.....前面
- { in the front of 在.....的前部
- { out of question 不成问题
- { out of the question 根本不可能
- { at table (在)进餐(时)
- { at the(a) table 坐在桌子旁
- { in possession of 拥有(主语为人)
- { in the possession of 为.....所拥有(主语为物)
- { make beds 做(制作)床
- { make the bed 整理床铺

(二) 数词的用法

1. 基数词的构成和用法

1) 21 - 99 的二位数, 在十位数和个位数之间加连字符构成。例

如:

53 写成 fifty-three

2) 101 - 999 的三位数由 hundred 加 and 再加二位数或末位数。

例如:

325 写成 three hundred and twenty-five

3) 基数词 hundred, thousand, million, billion 表示确切数目时不能加 s。例如:

several hundred five thousand ten million

但在表示不确切数目时, 要用复数形式。例如:

tens of hundreds of thousands of

4) dozen 和 score 的单、复数形式应注意以下几点:

①dozen 一打, 十二个

• 当 dozen 与数词或 many, several 等连用时, 不加“s”, 所修饰的名词前常省去 of。例如:

two/many/several dozen pencils

但是, 在 a dozen of these people, two dozen of them 等短语中应加

of, 这是因为习惯上在 these, those, them, us 等词前该用 dozen of 的缘故。

- some dozen people 是“一打左右的人”(大约十二人), 与 some dozen of people 同义。

- (some) dozens of people 是“若干打的人”(几十个人, 许多人)

②score 二十

- two score of people 中应加 of, 但 three score and ten people (70 人)中不加 of。scores of people 指“许多人”。

5) 表示“在几十年代”用“in + the + 逢十的数词复数”。例如:

in the 1990s 或 in the 90s 或 in the nineties

6) 在与基数词合成的定语中, 名词用单数。例如:

a three-month-old baby, the eleventh five-year plan

2. 序数词的构成和用法

1) 序数词由基数词后加-th 构成, 前面一般加定冠词 the。例如:

the two hundredth, the eighteenth

2) 以 y 结尾的基数词构成序数词, 先把 y 改成 i, 再加-eth。例如:

the twentieth, the fiftieth

3) 不规则的序数词有以下几个:

first, second, third, fifth, eighth, ninth, twelfth

4) 两位或两位以上的数词, 只需把最后一个英文数词变成序数词。例如:

第 21 (21st) twenty-first

第 32 (32nd) thirty-second

第 160 (160th) one hundred and sixtieth

第 875 (875th) eight hundred and seventy-fifth

5) 编号有两种表示法:

①事物名词(不加冠词) + 基数词。例如:

Part One, Lesson Three, Act Two, Gate Three

②定冠词 the + 序数词 + 事物名词。例如:

the First Part the Third Lesson

the Second Act the Third Gate

3. 其他几种数词的构成和用法

1) 分数由基数词和序数词合成, 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词。
分子大于一时, 分母的序数词要用复数形式。例如:

$$\frac{1}{3} \rightarrow \text{one(a) third} \quad \frac{2}{3} \rightarrow \text{two thirds}$$

$$1\frac{2}{3} \rightarrow \text{one and two thirds}$$

$$\text{但 } \frac{1}{2} \rightarrow \text{one(a) half} \quad \frac{1}{4} \rightarrow \text{one(a) quarter}$$

2) 小数点读 point, 零读 o[ə] 或 zero; 小数点后的数字按个位基数词依次读出。例如:

$$0.6 \rightarrow \text{zero point six}, 5.38 \rightarrow \text{five point three eight}$$

3) 百分数由 per cent (percent) 表示, 如: 19% \rightarrow 19 percent.

第三部分 分类练习

- Jane is ____ European and Jack is ____ American.
A. an ;an B. a ; an C. an ;a D. a ; a
- "Tina looks especially pretty tonight. "
"Yes, she always looks her best in ____ of that colour. "
A. dress B. a dress C. that dress D. the dress
- ____ Europe and ____ America are separated by ____ Atlantic Ocean.
A. / ;/ the B. the the the C. / ;/ ;/ D. the the ;/
- When he left ____ college, he got a job as ____ reporter in a newspaper office.
A. the ;the B. a ; the C. / ; the D. / ; a
- ____ Mr Chen is waiting outside to speak to you. He appears to be quite ____ important person.
A. / ; an B. / ; the C. A ; an D. The ; an
- It is ____ world of wonders, ____ world where anything can happen.
A. / ; / B. the ; a C. a ; the D. a ; a
- "Jack, did you see all the acts?"
"No. When I got to the theatre, they were already playing ____."
A. second act B. act two C. the act two D. the act second
- Throughout the entire day, there's not a minute when we're not on ____ run.

- A. / B. a C. the D. to
9. ____ Suez Canal brought ____ east and ____ west closer.
A. The ; the ; the B. / ; the ; the C. The ; / ; / D. / ; / ; /
10. I can't remember ____ Christmas when it snowed so much.
A. / B. a C. the D. this
11. The policeman caught the thief by ____ arm.
A. an B. a C. the D. his
12. ____ U. S. A. lies on the other side of ____.
A. The ; Pacific B. / ; Pacific Ocean
C. The ; the Pacific D. / ; the Ocean Pacific
13. ____ Yellow River is ____ second longest river in our country.
A. The ; a B. An ; an C. The ; the D. / ; /
14. Tom owns ____ larger collection of ____ books than any other students in our class.
A. the ; / B. a ; the C. a ; / D. / ; the
15. For a long time they walked without saying ____ word. Jim was the first to break ____ silence.
A. the ; / B. a ; / C. a ; the D. the ; a
16. The most important thing about cotton in history is ____ part that it played in ____ Industrial Revolution.
A. / ; / B. the ; / C. a ; the D. the ; the
17. The Wilsons live in ____ A-shaped house near the coast. It is ____ 17th century cottage.
A. the ; / B. an ; the C. / ; the D. an ; a
18. I came to the door and found that she was not ____ Mr Smith that I knew.
A. a B. the C. / D. one
19. "Those boys are together again !"
"They are up to no good. See , they are birds of ____ feather. "
A. same B. the C. a D. /
20. What ____ it is to travel in ____ spaceship !
A. a fun ; the B. a fun ; a C. fun ; / D. fun ; a
21. It was ____ evening before we reached ____ little town.
A. / ; the B. an ; a C. the ; / D. / ; /
22. We must pay special attention to the idioms of ____ English language.
A. the B. some C. an D. /
23. Of the two ____ I'd like to choose ____ expensive one.

- A. handkerchiefs a less B. handkerchieves a least
C. handkerchiefs the less D. handkerchieves the least
24. "How did you pay the workers?"
"As a rule, they were paid by ____."
A. an hour B. hours C. a hour D. the hour
25. ____ is hanging in the sky.
A. New moon B. A moon C. The new moon D. A new moon
26. "Where is your school located, Bob?" "On ____."
A. the Fifth Avenue B. fifth avenue
C. fifth Avenue D. Fifth Avenue
27. What ____ interesting work he is doing!
A. a B. an C. the D. /
28. Einstein may be called ____ Newton of our times.
A. a B. the C. / D. an
29. Mary has received a lot of gifts from her friends for her ____ birthday.
A. twenty-one B. twenty-first C. twentieth-one D. twentieth-first
30. It is a long time since I had ____ pleasure of seeing you.
A. a B. some C. the D. /
31. When he moved to Germany in ____, he was already in ____.
A. the fifties his sixty B. fifties his sixties
C. the fifties his sixties D. fifty sixty
32. He has been here for ____.
A. two and a half months B. two and half a month
C. two and half months D. two and a half month
33. Some sorts of fruit are sold by ____ weight. Eggs are sold by ____ dozen.
A. / ; / B. the ; / C. / ; the D. the ; the
34. How different is the impression produced by ____ today!
A. the Shanghai of B. the Shanghai from
C. Shanghai of D. Shanghai from
35. There were ____ people in the room.
A. two score of B. two scores of C. two score D. two scores
36. He, as ____ director of the company, attended the meeting.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
37. He bought ____ copies of the magazine.
A. two dozen of B. two dozens of C. two dozen D. two dozens

38. Lesson Twelve is _____ most difficult lesson ,but it isn't _____ most difficult lesson in Book One.
A. a ;a B. a ;the C. the ;the D. the ;a
39. My mother and I wanted to see a new play ,but we weren't able to get the tickets for _____ two of us.
A. / B. the C. among D. between
40. Three years later the man turned _____ engineer.
A. one B. the C. a D. /

第三章 代 词

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. "Can you come on Monday or Tuesday?"
"I'm afraid ____ day is possible."
A. either B. neither C. some D. any
- (98)2. Dr. Black comes from either Oxford or Cambridge. I can't remember _____.
A. where B. there C. which D. that
- (99)3. — Are the new rules working?
— Yes. _____ books are stolen.
A. Few B. More C. Some D. None
- (99)4. Few pleasures can equal _____ of a cool drink on a hot day.
A. some B. any C. that D. those
- (00)5. If you want to change for a double room, you'll have to pay _____ \$15.
A. another B. other C. more D. each
- (00)6. "Why don't we take a little break?"
"Didn't we just have _____?"
A. it B. that C. one D. this
- (02)7. Meeting my uncle after all these years was an unforgettable moment, _____ I will always treasure.
A. that B. one C. it D. what
- (03)8. "There's coffee and tea; you can have _____. "
"Thanks. "
A. either B. each C. one D. it

- (03)9. "Susan , go and join your sister cleaning the yard. "
 " Why ____ ? John is sitting there doing nothing. "
 A. him B. he C. I D. me
- (04)10. I invited Joe and Linda to dinner , but ____ of them came.
 A. neither B. either C. none D. both
- (04)11. There s ____ cooking oil left in the house. Would you go to the corner store and get ____ ?
 A. little ; some B. little ; any
 C. a little ; some D. a little ; any
- (06)12. - Which driver was to blame ?
 - Why , ____ ! It was the child s fault , clear and simple. He suddenly came out between two parked cars.
 A. both B. each C. either D. neither
- (07)13. He has made a lot of films , but ____ good ones.
 A. any B. some C. few D. many

答案 1. BCACA 6. CBADA 11. ADC

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (01)1. Both teams were in hard training ; ____ was willing to lose the game.
 A. either B. neither C. another D. the other
- (01)2. As I know , there is ____ car in this neighborhood.
 A. no such B. no a C. not such D. no such a
- (03)3. Shanghai is really a fascinating city and we ve decided to stay for ____ two weeks.
 A. another B. other C. the other D. other s
- (04)4. I had to buy ____ these books because I didn t know which one was the best.
 A. both B. none C. neither D. all
- (05)5. No progress was made in the trade talk as neither side would ac-

cept the conditions of ____.

A. others B. the other C. either D. another

(06) 6. I made so many changes in my composition that only I could read it. To ____ else , it was hard to make out.

A. none B. everyone C. someone D. anyone

(07) 7. The mayor has offered a reward of \$ 5000 to ____ who can capture the tiger alive or dead.

A. both B. others C. anyone D. another

答案： 1. BAADB 6. DC

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

(00) 1. “ Do you want tea or coffee ? ”

“ ____ . I really don t mind. ”

A. Both B. None C. Either D. Neither

(00) 2. One of the sides of the board should be painted yellow , and ____.

A. the other is white B. another white
C. the other white D. another is white

(01) 3. If this dictionary is not yours , ____ can it be ?

A. what else B. who else
C. which else s D. who else s

(01) 4. I read about it in some book or other , does it matter ____ it was ?

A. where B. what C. how D. which

(02) 5. “ He was nearly drowned once. ”

“ When was ____ ? ”

“ ____ was in 1998 when he was in middle school. ”

A. that ; It B. this ; This C. this ; It D. that ; This

(02) 6. “ You re always working. Come on , let s go shopping. ”

“ ____ you ever want to do is going shopping. ”

A. Anything B. Something

- (06) 7. Both sides have accused ____ of breaking the contract.
A. another B. the other C. neither D. each
- (07) 8. Treat ____ to a glass of wine to help you relax at the end of the day.
A. one B. oneself C. you D. yourself

答案 1. CDABA 6. DBD

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 代词的种类

1. 人称代词

1) 人称代词的格

主格	I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
宾格	me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them

人称代词的主格作主语、主语补足语、同位语、呼唤语、分词的逻辑主语。例如：

I like English. (主语)

Was it he who phoned? (主语补足语)

Lu Xun, he was a great writer. (同位语)

Hey, you, look out! (呼唤语)

She being ill, I have to stay home. (分词的逻辑主语)

人称代词的宾格作宾语、介词宾语、宾语补足语。例如：

Give me the book, please. (宾语)

I want to talk the matter over with her. (介词宾语)

I don't believe the murderer to be him. (宾语补足语)

2) 人称代词格的处理

①作表语时

按正式文体要求，人称代词在表语位置时须用主格，TOEFL 考试坚持这一观点。例如：

“Is it Mary?” “Yes, it is she.”

It's she, the one whom nobody likes.

但日常生活中，人们往往用宾格。例如：

Open the door please. It's me.

If I were him, I would take your advice.

如果后接 that 或 who 引导的从句时正式文体用主格。例如：

It was he that answered the question.

口语中也可用宾格。例如：

It was them who saved the girl.

②作补语时

与“to be”前的名词或代词同格，即遵循：当 A 是 B 时，A 和 B 同格。例如：

I was taken to be she. (she 是主语 I 的补语，同用主格)

He took me to be her. (her 是宾语 me 的补语，同用宾格)

③在 but 后代词的格

由于 but 可以看作连词，也可以看作介词，因此，but 后既可接主格，也可接宾格。例如：

Nobody can solve the problem but she/her.

一般认为“紧接主语应用主格，在宾语后可用宾格”。例如：

Nobody but she can solve the problem.

Everyone lost faith in the plan but me.

④在 than 与 as 之后可用主格，也可用宾格。例如：

You are younger than I/me.

She is as diligent a student as he/him.

为防止产生歧义，主句中的动词为及物动词时，than 或 as 之后的代词作主语时用主格，作宾语时用宾格。例如：

He likes Mary better than I. 他比我更喜欢玛丽。

He likes Mary better than me. 他虽喜欢我，但更喜欢玛丽。

3) 口语中人称代词宾格作异形主语(aberrantly shaped subject)的几种情况：

①用于下列简单回答。例如：

- Does any of you know where he lives? - Me.

- I'm very tired. - Me too.

Someone will have to answer for it. Not you or me.

②当人称代词与谓语不定式连用时。例如：

Me (to) play him at chess? No! 让我跟他下棋? 不干!

Him (to) go to the States? 他会去美国?

③表示不满、厌烦、轻蔑、惊诧、反诘、否定等强烈感情。例如：

{ - Susan, go and join your sister cleaning the yard.

{ - Why me? John is sitting there doing nothing.

- I think he is the top in the class. - Him?

④在 there be 或 here be 句型中。例如：

There were ten people in my family in the past, but now there is only me.

⑤作主语的人称代词有形容词修饰时。例如：

Tall and strong him broke the record for high-jump.

Poor me always get the blame.

⑥在感叹句中，通常被一个形容词修饰时。例如：

Look what I've done! Silly me!

Lucky old him/her.

4) 多人称代词连用时的词序

①在许多场合，出于礼貌，说话人总是先人后己，即以“你、他、我”的顺序。例如：

You, Peter and I are in the same group.

②在承认错误或表示自责时，则以“我、他、你”的顺序。例如：

I and my wife are responsible for the faults of our son.

③在谈到亲属时以“先长辈、再自己、后晚辈”的顺序。例如：

My parents, my wife, I and our children are going to be present at your wedding.

2. 物主代词

形容词型	my	your	his	her	its	our	their
名词型	mine	yours	his	hers	its	ours	theirs

形容词型物主代词作定语 ;名词型物主代词作主语、宾语和表语。

例如：

He is my teacher. (定语)

"Whose book is this?" "It's mine." (表语)

I've finished my homework. Have you finished yours? (宾语)

He is an old friend of mine. (介词宾语)

3. 反身代词

单 数	myself	yourself	himself	herself	itself
复 数	ourselves	yourselves	themselves	themselves	themselves

反身代词可用作宾语、表语和同位语。例如：

He is old enough to look after himself. (宾语)

They themselves did that. (同位语)

The poor boy was not quite himself today. (表语)

Confidence in yourself is the first step on the road to success. (介词宾语) 自信是走向成功的第一步。

注意下列反身代词构成的短语的含义：

1) beside oneself 因.....而极度兴奋

When he learned of the good news, he was beside himself with joy.

2) be oneself 身心健康

I am glad that you are yourself again.

3) by oneself 单独,独自,靠自己(没有别人帮助)

One can't possibly do it all by oneself.

4) for oneself 为自己,亲自

If you don't believe me, you can go and see for yourself.

5) in oneself 本身,本性

Yours is not a bad idea in itself.

6) of oneself 自动地

The accident did not happen of itself.

7) to oneself (常与 have, get, keep 连用) 单独所有;暗自地;私下地

When I eat in a restaurant ,I like to have a table to myself.

4. 疑问代词

who	whom	whose	which	what
-----	------	-------	-------	------

疑问代词一般放在句首，用来构成特殊疑问句，可用作主语、宾语、表语和定语。例如：

Who are you looking for ?

Whose (book) is this ?

Whose children are they ?

Which would you rather be — a doctor or a teacher ?

What can I do for you ?

5. 指示代词

this	that	these	those	such	same
------	------	-------	-------	------	------

1) this , that , these , those 的用法

①在句中作主语、宾语、表语和定语。例如：

This is my pen. (主语)

Do you want this ? (宾语)

That book is mine. (定语)

What I want is this. (表语)

②this (these) 一般用来指时间和空间上较近的人或物 ; 而 that (those) 一般指时间和空间上较远的人或物。例如：

This is a pen and that is a pencil.

These days we are very busy.

③this (these) 一般指后面要讲到的事物 ; 而 that (those) 常指前面提到过的事物。例如：

What he told me is this : He wanted to go to Beijing.

He didn't come. That is why he didn't know.

指示代词 that 还可以用在下列短语中：

like that 这样	that is (to say) 这就是说
that's all 就这些	that's it 说对了
that's that 情况就是这样	

2) such 的用法

①such 用作代词，在从句中作主语，指上面说的情况。例如：

Please send us your latest samples if such are available.

Such was the way he spoke to me.

I may have offended him, but such was not my intention.

Such are the viewpoints of my friends on life.

②such 用作形容词，修饰名词：

I have never seen such flowers. (修饰复数名词)

Is there such a book in English? (修饰单数名词)

He did not deserve such fortune. (修饰不可数名词)

③用于 as such，意为“作为(这样)一个……”，“就这一点而论”
“本身”。例如：

He is a good man and is known as such to everybody.

He is my father and as such can tell me what to do.

Success, as such, does not always bring happiness.

I can't call my book a best seller as such but it's very popular.

④用于 such as 后接从句，意为“……的东西或人”，“诸如”。例如：

I haven't much money but you can use such as I have.

We had hoped to give you a chance such as nobody else ever had.

⑤用于 such that，后接从句，意为“(是)这样(以致)”。例如：

The progress was such that it surprised her teacher.

His bad behaviour was such that he angered everyone.

⑥构成 such as 或 such that，引导从句：

Do not trust such men as praise you to your face.

I have never heard such stories as he tells.

It gave him such a shock that his face turned white.

He is such a fool that no one will keep company with him.

说明 as 为关系代词，在从句中作主语或宾语，引导定语从句；that 为连词，引导结果状语从句，that 有时可省略。

⑦用于 such as to + 动词原形，意为“(是)这样(以致)”：

I hope his illness is not such as to cause anxiety.

His carelessness is such as to make it unlikely that he will pass the

examination.

His behaviour is such as to make his friends angry.

⑧构成 such as to 意为“这样……以便(致)”。例如：

So I went about my job in such a way as to try to kill the two birds with one stone.

4) same 的用法

same 可用作定语、主语、表语和宾语，前必须加 the。例如：

I went there on the same day. (定语)

The same can be said of the other city. (主语)

What I want to say is the same. (表语)

I'll do the same. (宾语)

6. 不定代词

不指明替代某个特定名词或形容词的代词叫不定代词。不定代词具有名词和形容词的性质，注意下列几组常用的不定代词的用法：

1) one, it, that	2) some, any	3) each, every
4) none, no one	5) few, a few, little, a little	
6) other, another	7) all, both	8) neither, either

1) one 与 it, that 的用法

①One 和 it 的区别

用来指物时，it 指名称相同的同一物，one 指名称相同的另一物，或上面提到的那一类人或物中的一个。例如

{ A :Are you still using your old car ?

{ B :No, I sold it the other day.

{ A :I've just bought a new car.

{ B :I'm going to buy one next week.

A good writer is one who can express the common things in an uncommon way.

②that, the one 和 one 的区别

在进行同类比较时，that, the one 和 one 都可用来替代前面提到的名词，以避免重复。一般说来，遵循下列规则：

带定冠词或人称代词等表特指的名词：

用 that 或 the one(可数)，复数用 the ones 或 those 替代；

带不定冠词或零冠词的表泛指的名词：

单数用 one，复数用 ones 替代；

I prefer the weather of Shanghai to that of Beijing.

She preferred the seat here to $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{the one} \\ \text{that} \end{matrix} \right\}$ near the window.

My shoes are similar to $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{the ones} \\ \text{those} \end{matrix} \right\}$ you had on yesterday.

I prefer a small house in a small town to one in a large city.

A desk made of wood costs less than one made of steel.

There was one long writing-table and two small ones.

③it 和 that 的比较

相同之处：两者所代表的名词均为特指。

不同之处：it 所指的名词与前面所提到的名词为同一物。that 所指的名词与前面所提到的名词为同一类，但并非同一物。例如：

The climate of my native town is mild ; I like it very much.

The climate of my native town is not so warm as that of Fujian.

2) some 和 any 的区别

①some 和 any 的通常用法

some 和 any 都可用作定语，用来修饰可数与不可数名词，单数或复数名词。some 用于单数可数名词前，表示“某一”。some 用于数词前，表示“大约”。some 一般用于肯定句，any 多用于疑问与否定句。例如：

Please bring some coffee and cream. (一些)

There must be some reason for what he has done. (某一)

The club has some forty members. (大约)

I don't have any French books.

②some 的特殊用法

表示邀请或请求，用 some 表示预期的答案是肯定的、或鼓励对方给予一个肯定的答复的问句。例如：

Could you let me have some coffee ? (请求)

Would you like some bananas ? (邀请)

③any 的特殊用法

当 any 用于肯定句时,意为三者或三者以上中的“任何”一个,修饰可数名词单数或不可数名词作主语时,谓语动词为单数,且不用否定式。例如:

Any of my friends is able to do it.

Any book can solve this problem.

You may take any of them.

④注意 any one 与 anyone 的区别:

在 any one 中,any 是形容词,既可指人,也可指物,any one 后可接 of。anyone 是不定代词,只指人,后面不接 of。例如:

- { - Do you know them all ?
- { - I don't know any one of them. (指人)
- { - Which dictionary do you want ?
- { - Any one will do. (指物)

Any one of us is liable to fall ill. (可接 of)

Did anyone call when I was out ? (只用于指人)

有关 some 和 any 的常用短语:

some day 总有一天	some more 再来一点
some or other 某一个	at any rate 不管怎样
by any chance 碰巧,恰好	in any case 不管怎样

3) each 和 every 的用法

①each 可作代词和形容词,强调个别,代词 each 可以充当定语、主语、宾语、定语和同位语。every 只能作形容词,强调整体,相当于汉语的“每个都”,在句中作定语。例如:

The teacher had a talk with each of them. (宾语)

Each of us has two boxes. (主语)

We have two boxes each. (同位语)

We each have three ball-pens. (同位语)

Each boy has a book. (定语)

Every one has strong and weak points. (定语)

②each 所代表的数可以是两个或两个以上,而 every 所指的数必

须是三个以上。例如：

Each of the two has won a prize.

Every student in the class likes English.

③every 和 not 构成部分否定。例如：

Every man cannot be a mathematician.

不是人人都能成为数学家。

④every + 基数词 + 复数名词 = every + 序数词 + 单数名词。例如：

every three days } 每三天，每隔两天
every third day }

4) nothing, none 和 no one (nobody)的用法

nothing 指“什么东西也没有”。no one 是个用于泛指的代词，不强调具体范围，仅限于指人，相当于 nobody，不用于与介词 of 构成的短语。none 可用于指人或指物，使用 none 时，有一定的范围，这个范围可用与介词 of 构成的短语来表示，也可以不表示出来。例如：

①nothing 指物，意为“什么东西也没有”。

{ Is there anything in the box ?
{ No, there is nothing. (盒子是空的)

②no one (nobody) 意为“什么人也沒有”，不强调具体范围。

{ “Did anyone come to see me ?”
{ “No one (nobody). ”

He was left alone, with no one to look after him.

③none 指物(可数或不可数)，有具体范围，意为“没有(所指的)物”。

{ “Are there any pencils in your pencil-box ?”
{ “None. ”(但盒子里有别的东西，因此不用 nothing)

I wanted some more coffee, but there was none left.

④none 指人，有具体范围，意为“没有(所指的)人”

{ “Did any of my friends come to see me ?”
{ “None (of them came) ”.
(也许有朋友以外的人来找过他，因此不用 no one (nobody))。

有关 none 的常用短语：

<p>have none of 不同意,不允许,不买.....的账</p> <p>none but 除了.....谁也不,只有.....</p> <p>none other than (不是别人或他物)正是.....</p> <p>none the less 尽管如此,仍然</p> <p>none the worse 毫不逊色,一点也不更差</p> <p>second to none 不比任何人差,最好的,第一流的</p>

5) few, little 与 a few, a little 的用法

few 和 little 表示“没有多少”,含否定意义,而 a few 与 a little 表示“有一些,有几个”,含肯定意义。few 与 a few 修饰可数名词, little 与 a little 修饰不可数名词。它们在句中常用作定语、主语和宾语。例如:

There's little milk in the bottle. (表否定,修饰不可数名词)

He knows a little English. (表肯定,修饰不可数名词)

Few of them could speak English. (表否定,修饰可数名词)

I've still got a few things to do. (表肯定,修饰可数名词)

说明 the few 意为“少数几个”,如: John was among the few who really understood it.

only a few 意为“仅少数几个”,如: Only a few of the children can read.

有关 few 的常用短语:

few and far between 稀少,不常有	no fewer than 至少有
quite a few 不少,相当多	not a few 好些,相当多

6) other 和 another 的用法

A. other 作定语的用法

①泛指“另外的”,常与复数名词或不可数名词连用。例如:

表泛指 other + 复数名词或不可数名词

There are other ways of translating this sentence.

You can find other information in the book.

前面有另一个限定词时表特指意义, other 后可接不可数名词, 或根据上下文内容接单数或复数可数名词。

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{any, the, no, some, many} \\ \text{several, two, all, my, John's} \end{array} \right\} + \text{other} + \text{复数名词}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{any, the, no, some, every} \\ \text{this, that, one, my, John's} \end{array} \right\} + \text{other} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{单数名词} \\ \text{或不可数名词} \end{array} \right.$$

例如：

Have you got any other questions ?

He is taller than any other student in his class.

②other 与数字连用时的位置

前面无冠词时，数字位于 other 前，前面有冠词时，数字位于 other 前或后均可。例如：

Give me $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{two other} \\ \text{the other two} \\ \text{the two other} \end{array} \right\}$ books. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{给我另外 2 本书。} \\ \text{给我另外那 2 本书。} \\ \text{给我另外那 2 本书。} \end{array} \right.$

B. other 作代词的用法

用作代词的 other 意为“另一个”，“别人”，常以 the other, others, the others 3 种形式出现。

①the other 指“两者中的另一个”，常与 one 连用，指两个人或物构成的一组中的个体；作定语修饰复数名词时，表示另一方中的“全部其余的”。

He held a book in one hand and his notes in the other.

I like this book, and I like the other books too.

②others 是 other 的复数形式，泛指“别的人或物”（但不是全部）。

Some are carrying water, others are watering the trees.

③the others 是 the other 的复数形式，特指“全部其余的人或物”。

I have got ten pencils. Two of them are red, the others are blue.

有关 other 的常用短语：

in other words 换句话说	every other (接名词单数) 每隔
other than 除了；不同于	none other than 不是别人，而是
some or other 某一个	the other day 不久前的一天

C. another 作定语的用法

①another 由 an 和 other 合成，故只能接单数名词，意为“另一个”，“又一个”，“另外的”，“不同的”。例如：

He may come in another moment.

One man's meat is another man's poison.

I'm in a hurry; I'll see you another time.

He is another Lei Feng of our time.

He seems quite another person than what he was.

Where shall we be in another ten years? (接数词加名词)

②几种与 another 加数词连用意思相同的表达法：

We are going to stay here for {
another three weeks.
a further three weeks.
additional three weeks.
three more weeks.
three weeks more.

D. another 作代词的用法：

①常与 one 组合构成“one another”短语，指同一组内的两个个体，意为“另一个人”，“另一回事”。例如：

One person may like to spend his holiday at the seashore, while another may prefer the mountains.

His voice says one thing, but his heart thinks another.

②指“另一个人或物”，“另一个那样的人或物”。例如：

He has two watches, and now he has bought another.

He is a gossip, and you are another.

有关 another 的常用短语：

one after another 一个接着一个 挨次地
one way or another 设法，无论如何
is one thing, and is quite another
.....是一回事，.....是另一回事
another than; another than (与 other than 同义)
除.....之外；不同于，不是.....那个样子

7) all 和 both 的用法

这两个词都表示整体，但 both 指两个人或物，而 all 指三个以上的人或物。在句中都可作主语、宾语、表语、同位语和定语。例如：

All of us should work hard. (主语)

We both like to watch TV. (同位语)

I like both of the books. (宾语)

That's all for today. (表语)

All knowledge comes from practice. (定语)

注意 :①all 表示不可数名词时 ,其谓语动词用单数。

注意 :②both 和 all 加否定词是部分否定。如果表示全部否定 ,要分别用 neither 和 none。比较 :

- { Both of us are not teachers. (部分否定)我们俩不都是老师。
- { Neither of us is a teacher. (全部否定)我们俩都不是老师。
- { All of the books are not English books. (部分否定)
- { 这些书不都是英语书。
- { None of the books are English books. (全部否定)
- { 这些都不是英语书。

8) neither 和 either 的用法

neither 表示“两者都不” ,either 表示“两者中的任何一个” 。两个词都用作单数 ,在句子中可作主语、宾语和定语。例如 :

Neither of the answers is wrong. (主语)

Either sentence is right. (定语)

I know neither of the teachers. (宾语)

You may take either of the books. (宾语)

7. 复合不定代词

someone , somebody , something , anyone , anybody , anything , no one , nobody , nothing , everyone , everybody , everything

使用时应注意以下几点 :

1) 在使用时应注意格的呼应

①美国用法 :用 he , him , his , himself 替代(TOFEL 考试坚持这一用法)。例如 :

Anyone who does that is wasting his time and money.

Anybody can attend the meeting if he is interested.

Anybody can see this for himself.

②英国用法 :用 their , them , themselves 替代(雅思考试或剑桥英语中要这样用)。例如 :

Everybody must try their best to study English well.

Someone left their umbrella behind yesterday. Would they please collect it from the office.

Anyone can do that , can t they ?

③公文，法律条文用法：用 he or she, his or her, him or her, himself or herself 替代(显得有些累赘，口语中不用)。例如：

Every one of us should do his or her duty.

2) 复合不定代词的语法功能

①当 something, anything, nothing, everything 作主语时，谓语动词一律用单数，随后的代词以及相应的限定词也用单数形式。例如：

There is somebody in the room.

Anything on the table can be thrown away, can't it?

②当被形容词修饰时，形容词须后置。例如：

Someone important has arrived, I'm sure.

It is wrong to worship and have faith in everything foreign (崇洋媚外)。

③在比较级中，若比较的另一方是复合不定代词时，须在后面加上 else 将自身排除在外。例如：

Knowledge is more important than anything else.

What he told me was nothing else than nonsense.

5) 复合不定代词和复合词与 else 连用时的含义

else 意为“其他的”，“别的”，作后置修饰语，可与所有由 any-, some-, no-, every- 与 -body, -one, -thing, -where 合成的不定代词和副词连用。

anybody/anything/anywhere + else	别的人/事/地方
nobody/nothing/nowhere + else	没有别的人/事/地方
somebody/something/somewhere + else	某个别的人/事/地方
everybody/everything/everywhere + else	所有别的人/事/地方

Did you see anybody else? 你还见到别的人了吗?

Everybody else but me has gone to the party. 除了我以外，别人都去参加晚会了。

The old man was fooling himself, if he wasn't fooling anybody else.

如果说那老人不是在愚弄别人，那就是在愚弄自己。

Nobody else understands me as well as you do. 别人没有一个像你这样了解我。

Nothing else can I do for you. 别的忙我帮不上。

We went to the park and nowhere else. 我们到公园去了, 其它什么地方也没去。

Let's go somewhere else. 咱们到别的地方去吧。

注意① everybody/everyone else 常指“在一个特定人群中的所有别的人”, 通常句中应指明其范围, 或根据上下文读者能判定其范围, 否定句、疑问句或条件句中用 anybody/anyone else。肯定句中使用 anyone else, 泛指“(任何)别的人”。

注意② else 还可与疑问代词和疑问副词连用。例如:

who else, how else, what else, when else, where else

注意③ else 还可与其他词连用。例如:

all else, little else, much else (作主语时, 谓语动词用单数)

注意④ somebody else 的所有格为 somebody else's, anybody else 的所有格为 anybody else's, who else 的所有格为 who else's, 后面不紧接名词时也用作 whose else。如 “Who else's can it be? / Whose else can it be?”

有关 something, anything, nothing 的常用短语:

something:

be something of 可说是一个 有点.....的味道或气质 or something = something like that 表示不十分肯定 something or other 一样什么东西, 一件什么事情 be something of the kind 某些类似的东西
--

anything:

be as/as anything得不得了	anything but 并不, 决不
not for anything 说什么也不	like anything 拼命地
if anything 要说有什么两样的话	

nothing:

think nothing of 认为没什么	to say nothing of 更不用说
make nothing of 不当回事	未能利用
nothing but 只, 仅仅	
nothing less than = nothing short of 简直是	
next to nothing 几乎没有	

8. 关系代词

1) 关系代词的形式和功用：

主 语	定 语	宾 语	介词宾语
who(指人)	whose	whom	for whom
which(指物)	of which , whose	which	in which
that(指人或物)		that	

2) 关系代词用法要点：

①关系代词在引导的句中作主语时，其后的动词必须与先行词的人称和数一致。例如：

I , who am blind , advise you to use your eyes well.

My new trousers , which are really too long , must be shortened.

②关系代词用何格须视其所引导的从句的结构而定。例如：

He is the man who wants to see our manager.

He is the man whom our manager plans to interview.

I know a boy whose name is Jack.

3) 关系代词 which 和 that 的用法（参阅第十一章定语从句部分）

（二）限定词与限定词之间的搭配

1. 限定词的搭配位置

按照限定词与限定词之间的不同位置，限定词可分为前位限定词、中位限定词和后位限定词。

- | | | |
|-------|---|--|
| 1) 前位 | { | A. 指量限定词：all , both , half , etc. |
| | | B. 倍数词：double , twice , three times , etc. |
| | | C. 分数词：one-third , two-fifths , etc. |
| 2) 中位 | { | A. 冠词：a , an , the , etc. |
| | | B. 指示代词：this , that , these , those , etc. |
| | | C. 形容词性物主代词：my , our , your , etc. |
| | | D. 名词所有格：Mary's , my friend's , etc. |
| | | E. 某些不定代词：some , any , no , every , each ,
either , neither , enough , etc. |
| | | F. 疑问限定词：what , whose , which(ever) , etc. |

- 3) 后位 { A. 序数词 : first , second , third , etc.
 B. 基数词 : one , two , three , etc.
 C. 某些不定代词 : many , much , more , most ,
 little , few , less , least , several
 last , next , other , another , such , etc.

2. 限定词的搭配关系

一个名词中心词之前不可并用两个前位限定词或两个中位限定词。所以“李明的那本书”不是 Li Mings that book , 而是 that book of Li Mings (也就是我们所说的“双重所有格”)。Li Mings 和 that 同属中位限定词, 不可并用。后位限定词不受此限。例如 :

all the four teachers	前中后
twice your books	前中
half his lecture	前中
some such furniture	中后
no such luck	中后

基数词, few 及 such 与其它后位限定词重叠搭配的现象 :

the first/last/next/other two chapters	中后后
the first/last/next/other few months	中后后
many/few/two/other/several such copies	后后

3. 限定词搭配的跨类现象

1) 后位限定词 such 可用于中位限定词 a/an 之前。例如 :

It was such a joke.

Such an expression is never heard on British lips.

但 such 与其他限定词搭配时, 后面不加 a/an。例如 :

all , no , some , any , another	} such case(s)
other , two , many , few , several	

可以说 : “no such thing” , 不说 : “no such a thing”

可以说 : “any such street” , 不说 : “any such a street”

2) a/an 与 many , what , 或分数词搭配时。例如 :

For many a day it rained. What a fine day it is !

The resolution requires a two-thirds majority to carry.

第三部分 分类练习

1. This bike is neither ____ nor _____. It's mine.
A. yours ; my B. his ; her s C. hers ; mine D. his ; hers
2. "You ought to do it at once. "
"What , ____ ?"
A. My B. Mine C. I D. me
3. The peasants had nothing of ____ before liberation.
A. themselves B. them C. theirs D. their own
4. ____ is ____ family that the villagers all admire it.
A. It ; such an united B. His ; such a united
C. Her s ; so united a D. Theirs ; so an united
5. Long before children are able to speak or understand a language ____ communicate through facial expressions and by making noises.
A. they B. he C. we D. it
6. ____ student with a little common sense should be able to answer the question.
A. Each B. One C. Either D. Any
7. The problem that we are faced with right now is ____ of great urgency and so it needs immediate attention.
A. that B. none C. some D. one
8. The four goals showed that the team had lost ____ their old abilities.
A. nothing of B. no one of C. none of D. no of
9. None of us could agree on where to go on vacation , so we went to different places , ____ to Shanghai and ____ to Xiamen.
A. them ; me B. they ; I C. they ; me D. them ; I
10. Precisely the same thought sent the three of us in two different directions , ____.
A. they to San Francisco and I to New York
B. them to San Francisco and I to New York
C. them to San Francisco and me to New York
D. themselves to San Francisco and myself to New York
11. I want very much to buy this colour TV set , but I can't afford ____.
A. one B. it C. that D. this
12. I'd like to buy a present for my father's birthday , ____ at a proper price but of great use.
A. one B. anyone C. that D. everything
13. The scholar standing over there was ____ the great mathematician Chen Jingrun

himself.

A. none other than

B. none the less

C. no other but

D. no one but

14. "Was ____ Mary?" "Yes, it was ____ who phoned."

A. she ; her

B. it ; she

C. that ; her

D. her ; her

15. Is this skirt ____ she likes best ?

A. one

B. that

C. the one

D. which

16. By the time the youngest was fifteen , the mother would have been in her early fifties and would expect to live ____ further 20 years.

A. another

B. still

C. one

D. a

17. "It doesn't fit me well." "What about the ____ it?"

A. next one about

B. one next by

C. next one to

D. one next to

18. "How many elephants did you see?" " ____."

A. None

B. No one

C. Not many ones

D. Nothing

19. ____ of the washing-machines works. We must have ____ repair the two of them.

A. None ; any

B. None ; someone

C. Either ; somebody

D. Neither ; someone

20. ____ of us knows the reason why winter is colder than summer.

A. Every one

B. Everyone

C. Someone

D. All

21. We started the game confidently , but ____ soon became apparent that our opponents were too strong for us.

A. we

B. they

C. it

D. this

22. Some people are against the plan , but ____ support it.

A. many more

B. much more

C. no more

D. any more

23. Bill is a man of ____ words.

A. little

B. less

C. few

D. fewer

24. It's freezing ! I've never known a winter ____ cold before.

A. any

B. that

C. this

D. much

25. I'm afraid there is very ____ hope to finish the job before May 1.

A. few

B. little

C. small

D. big

26. In some big cities , ____ is done to make smoke clean before it goes into the air.

A. a lot of

B. few

C. little

D. any

27. ____ an English-Chinese dictionary.

A. Each of students has

B. The students each has

- C. Each the student has D. The students each have
28. I had thought I would have difficulty in solving the problems , but as a matter of fact , I met ____.
- A. none B. no one C. nothing D. neither
29. She said she would live in London for ____ four or five years.
- A. other B. another C. the other D. the others
30. Mary and Jones have arrived , but ____ students in the class aren t here yet.
- A. other B. the other C. the others D. others
31. He came back from the market with a piece of meat in ____ hand and some fish in ____.
- A. one ; another B. the one ; other
- C. the one ; another D. one ; the other
32. He refused to accept ____ of the three suggestions made by the Students Union.
- A. none B. any C. neither D. each
33. You d better look at the difficulty ____.
- A. the other way B. another way
- C. by the other way D. by another way
34. The committee members are quarrelling , ____ of being responsible for error.
- A. one accusing the other B. one accusing another
- C. each accusing other D. each accusing the other
35. I just need a book to kill time , so ____ will do.
- A. any one B. anyone C. one D. it
36. Be sure to practise all four language skills - ____ , reading , writing , listening and speaking - in every lesson.
- A. that is B. this is C. it is D. they are
37. " Jack certainly has a low opinion of Susan. "
- " It can t be any worse than ____ of him. "
- A. she B. she does C. her D. hers
38. Here are all the books I have. You may borrow ____ you like.
- A. whatever B. what C. whichever D. which
39. The thieves ran away separately , ____ carrying a bag.
- A. all B. each C. every D. either
40. Constructive advice should be sought before ____ measure is taken.
- A. such any B. any such a C. any such D. any of such

第四章 形容词和副词

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. If I had _____, I'd visit Europe, stopping at the small interesting places.
A. a long enough holiday B. an enough long holiday
C. a holiday enough long D. a long holiday enough
- (98)2. Professor White has written some stories, but he is _____ known for his plays.
A. the best B. more C. better D. the most
- (00)3. _____ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills.
A. Brave enough students B. Enough brave students
C. Students brave enough D. Students enough brave
- (01)4. It is generally believed that teaching is _____ it is a science.
A. an art much as B. much an art as
C. as an art much as D. as much an art as
- (02)5. Boris has brains. In fact, I doubt whether anyone in the class has _____ IQ.
A. a high B. a higher C. the higher D. the highest
- (03)6. Alien had to call a taxi because the box was _____ to carry all the way home.
A. much too heavy B. too much heavy
C. heavy too much D. too heavy much
- (05)7. This _____ girl is Linda's cousin.
A. pretty little Spanish B. Spanish little pretty

- C. Spanish pretty little D. little pretty Spanish
- (06)8. This washing machine is environmentally friendly because it uses
 ____ water and electricity than ____ models.
- A. less ; older B. less ; elder
 C. fewer ; older D. fewer ; elder
- (07)9. The new group of students is better-behaved than the other group
 who stayed here ____.
- A. early B. earlier C. earliest D. the earliest

答案 1. ACCDB 6. AAAB

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Paper produced every year is ____ the world's production of vehicles.
- A. the three times weight of B. three times the weight of
 C. as three times heavy as D. three times as heavier as
- (98)2. We advertised for pupils last autumn , and got ____ 60.
- A. more than B. more of C. as much as D. so many as
- (99)3. The director gave me a better offer than ____.
- A. that of Dick's B. Dick's
 C. he gave Dick D. those of Dick
- (00)4. They're not very good , but we like ____.
- A. anyway to play basketball with them
 B. to play basketball with them anyway
 C. to play with them basketball anyway
 D. with them to play basketball anyway
- (00)5. What he has done is far from ____.
- A. satisfactory B. satisfied C. satisfaction D. satisfy
- (00)6. You're standing too near the camera. Can you move ____ ?
- A. a bit far B. a little farther
 C. a bit of farther D. a little far

- (01)7. In recent years travel companies have succeeded in selling us the idea that the further we go , ____.
- A. our holiday will be better
B. our holiday will be the better
C. the better our holiday will be
D. the better will our holiday be
- (02)8. As far as I am concerned , education is about learning and the more you learn , ____.
- A. the more for life are you equipped
B. the more equipped for life you are
C. the more life you are equipped for
D. you are equipped the more for life
- (03)9. The house rent is expensive. I've got about half the space I had at home and I'm paying ____ here.
- A. as three times much B. as much three times
C. much as three times D. three times as much
- (03)10. We were in ____ when we left that we forgot the airline tickets.
- A. a rush so anxious B. a such anxious rush
C. so an anxious rush D. such an anxious rush
- (04)11. He speaks English well indeed , but of course not ____ a native speaker.
- A. as fluent as B. more fluent than
C. so fluently as D. much fluently than
- (05)12. At a rough estimate , Nigeria is ____ Great Britain.
- A. three times the size as B. the size three times of
C. three times as the size of D. three times the size of
- (06)13. A typhoon swept across this area with heavy rains and winds ____ strong as 113 miles per hour.
- A. too B. very C. so D. as
- (07)14. Alan is a careful driver , but he drives ____ of my friends.
- A. more carefully B. the most carefully
C. less carefully D. the least carefully

答案 1. BACBA 6. BCBDD 11. CDDD

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (01) 1. Many people have helped with canned food , however , the food bank needs ____ for the poor.
A. more B. much C. many D. most
- (03) 2. “ I was riding along the street and all of a sudden , a car cut in and knocked me down. ”
“ You can never be ____ careful in the street. ”
A. much B. very C. so D. too
- (05) 3. It took us quite a long time to get there. It was ____ journey.
A. three hour B. a three hour
C. a three-hour D. three hours

答案 :1. ADC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. Although Linda tried hard in the exam , she did ____ than her brother.
A. more badly B. much better
C. much badly D. much worse
- (02) 2. Americans eat ____ vegetables per person today as they did in 1910.
A. more than twice B. as twice as many
C. twice as many as D. more than twice as many
- (03) 3. After supper she would sit down by the fire , sometimes for ____ an hour , thinking of her young and happy days.
A. as long as B. as soon as
C. as much as D. as many as
- (03) 4. Many students signed up for the ____ race in the sports meeting to

be held next week.

A. 800-metre-long

B. 800-metres-long

C. 800 metre length

D. 800 metres length

(04) 5. I have worked with him for some time and have found that he is _____ than John.

A. more efficiently a worker

B. a more efficient worker

C. more an efficient worker

D. a worker more efficiently

(04) 6. _____, some famous scientists have the qualities of being both careful and careless.

A. Strangely enough

B. Enough strangely

C. Strange enough

D. Enough strange

(05) 7. "What a nice fire you have in your fireplace!"

"During the winter I like my house _____."

A. warmly and comfortably

B. warm and comfortable

C. warm and comfortably

D. warmly and comfortable

(06) 8. Some experts think that language learning is much _____ for children as their tongues are more flexible.

A. easy

B. easier

C. easily

D. more easily

(07) 9. Nowadays the roles of husband and wife are not as _____ defined as before, especially when both partners work and earn money for the family.

A. clear

B. clearer

C. clearly

D. more clearly

答案: 1. DDAAB 6. ABBC

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 形容词

1. 形容词的构成

形容词是用来修饰名词的, 它们没有性和数的变化。许多形容词是通过改变名词的词尾构成的。例如:

-ic: history → historic

-al: music → musical

-able :fashion → fashionable -ful : beauty → beautiful
 -ent : depend → dependent -ive : effect → effective
 -ous : danger → dangerous -less : hope → hopeless
 -ish : child → childish -ly : friend → friendly
 -y : wind → windy

注意 :下列以-ly 结尾的词是形容词而不是副词。

friendly lively lovely lonely likely deadly
 orderly silly timely

2. 形容词的作用

1) 作定语,一般放在所修饰的名词之前。例如:

He is an intelligent boy.

He is believed to be one of the best living composers.

表类别和起强调作用的形容词通常只用作定语,不用作表语:

- ①表类别的形容词 :chemical , chief , criminal , elder ,
 entire , eventual , former , industrial , local , lone ,
 main , maximum , medical , national , nuclear , only ,
 outdoor /indoor , principal , social , underlying , whole
 ②起强调作用的形容词 :mere , sheer , utter

2) 作表语,与可用作系动词的 appear , become , come , cook , die ,
 fall , feel , go , get , grow , keep , lay , look , prove , remain , run , seem ,
 smell , taste , sound , turn 等连用。例如:

cook tender	die young	feel soft
lay flat	prove effective	remain single
smell bad	sound wonderful	turn yellow
come true/right/loose/easy/natural/cheap/open		
go deaf/hungry/dead/bad/white/red/mad/blind/wrong		
fall ill/sick/asleep/due/silent/dark		
run short/low/high/loose/wild/cold		

某些以 a-开首的形容词,表示健康状况和情感的形容词常作表语,不用作定语:

- | |
|---|
| ①以 a-开首的形容词 : afraid , alike , alive , alone , asleep ,
ashamed , awake , aware |
| ②表示健康状况和情感的形容词 : well , ill , faint , content ,
due , fond , glad , likely , ready , sorry , sure , unable , upset |

某些用作表语的形容词作定语时有另一种形式 :

用作表语	alive	afraid	alike	asleep	ill
用作定语	live/living	frightened	similar	sleeping	sick

说明① :说某人仍活着,用 living。live [laiv]“活的,活生生的”,用作 dead 的反义词,作定语时主要用于修饰动物,如 a live animal/fish/elephant,此时也可用 living 修饰,如 a living animal/fish/elephant。

说明② :当 ill 作前置修饰名词时,其含义相当于 bad, harmful, 如 ill luck(厄运), ill wind(恶风), ill news(坏消息)。例如 :

It's an ill wind that blows nobody (any) good. (谚语)

使人人遭殃的风才是恶风。(意指 :天下很少有对人人都有害的事,不论发生什么不幸,总有人从中得到好处。)

3) 作补语。例如 :

The news made everyone happy. (宾语补足语)

She came home sick. (主语补足语)

4) 作状语,表示伴随状况、原因、让步等。例如 :

He went to bed, cold and hungry. (伴随状况)

Eager to see the sunrise, they got up at four. (原因)

Large or small, all countries are equal. (让步)

5) 某些形容词可作介词宾语,构成固定词组。例如 :

at large 逍遥法外

for short 简称

for good (and all) 永久地

for certain/sure 肯定地

in brief 简言之

in the right/wrong 正确/错误

in common 共同

in the open 在户外,公开地

in full 全部地

in particular 特别,尤其

on the whole 总的说来

on the contrary 相反

to the full 尽量地,充分地

to the good 有好处

3. 形容词后置的几种情况

1) 表示度量的形容词如 long, wide, broad, high, tall, deep,

thick, old 等与“数词 + 名词”连用时须后置, 其结构为:

数词 + 名词 + 度量形容词

six meters long twenty years old

three meters wide two inches thick

2) 形容词修饰复合不定代词 something, anything, nothing, everything 等时须后置。例如:

Has anything special happened?

I've something very particular to ask you.

3) 下列以 a-开首的形容词修饰名词时必须后置:

alike, alive, alone, asleep, ashamed, awake, aware

He is the only man awake/alive.

Time alone will show who will win.

但若有副词修饰时(一般不用 very, 应用 much 或 very much), 则可作前置定语。例如:

a very much ashamed girl 一个很害羞的女孩

the fully awake patient 一位完全清醒的病人

a really alive student 一位非常活跃的学生

the exactly alike brother 长得完全一样的两兄弟之一

4) 下列分词形容词作定语时须后置:

applying, caused, discussed, found, provided, questioned, taken

Please put your banana skin in the bag provided.

A key factor discussed in the report is the way airports deal with delays.

4. 形容词既可前置也可后置的几种情况

1) 某些分词形容词, 如 affected, chosen, identified, infected, remaining, selected, stolen 等作定语时。例如:

The chosen song features innovative use of digital sampling.

The song chosen may be a disappointment to lovers of traditional ballads.

The remaining students will serve as the audience.

I would stay and perform my duty during the short time still remaining ?

2) 某些以-able 和-ible 结尾的形容词可置于被最高级或 first , last , next , every , only 修饰的名词之前或之后 , 含义不变。例如 :

the best available actor } 能找到的最好的演员
the best actor available }

the only suitable person } 唯一合适的人
the only person suitable }

the best possible solution } 最好的解决办法
the best solution possible }

3) 下列形容词既可前置也可后置 , 但含义不同 :

adopted { 前置 : 收养的 the adopted son
 { 后置 : 被采纳的 the proposal adopted

concerned { 前置 : 挂念的 , 忧虑的 a very concerned look
 { 后置 : 有关的 all the countries concerned

due { 前置 : 适当的 , 应得的 due punishment
 { 后置 : 应付的 , 到期的 the rent due

involved { 前置 : 复杂的 , 难懂的 a very involved lecture
 { 后置 : 有关的 all the people involved

known { 前置 : 有名的 the best known book
 { 后置 : 已知的 the writer known to us all

opposite { 前置 : 对立的 the opposite point of view
 { 后置 : 对面的 the house opposite

present { 前置 : 目前的 the present situation
 { 后置 : 在场的 the only person present

responsible { 前置 : 有责任心的 the responsible man
 { 后置 : 应负责任的 the man responsible

5. 多个形容词作修饰语时的排列顺序

如果两个以上的形容词修饰一个名词 , 与被修饰名词关系较密切的形容词靠近名词 ; 如果几个形容词的密切程度差不多 , 音节少的形容词在前 , 音节多的在后。例如 :

a powerful socialist country

an interesting English film

a small but beautiful room(音节多的在后)

在不能确定的时候，可参照下列顺序：

①限定词(代词性形容词)→②数量形容词(序数词，基数词)				
those		first three		
→③描绘性形容词→④大小、长短、高低、形状→⑤新旧、老幼、温度				
beautiful	large	square	old	
→⑥颜色→⑦国籍→⑧材料→⑨用途、类别→被修饰名词				
brown	French	wooden	writing	tables

范例：

1) 限定词(代词性形容词)：

all, both, such 在前；a(n), the, Tom's, my, your, this, that, some, any, another, those 等在后；

2) 数量形容词(序数词在前，基数词在后)：

如 first, second, third, fifth, next, last, one, four, many few 等；

3) 描绘性形容词(音节少的词在前，音节多的词在后)：

如 fine, good, sick, soft, kind, lovely, ugly, dirty, heavy, stupid, amazing, expensive, interesting 等；

4) 大小、长短、高低、形状(通常大小在前，形状在后)：

如 large, small, big, long, short, tall, round, square, thin, fat 等；

5) 新旧、老幼、温度：

如 old, new, young, modern, cool, warm, hot 等；

6) 颜色：

如 red, blue, white, green, grey 等；

7) 国籍：

如 Chinese, English, Japanese, American 等；

8) 材料：

如 iron, brick, plastic, stone, silk 等；

9) 用途、类别(通常是动名词或名词，有时也有形容词)：

如 fishing boat, writing desk, sports car, boy friend, history book, film director, medical school 等

例如：

a large square table(④)

a new red silk cap (⑤⑥⑧)

a pretty young woman teacher(③⑤⑨)

a famous German medical school(③⑦⑨)

a short young Japanese businessman(④⑤⑦)

two fat middle-aged American doctors(②④⑤⑦)

some beautiful little red flowers(①③④⑥)

a valuable old French writing desk(③⑤⑦⑨)

six brilliant young Mexican film directors(②③⑤⑦⑨)

two cheap white American cotton sun hats

(②③⑥⑦⑧⑨)

five beautiful large black Italian winter coats

(②③④⑥⑦⑨)

说明 通常修饰名词的形容词最多不超过 3 至 4 个。如果有太多的信息，我们可以用从句等其它形式来表示。例如：

It's a charming small French carriage clock, made of brass and dating from the nineteenth century.

6. 复合形容词的构成

1) 形容词 + 名词

full-time 全时工作的

present-day 当代的

2) 形容词 + 名词 + ed

kind-hearted 好心的

white-haired 白发的

3) 形容词 + 形容词

red-hot 炽热的

dark-blue 深蓝的

4) 形容词 + 现在分词

easy-going 随和的

ordinary-looking 长相一般的

5) 副词 + 现在分词

hard-working 勤劳的

fast-moving 快速运动的

6) 副词 + 过去分词

hard-won 得来不易的

newly-made 新建的

7) 名词 + 形容词

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| life-long 终生的 | world-famous 世界闻名的 |
|---------------|--------------------|
- 8) 名词 + 现在分词
- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| peace-loving 爱好和平的 | time-consuming 费时间的 |
| trouble-making 捣乱的 | mouth-watering 令人垂涎的 |
- 9) 名词 + 过去分词
- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| snow-covered 白雪覆盖的 | hand-made 手工的 |
|--------------------|---------------|
- 10) 基数词 + 名词
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| ten-year 十年的 | two-man 两人的 |
|--------------|-------------|
- 11) 基数词 + 名词 + ed
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| four-storeyed 四层楼的 | three-legged 三条腿的 |
|--------------------|-------------------|
- 12) 基数词 + 名词 + 形容词
- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| three-year-old 三岁的 | ten-meter-long 十米长的 |
|--------------------|---------------------|
- 13) 序数词 + 名词
- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| first-rate 一流的 | second-hand 二手的 |
|----------------|-----------------|

(二) 副词

1. 副词的形成

1) 形容词 + ly

clear→clearly	diligent→diligently
complete→completely	definite→definitely
easy→easily	happy→happily
tragic→tragically	automatic→automatically

2) 名词 + ly(表时间的名词 + ly 构成的副词也可作形容词)

hour→hourly	week→weekly
month→monthly	year→yearly

3) 某些现在分词或过去分词 + ly

surprising→surprisingly	smiling→smilingly
excited→excitedly	hurried→hurriedly

2. 副词的位置

副词的位置取决于它的含义和它所修饰的词。副词修饰形容词、副词、名词词组等时通常置于被修饰的词之前，副词修饰动词有前位、中位和后位之分。

1) 时间副词可置于句首或句尾,否定或半否定副词置于句首时主谓要倒装。例如:

Tomorrow we ll have an examination (tomorrow).

Never have I seen such a disturbing sight.

2) 下列副词称为中位副词,通常放在行为动词之前,情态动词、助动词和 be 动词之后。

表不确定时间的副词 always , frequently , hardly , never , occasionally , often , rarely , seldom , sometimes , usually
--

表程度的副词 absolutely , almost , completely , entirely , just , hardly , partly , quite , rather , really , slightly , totally

单个词的时间副词 : already , finally , immediately , just , now , soon , still , then
--

She always arrives by taxi and she is always on time.

We ve never been to the Green islands. You can just see the coast.

3) 下列副词可修饰句子,起评注作用,常位于句首或句中:

admittedly , apparently , briefly , fortunately , frankly ,
hopefully , luckily , naturally , possibly , probably ,
surprisingly , unexpectedly , understandably

4) 几个不同类的副词同时出现在一个句子中,它们的顺序是:

方式副词 + **地点副词** + **时间副词**

She sang beautifully(方式) in the hall(地点) last night(时间).

Taking advantage of a gap between the players , Owen kicked the ball skillfully(方式) into the net(地点) just before half time. (时间)

Last night(时间) , Jean played the piano wonderfully(方式) at the school concert(地点). (也可把时间副词放在句首)

5) 两个或两个以上的同类副词或副词短语在一起时,遵循“具体的在前,笼统的在后”,或“小的在前,大的在后”的原则。例如:

Tourists are coming to Hong Kong(具体) from all corners of the world(笼统).

Come to see me at 3 o'clock(小的时间单位) in the afternoon(大

的时间单位)。

6) 两个方式副词在一起时,短的在前,长的在后,中间用 and 或 but 连接起来。例如:

He spoke slowly(短) and carefully(长)。

7) 在 go, run, drive 等表动作的动词后,地点副词或状语通常置于方式副词前面,因为这些动词与地点副词关系较密切。例如:

They went to school(地点) hurriedly(方式) after breakfast(时间)。

8) yet, a lot, any more, any longer, too, as well 等副词通常置于句末。例如:

They aren't selling it any more.

He plays the guitar well.

3. 副词的作用

1) 副词修饰动词、形容词、副词、介词短语、名词词组、数词或整个句子。例如:

He studies hard. (修饰动词)

The food is very delicious. (修饰形容词)

He falls far behind in his studies. (修饰副词)

He left shortly after the meeting. (修饰介词短语)

It's quite some time since we wrote to each other. (修饰名词词组)

In our school roughly fifty students have mobile phones. (修饰数词)

Certainly, I will stand by you forever. (修饰整个句子)

注意下列几个副词(well, right, far, much 等)修饰介词短语构成的常用词组:

well over my head 远远高过我的头

well within the time 完全在规定时间内

right in front of you 就在你的面前

far back in the past 往昔;在久远的过去

far in the future 在久远的将来

much to my surprise 使我十分惊讶

2) 副词代替名词或形容词。例如:

Now is the time to leave.

I haven't met him since then.

the above sentence(以上的句子)

in after years(在后来的岁月里)

3) 副词作表语、定语和宾语补足语。例如：

Time is up. (表语)

The building there looks very grand. (定语)

Let the dog out. (宾语补足语)

4. 某些副词有两种形式，两种含义

下列副词有两种形式，一个与形容词同形，一个以-ly结尾，但它们的含义是不同的。例如：

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1) close 接近地 | closely 仔细地，密切地 |
| 2) free 免费地 | freely 自由地，无拘束地 |
| 3) dead 完全地 | deadly 死一般地，非常 |
| 4) direct 直接地 | directly 马上，即刻 |
| 5) late 晚，迟 | late 近来 |
| 6) most 极，非常 | mostly 主要地 |
| 7) wide 广阔地，充分地 | widely 广泛地 |
| 8) high 高 | highly 高度地，非常地 |
| 9) deep 深 | deeply 强烈地，深刻地 |
| 10) loud 大声地 | loudly 大声地(有喧闹的含义) |
| 11) near 邻近 | nearly 几乎 |

{ Does that flight go direct or is there a stopover ?

{ Don't go. I'll be with you directly.

{ We go into the concert free.

{ Animals are now able to wander freely over the hills.

5. cannot too 的特殊含义

cannot 和 too 连用构成一个特殊结构，表示极为强烈的肯定意义，意为“再……也不嫌过分”，“越……越好”。例如：

You cannot be too careful in doing these exercises.

做这些练习时，你越仔细越好。

I cannot see you too often. 我真想时时见到你。

类似的结构还有 can never too, cannot over, cannot enough等

6. 注意下列几组容易混淆的词

1) ago 与 before

ago 表示以现在为起点的“以前”, before 指以过去或将来的某时刻为起点的“以前”。泛指“以前”用 before, 不用 ago。例如:

I started working in the school three years ago.

Last year he left the army that he had joined eighteen years before.

We (have) never met them before. (没有具体时间, 两种时态都可以)

2) very 与 much

①very 修饰形容词或副词的原级, much 修饰形容词或副词的比较级, 修饰动词要用 much 或 very much。例如:

very good, very well, much better

I like this film very much.

②very 修饰用作形容词的现在分词。例如:

very interesting, very exciting, very satisfying

③very 修饰某些习惯上已被用作形容词(不管是作表语还是作定语)的过去分词。例如:

a very pleased look, a very delighted boy

He is very tired.

My English is very limited.

这类词有 frightened, delighted, disappointed, satisfied, excited, interested, pleased, surprised, troubled, upset, worried 等。但若用在表示被动的 by 句中, 就该用 much 来修饰。

④在英国, 只能用作表语的某些形容词(如 alive, alone, afraid, ashamed等)前用 much 或 very much 来修饰, 但在美国, 往往用 very, 如 very afraid。

⑤在不能确定的时候, 用 much 往往比 very 妥当。

⑥much 可以修饰不可数名词和动词, very 则不能。例如:

I don't suppose you have much time.

I enjoyed the concert (very) much.

有关 much 的一些短语:

be (not) much of a (不)是个很好的, 称得(不)上
 make much of 特别强调 大肆宣传 充分理解
 not(without) so much as 甚至连.....都没有
 not think much of 觉得.....不怎么样
 so much for就说这么多
 cannot/can hardly much less 不(会).....更不(会),
 so much the better 反而更好 那样(这样)就更好

3) so that 与 such that

①so that 和 such that 都作“如此.....以致”解, that 引导结果状语从句。常见句型如下:

so { 形容词
副词 } + that

such + { a/an + (形容词) + 单数可数名词
(形容词) + 复数可数名词
(形容词) + 不可数名词 } + that

②so that 和 such that 有时可以换用, 条件是 such 所修饰的名词必须是一个单数可数名词, 且该名词前还带有表性质的形容词。转变公式如下:

such a/an + 形容词 + 单数名词

→ so + 形容词 + a/an + 单数名词

He is such a good student that we all like him.

→ He is so good a student that we all like him.

注意 如果形容词所修饰的是不可数名词或复数名词, 则只能用 such 句型, 不能用 so 句型。如:

It was such bad weather that he had to stay at home.

但是, 如果复数名词前有 many, few, 不可数名词前有 much, little 等表示量的形容词修饰时, 该用 so 句型而不用 such 句型。

so { many/few + 复数名词
much(大量)/little(少量) + 不可数名词 } + that

I've had so many falls that I'm black and blue all over.

Mr White got so little money a month that he could hardly keep body

and soul together(维持生活).

但 little 不表示“少量”而表示“小”时,则仍用 such 句型。例如:

They are such little children that they cannot clean the house by themselves.

4) almost 与 nearly

①从语义上讲,这两个词都是“几乎”的意思,但 almost 比 nearly 在程度上更接近,感情色彩更浓。两者都可以修饰 all, every, always 等词,都可以用于否定句中。例如:

It's almost/nearly two o'clock.

Almost/Nearly all the students went there.

②如表示某个不易于衡量的东西,用 almost。例如:

Our cat understands everything - he is almost human.

What I saw was almost too good to be true.

③在 any, no, none, nobody, nothing, nowhere, never 前用 almost。例如:

I almost never see her.

There is almost nothing left.

④not nearly 意为“远远不(够)”,“相差甚远”。在 very, pretty 后用 nearly, 不用 almost。例如:

I have saved 500 yuan, but that isn't nearly enough for my journey fare.

There are not nearly enough people here to do the job!

5) fairly 与 rather

fairly 与 rather 都表示“相当,在一定程度上”。修饰形容词时, fairly 通常用于修饰好的、愉快的场合, rather 则通常修饰不愉快情况的形容词,但不少英国人也常用 rather 来修饰所喜爱的事物。rather 可以和 too 连用或修饰比较级,而 fairly 则不能。例如:

She felt rather tired. (rather 修饰不愉快的)

He is a fairly good actor. (fairly 修饰令人愉快的)

I was rather pleased when I won the prize. (rather 也修饰所喜爱的事物)

These shoes are rather too big. (rather 与 too 连用)

Japanese cars are rather cheaper than European cars. (rather 修饰比较级)

6) quite 与 rather

quite 和 rather 可修饰名词,用于“quite/rather a + 名词”这一结构,以加强语气。例如:

We had quite a party. It's rather a pity.

但若名词前有形容词修饰,则可以用两种形式。例如:

It is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quite an interesting} \\ \text{a quite interesting} \end{array} \right\}$ film.

It is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rather a sad} \\ \text{a rather sad} \end{array} \right\}$ story.

7) too much 与 much too

①too much 的中心词是 much, too 修饰 much 加强语气。

A) much 作形容词, too much 修饰不可数名词表示“太多”。

There is too much misunderstanding between them.

I've got too much work to do.

B) too much 作副词短语修饰动词。

He is too much bothered by the noise.

He talked too much.

C) too much 起名词作用,有“过多”,“过分”“对付不了”,“过于厉害”的含义。

You have given me too much.

I tried to beat him, but he was too much for me.

②much too 的中心词是 too, much 修饰 too 加强语气,后接形容词或副词的原级。例如:

I think it's much too hot for walking.

The lane is much too narrow for the car to pass.

在 too many, too few 前不用 much 而用 far 修饰。

We have got far too many eggs and far too few egg-cups.

(三)形容词和副词的比较等级

1. 比较级和最高级的构成

1) 加 -er, -est 构成比较级和最高级

①单音节形容词和副词。例如：

high	higher	highest
hard	harder	hardest

②单音节形容词以不发音的 -e 结尾的加 -r, -st。例如：

safe	safer	safest
late	later	latest

③单音节形容词以一个辅音结尾的，其前的元音字母发短元音时，该辅音字母要双写，然后加 -er, -est。例如：

big	bigger	biggest
hot	hotter	hottest

④单音节形容词及双音节形容词以辅音加 -y 结尾的，将 -y 改为 i，再加 -er, -est。例如：

dry	drier	driest
merry	merrier	merriest

说明 在以 -y 结尾的双音节形容词前加否定词缀后仍然加 -er, -est。例如：

He's the unhappiest man in the world.

2) 加 more, most 构成比较级和最高级

①多音节的形容词和副词。例如：

expensive	more expensive	most expensive
carefully	more carefully	most carefully

②双音节形容词以 -ful, -less, -able, -ous, -ive, -ing 等结尾的。例如：

useless	more useless	most useless
serious	more serious	most serious

③分词形容词(如 tired, pleased, interesting)及 fond, glad, keen, real, right, wrong 等单音节形容词。例如：

tired	more tired	most tired
worn	more worn	most worn
glad	more glad	most glad

wrong	more wrong	most wrong
-------	------------	------------

④由形容词加-ly 构成的副词(如 slowly, widely, highly, firmly, dearly, loudly 等)。例如:

slowly	more slowly	most slowly
highly	more highly	most highly

3) 加-er, -est 或 more, most 构成比较级和最高级

①双音节形容词以-ly, -y, -ow, -r 和 -l 结尾的。例如:

lively	{ livelier	liveliest
	{ more lively	most lively
shallow	{ shallower	{ shallowest
	{ more shallow	{ most shallow

常见的这类形容词有: likely, angry, cloudy, naughty, rainy, rocky, sleepy, sorry, windy, worthy, shallow, narrow, cruel 等

②双音节形容词 common, handsome, mature, pleasant, polite, simple, stupid 通常可加-er, -est 或 more, most 构成比较级和最高级。例如:

Your son needs to develop a maturer(or more mature) attitude to his work.

③许多单音节形容词(如 quiet, free, clear 等)在使用时为了加强语气,也可用加 more, most 构成比较级和最高级。例如:

proud	more proud	most proud
-------	------------	------------

4) 没有比较含义和表示最高程度的形容词没有比较级和最高级: 这类形容词有: final, junior, perfect, total, unique, absolute, excellent, extreme, favourite 等。

5) 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级的不规则构成法

good, well	better	best
bad, ill, badly	worse	worst
many, much	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest

说明 ①elder 是个定语形容词,不能单独用作表语,尤其不能用在 than 的句

中,因为 elder 不是真正意义上的比较级。例如:

My sister is older (than me). (正确)

My sister is elder (than me). (错误)

②elder 主要用于描述家庭人员出生的先后,如:elder brother, elder sister.

③elder 只能用于描述人,不能描述物。

2. 表达比较含义的几个特殊结构

1) 形容词或副词原级与 as 联合使用表达比较:

① as + 形容词或副词原级 + as

Xiao Wang is as tall as Xiao Liu.

Mr. Sun speaks English as fluently as you.

② as + 形容词原级 + a + 名词 + as

He is as diligent a student as you.

③ so + 形容词原级 + a + 名词 + that

He is so good a teacher that we all respect him.

④ 倍数 + as + 形容词或副词原级 + as

This room is three times as large as that one.

⑤ (as) + 形容词原级 + as + 形容词原级 + can be

意为:“极其”,“最为……”,表示极高程度。例如:

That fellow is (as) bad as bad can be. 那家伙坏透了。

2) 某些形容词原级后接介词 to 用于表达比较:

superior to 优于 inferior to 劣于,低于

senior to 年长于 junior to 年幼于 prior to 较先于

His knowledge of English literature is superior to mine.

Colored people are by no means inferior to white people.

3) 形容词原级和比较级同时使用表达比较:

结构 as + 形容词原级 + as, if not + 比较级 + than

In his time, he enjoyed a reputation as great as, if not greater than Mozart's.

4) not so much 结构表达比较:

① not so much A as B ;或 not A so much as B

“与其说 A ,还不如说 B ; (更多的是 B ,而不是 A) ”。

Man is limited not so much by his tools as by his vision.

He is not a writer so much as a reporter.

② not/without so much as 意为“甚至连……都没有”。

He didn't so much as ask me to sit down.

He went away without so much as saying good-bye.

3. 比较级的用法

1) than 后可接名词或代词。例如：

I did her more harm than good.

The profits are better than the losses.

He has more books than I.

I know you better than (I know) her.

说明 :后接代词时,若该代词在从句中起主语作用,用主格(口语中若不产生歧义可用宾格);起宾语作用,用宾格。例如：

I like you better than he (likes you). (用主格)

I know you better than (I do) him. (用宾格)

He has more time than me(I have). (不产生歧义,可用宾格)

I like the dog better than her. (会产生歧义)

我比她更喜欢狗。或 :比起喜欢她,我更喜欢狗。

I like the dog better than she (does). 我比她更喜欢狗。

2) than 后可接从句。例如：

At that time she was happier than she had ever been.

I admire and respect you more than I can say.

3) than 后可接不定式、形容词或动名词。例如：

It is easier to do it yourself than (to) explain it to her.

Nothing pleased my mother more than to be told how good were her dishes.

She is more lucky than clever.

This is more amusing than sitting in an office.

Nothing is more unpleasant than finding (to find) insects in your bath.

4) than 后可接充当状语的成分,如副词、介词短语或从句。例如:

Better late than never.

He was busier on Monday than on other days.

You're a little fatter than when I saw you last.

They work better together than if they're alone.

4. 比较级的比较对象要明确

1) 当比较对象受到限时,要找准比较对象。例如:

Is the climate of Italy warmer than that of Florida?

Most of the highways in America are wider than those in Europe?

Though expensive, a coat made of synthetic material lasts longer than one made of cloth.

The tickets you bought are more expensive than those he bought.

This sewing-machine is no cheaper than the one we bought last year.

5. than 后接句子时的省略情况

1) 当 than 后句子的主语和动词与前面相同时,可省略(主要在 more than 结构中),但动词短语中的介词不能省略。例如:

He has done better than (he did) last time.

She was more lucky than (she was) clever.

(注意不说 She was luckier than clever.)

(但可以说 She was luckier than she was clever.)

I like her no better than (I like) him.

I was more annoyed than (I was) worried when they didn't come home.

Some people think more about their rights than (they do) about their duties.

2) 有时可省去整个谓语,保留主语。例如:

Two eyes can see more than one.

The profits are greater than the loss.

3) 有时为了把意思表达得更准确,可省去部分谓语,保留主语。例如:

You drove more carefully than I did.

He has done much better than you have.

4) 有时可省去主要动词, 保留其余部分。例如:

The Ethiopian cannot change his skin any more than the leopard his spots.

Everyone knows that he spends more time surfing on the Internet than he does writing.

5) than 后有状语从句时, 可将前面相同的主语及动词省略。

You are a little fatter than (you were) when I saw you last.

6. 比较时须把自身排除在比较范围之外

1) 比较双方属于同一类别或范围的, 须用 any other 或 else 连用, 将自身排除在比较范围之外。比较双方不属于同一类别或范围的, 则用 any。后面的名词均用单数形式。例如:

This book is more interesting than any book else.

Li Ming is taller than any other student in his class.

(同属学生)

Mary is taller than any boy student in her class. (男女不同)

China is larger than any other country in Asia. (同属亚洲)

China is larger than any country in Africa. (不属同一洲)

2) 比较的另一方是 anything, anybody, something, somebody, nothing, nobody, everything, everybody 等复合不定代词时, 须在后面加上 else 将自身排除在外。例如:

Knowledge is more important than anything else.

What he told me was nothing else than nonsense.

Life is more important than everything else.

7. 用于修饰比较级的词

表示一方超过另一方的程度或数量时, 可在比较级前加表示程度的副词, 以加强或减弱比较语气。例如:

1) 加强语气:

even, (very) much, far, a lot, lots(informal), still, yet, rather, considerably, a great deal(formal)

He works even harder than before.

The rabbit is rather smaller than the hare , although in appearance the two are very similar.

She is a great deal better today.

2) 减弱语气 :

a little , a bit (informal) , slightly , somewhat (formal)

The hot dog is a bit cheaper than the hamburger.

注意 :①英语比较级前若无 even , still , yet 等时 , 译成汉语时可用“较”或“.....一些” , 或不译出 , 一般不用“更”。如 :

She feels better than yesterday. 她比昨天好些了。

Please come earlier tomorrow. 请明天早点来。

注意 :②by far 通常用于强调最高级。用于比较级时 , 一般放在比较级的后面 , 如放在前面 , 应在中间加“the”。例如 :

He is taller by far than his brother.

He is by far the taller of the two brothers.

8. 用形容词比较级构成的短语

none the better 并不见好 none the worse 还是 , 仍旧

none the less 仍然 for better or for worse 不论好坏

for the better 好转 for the worse 变坏 , 恶化

all the better 更加好 so much the better 如此更好

9. than 在一些常见词组中的用法

1) less than / less than 少于 ; 与其说.....倒不如说.....

I won't sell my house for less than 60 , 000 dollars.

这房子少于 6 万美元我决不出售。

Experience shows that success is due less to ability than to hard work. 经验告诉我们 , 成功与其说是由于才能 , 不如说是由于努力工作。

2) more than 超过 ; 多于 ; 不止 (参阅第十四章词的用法)

3) more than 与其.....倒不如说 ; 是.....而不是.....

Jimmy is more mad than stupid. 杰米简直是发疯而不是愚蠢。

It is more a prose than a poem.

这与其说是诗 , 倒不如说是散文。

Your son is more shy than unfriendly.

你的孩子不是不友好而是太腼腆。

此含义可用下列 3 种结构表示

{ more A than B
not so much B as A
A rather than B

4) no further than 只到.....

We went no further than the station. 我们只走到车站。

5) no (little) less than ;no (little) less than 不少于 ;不亚于 ;多达 ;与.....一样地

There was no less than 30 dollars in the drawers.

抽屉里的钱不少于 30 美元。

Sally is no less charming than Jane. 莎莉和简一样妩媚动人。

6) no (little) better than 和.....差不多 ;简直是(多指坏的人或东西)

Jack is in the habit of walking off with things ; he is little better than a thief. 杰克有顺手牵羊的习惯 ,他简直就是个小偷。

7) no more than 只是

He is no more than a puppet. 他仅仅是个傀儡而已。

8) no more than / not any more than 与.....一样不

I can no more play tennis than you (can).

=I can not play tennis any more than you (can).

我和你一样不会打网球。

He is no more a fool than I am.

=He is not a fool any more than I am.

他和我一样不是傻瓜。

I am no more stupid than you (are).

=I am not any more stupid than you (are).

我和你一样聪明。

9) other than / other than 除了 ,不是.....那个样子(参阅第十四章词的用法)

Do you have any (other) books other than novels ?

你除了小说还有其他书籍吗 ?

There was nothing they could do other than spend the night in the temple. 他们除了在庙宇里过夜别无他法。

The result was quite other than what I expected.

结果与我们预料的完全不同。

有时可用 another than 来表示

This was quite another result than we expected.

Albert was quite another person than what he was.

更常用 different from 来表达：

The result was quite different from what I expected.

10) no (not, none, hardly) other than 就是,正是;只有

The new arrival was no (none) other than the manager.

新来的人就是经理。

I can hardly (cannot) be other than grateful to you.

我对你只有感激。

11) no other than 除.....外(没有别的)只有

Have you no other suit than this?

你就只有这么一套衣服吗?

He had no other man to depend on than you.

他只有你可以依靠。

She went downtown with no other purpose than to buy some English books. 他进城没有别的目的,只是想买几本英语书。

12) nothing else than / nothing less than 完全是;只是;与.....没有两样

What he told me was nothing else than nonsense.

他告诉我的完全是胡说八道。

It is nothing less than stealing to take a thing away without the permission of its owner. 没有得到物主的同意就擅自把东西拿走,这和偷窃没有什么两样。

13) nothing other than 不过是

It is nothing other than the usual difficulty.

这不过是常有的困难。

14) rather than 而不是;rather than 与其.....倒不如

Jack is diligent rather than clever. } { 杰克并不聪明，
Jack is rather diligent than clever. } { 但很勤勉。

15) would rather (sooner) than 宁愿.....也不.....

He would rather (sooner) die than agree to such a plan.

他宁愿死也不肯同意这个计划。

16) know better (than to) 应懂得不该 ; 不会愚蠢到如此程度

He ought to know better than to come into the house without wiping his shoes. 他应懂得不该进屋连鞋子都不擦。

10. 表示倍数比较的三个句型

1) A is three times the size of B.

The new building is four times the size (the height) of the old one.

(这座新楼是那座旧楼的 4 倍大[4 倍高])。(这座新楼比那座旧楼大 3 倍[高 3 倍])。

注意 :①此句型要求用名词形式 , 如 :height , length , size , sum , width 等。

注意 :②名词短语“the size of ”可根据情况改为 :

A is three times	{	the + 名词(+ 从句) 形容词 / 物主代词 + 名词 what 引导的名词性从句
------------------	---	---

I offered him twice the sum. (名词)

He did it one-third the time it took me. (名词加从句)

I bought it at half the usual price. (形容词加名词)

He earns half my salary. (代词加名词)

He eats three times what you eat. (what 引导的名词性从句)

2) A is three times as big as B.

Asia is four times as large as Europe. 亚洲是欧洲的 4 倍大。(亚洲比欧洲大 3 倍。)

注意 :此结构比较的通常是表语(形容词)。比较对象是宾语(名词)时 , 可将此结构改为 :

three times + as many/much + 宾语(名词) + as

They have produced three times as many cars this year as they did

last year.

He earns five times as much money as he did ten years ago.

3) A is three times bigger than B.

Your school is three times bigger than ours. 你们的学校比我们的学校大 3 倍。(你们的学校是我们学校的 4 倍大。)

用 times 表示倍数,一般只限于表示包括基数在内 3 倍或 3 倍以上的数。表示两倍应该用 twice 或 double。

(四) 形容词和副词的最高级

1. 最高级的用法

1) 三者或三者以上的比较用最高级。表示最高程度时,用“the + 最高级”的结构表示。这种句式常有表示比较范围的介词短语。例如:

Zhang Hua is the tallest of the three.

He works (the) hardest in his class.

2) 作状语的副词最高级前可以不加定冠词。例如:

Of all the boys he came (the)earliest.

2. 用于修饰最高级的词

最高级可被序数词以及 much, by far, nearly, almost, by no means, not quite, not really, nothing like 等词语所修饰。例如:

How much did the second most expensive hat cost?

This hat is by far/ much/ nearly/ almost/ not nearly/ by no means/ not quite/ nothing like the biggest.

用 very 修饰最高级时,其词序为 the/one's very + 最高级。例如:

This is the very best choice.

We will do our very best to finish the project on time.

3. 用形容词最高级构成的短语

“at one's/its + 形容词最高级”常用作表语,意为“处于最佳状态”。

at one's happiest 最快乐的 at one's worst 最糟的

at one's best 最好的时候 at its brightest 最鲜艳的

常用作状语的短语:

at best 至多, 充其量不过 at the earliest 最早
 at the latest 最迟 at most 最多, 至多
 at least 至少 least of all 最不, 尤其不
 not in the least 一点也不
 at(the)longest(指日期)最晚, 至多,
 to the best of one's ability 尽我最大的能力
 to the best of my knowledge/memory 据我所知

第三部分 分类练习

- _____ the boy is to learn to talk !
 A. How slow B. How slowly C. What a slow D. What slowly
- He is not a _____ delighted boy. I am _____ troubled by him.
 A. very ; much B. much ; much C. very ; very D. much ; very
- I could not find _____ , and so I took this one.
 A. a large enough coat B. an enough large coat
 C. a large coat enough D. a coat enough large
- This broadcast comes to you _____ from the stadium.
 A. alive B. lively C. live D. living
- When did you _____ go to the cinema ?
 A. last B. lastly C. last time D. latest
- _____ whales can weigh 40 tons and reach the length of 50 feet.
 A. Fully growing B. Full grown C. Fully grown D. Growing fully
- "How about him ?" "He came home _____ and sound. "
 A. safely B. safe C. safety D. safeness
- "Isn't Mrs Webster here yet ?" "No. _____ , she's late. "
 A. To my much surprise B. My much surprise
 C. Much to surprise me D. Much to my surprise
- He is _____ interested in English. He often works at it until _____ into the night.
 A. deep ; deep B. deeply ; deep C. deep ; deeply D. deeply ; deeply
- Neil Simon has become the most _____ play writer in the history of American drama.
 A. commercially successful B. commercial successful
 C. successfully commercial D. successful commercial
- _____ , more than 200 houses and buildings are heated by solar energy.

- A. In the small alone town B. In the small town alone
C. Alone in the small town D. In the alone small town
12. ____ lessons were not difficult.
A. Our few first English short B. Our first few short English
C. Our few first short English D. Few our first English short
13. Writing pens are made in ____ of shapes , sizes and colours.
A. endless variety an almost B. variety an almost endless
C. an almost endless variety D. almost variety an endless
14. Ba Jin is certainly one of the ____ Chinese writers.
A. read most widely B. most widely read
C. read widely most D. most read widely
15. Radio , television and press are ____ means of carrying news of information.
A. the most three common B. the most common three
C. three the most common D. the three most common
16. The ____ house smells as if it hasn't been lived in for years.
A. little white wooden B. little wooden white
C. white wooden little D. wooden white little
17. ____ students are required to take part in the boat race.
A. Ten strong young Chinese B. Ten Chinese strong young
C. Chinese ten young strong D. Young strong ten Chinese
18. According to their theory , the more severe the punishment , ____.
A. the less likely crime B. the less the likely crime
C. the crime less likely D. the less likely the crime
19. A body weighs ____ from the surface of the earth.
A. the farther it gets , the less B. less than it , the farther it gets
C. less , the farther it gets D. less than it gets farther
20. We liked the oil painting better ____ we looked at it.
A. as B. while C. the moment D. the more
21. In Latin America , there are only from one-tenth to one-fourth ____ there are in the United States.
A. as many doctors as B. as many as doctors
C. doctors as many as D. many doctors as
22. In writing one should always try to make one's meaning as clear as possible in ____.
A. simple way as possible B. as simple way as possible

- C. possible simple way D. as simple a way as possible
23. I don't think English is ____ a language as Russian.
A. difficult as B. as difficult C. such difficult D. more difficult
24. The new hall can hold ____ people than the old one.
A. much more B. by far more C. greatly more D. many more
25. I am not sure which one of us was ____ when we happened to gaze into each other's eyes.
A. more surprised B. the more surprised
C. most surprised D. the most surprised
26. She is very rich. She spends more money in a day ____ in a month.
A. as I can make B. that I can make
C. when I can make D. than I can make
27. My daughter runs faster than ____ in her class.
A. any boy B. everyone C. any girl D. all the pupils
28. Mary is ____ of the two girls.
A. a fatter B. fatter C. the fattest D. the fatter
29. John is ____ cleverest boy in the school.
A. far B. the far C. by far D. by far the
30. He knows little of maths, and ____ of chemistry.
A. no less B. even more C. still less D. still least
31. He is ____ but not ____ as you.
A. so wise ; so diligent B. wiser ; so diligent
C. wiser ; less diligent D. more wiser ; as diligent
32. "The exam was very difficult. "
"Now don't begin making excuses. Other boys ____ have passed. "
A. no clever like you B. no cleverer than you
C. as clever like you D. not clever than you
33. She has a son, ____ whom a better son does not exist.
A. in B. with C. except D. than
34. He liked the painting very much, which cost him 1,000 dollars. However, he would gladly have paid ____ for it.
A. as much twice B. much as twice
C. twice as much D. as twice much
35. The temperature on Venus is ____ boiling water.
A. four times as hot as B. as four times hot as

- C. as hot four times as D. four times hot as
36. Though I tried hard , I couldn't sing ____ he.
A. half as well as B. as half well as
C. half as good as D. as half good as
37. The balloon Li Ming's father has just bought him is ____ mine.
A. as three times big as B. three times the size of
C. three times big as D. as three times the size of
38. We will do our ____ best to finish the project on time.
A. very B. much C. most D. far
39. I know he has not the ____ idea who they are.
A. little B. less C. least D. few
40. "Harry treats his secretary badly. "
"Yes. He seems to think that she's the ____ important person in the office. "
A. little B. less C. least D. not most
41. If it is the best thing to do , it cannot be done ____ soon.
A. too B. enough C. much D. very
42. She is ____ a musician than her brother.
A. much of B. more of C. much as D. more as
43. What he said is ____ for a little girl.
A. such much B. so much C. too much D. very much
44. The weather is not ____ hot.
A. much B. such C. that D. any
45. He moved away from his parents , and missed them ____ enjoy the exciting life in New York.
A. too much to B. enough to C. very much to D. much so as to
46. This book is ____ for a seven-year-old child to read.
A. too much difficult B. too more difficult
C. much too difficult D. more too difficult
47. Those young students were ____ tired , because they had been working for eight hours.
A. not a bit B. hardly C. not a little D. nearly
48. He was so strong that he felt ____ tired after the long walk.
A. a bit B. a little C. not a little D. not a bit
49. What a pity that he has made ____ friends since he joined the club.
A. only a few B. quite a few C. a few D. quite a little

50. Tony is going on the picnic with ____ friends.
 A. two little other B. other little two
 C. other two little D. two other little
51. It is ____ that I d like to go on a picnic.
 A. such lovely day B. such lovely a day
 C. so a lovely day D. such a lovely day
52. Mrs Lindon has ____ that she is unable to get a job.
 A. such little education B. so little education
 C. a such little education D. a so small education
53. ____ little children made ____ many toys !
 A. Such ; so B. So ; such C. So ; so D. Such ; such
54. Waving ____ , a nine-year-old kid drove his family s cows home.
 A. a stick of his half height B. a half his height stick
 C. a stick his half height D. a stick half his height
55. " May I ask a favour of you ?" " I m ____ willing to help you if I can. "
 A. only too B. much too C. too much D. much well
56. " Anne is quite unfriendly. " " I think she s ____ than unfriendly. "
 A. shyer B. shier C. more shy D. more shy rather
57. The population of many Alaskan cities has ____ doubled in the past three years.
 A. larger than B. as great as C. as many as D. more than
58. A home without love is ____ a home ____ a garden without flowers.
 A. no less ; than B. no more ; than C. other ; than D. no other ; than
59. In his composition there were no other errors ____ a few misspelled words.
 A. beside B. except C. then D. than
60. A collection of facts cannot be called science ____ a pile of bricks can be called a house.
 A. no more than B. more than C. any more than D. less than
61. If you can bring your friend along , ____.
 A. much the better B. so much better
 C. all the better D. none the better
62. The great use of a school education is ____ to teach you things ____ teach you the art of learning.
 A. as much ; as B. not so much ; as to
 C. much as ; as D. much more ; as
63. He didn t ____ me for returning his money that I found.

A. so much as to thank

B. so much as thank

C. as much as thanking

D. so much as thanking

64. It was ____ the way he said it ____ what he said that made her unhappy.

A. very ; that

B. more ; than

C. such ; that

D. of ; that

65. His health is ____.

A. as poor as , if not poorer than , his sister s

B. as poor , if not poorer than , his sister

C. poor as his sister s if not poor

D. as poor , if not poorer than his sister s

第五章 情态动词

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. "When can I come for the photos? I need them tomorrow afternoon. "
"They ____ be ready by 12:00. "
A. can B. should C. might D. need
- (98)2. "I stayed at a hotel while in New York. "
"Oh, did you? You ____ with Barbara. "
A. could have stayed B. could stay
C. would stay D. must have stayed
- (99)3. "Will you stay for lunch?"
"Sorry, _____. My brother is coming to see me. "
A. I mustn't B. I can't C. I needn't D. I won't
- (00)4. "Are you coming to Jeff's party?"
"I'm not sure. I ____ go to the concert instead. "
A. must B. would C. should D. might
- (01)5. I was really anxious about you. You ____ home without a word.
A. mustn't leave B. shouldn't have left
C. couldn't have left D. needn't leave
- (02)6. "Is John coming by train?"
"He should, but he ____ not. He likes driving his car. "
A. must B. can C. need D. may
- (03)7. A left-luggage office is a place where bags ____ be left for a short time, especially at a railway station.
A. should B. can C. must D. will
- (05)8. He ____ have completed his work; otherwise, he wouldn't be en-

joying himself by the seaside.

A. should B. must C. wouldn't D. can't

(06)9. - What's the name?

- Khulaifi. ____ I spell for you?

A. Shall B. Would C. Can D. Might

(07)10. In crowded places like airports and railway stations you ____ take care of your luggage.

A. can B. may C. must D. will

答案 : 1. BABDB 6. DBBAC

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

(98)1. "Could I call you by your first name?"

"Yes, you ____."

A. will B. could C. may D. might

(99)2. There was a lot of fun at yesterday's party. You ____ come, but why didn't you?

A. must have B. should C. need have D. ought to have

(00)3. My sister met him at the Grand Theatre yesterday afternoon, so he ____ your lecture.

A. couldn't have attended B. needn't have attended
C. mustn't have attended D. shouldn't have attended

(01)4. You can't imagine that a well-behaved gentleman ____ be so rude to a lady.

A. might B. need C. should D. would

(02)5. It has been announced that candidates ____ remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected.

A. can B. will C. may D. shall

(03)6. How ____ you say that you really understand the whole story if you have covered only part of the article?

- A. can B. must C. need D. may
- (04)7. Children under 12 years of age in that country ____ be under adult supervision when in a public library.
- A. must B. may C. can D. need
- (05)8. There ____ be any difficulty about passing the road test since you have practised a lot in the driving school.
- A. mustn't B. shan't C. shouldn't D. needn't
- (06)9. Black holes ____ not be seen directly , so determining the number of them is a tough task.
- A. can B. should C. must D. need
- (07)10. - Guess what ! I have got A for my term paper.
- Great ! You ____ read widely and put a lot of work into it.
- A. must B. should
C. must have D. should have

答案 1. CDACD 6. AACAC

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. Sorry I'm late. I ____ have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.
- A. might B. should C. can D. will
- (01) 2. " Write to me when you get there. "
- " ____ . "
- A. I must B. I should C. I will D. I can
- (02) 3. " I hear you've got a set of valuable Australian coins. ____ I have a look ?"
- " Yes , certainly. "
- A. Do B. May C. Shall D. Should
- (03) 4. " The room is so dirty , ____ we clean it ?"
- " Of course. "
- A. Will B. Shall C. Would D. Do

- (05) 5. I have lost one of my gloves. I _____ it somewhere.
- A. must drop B. must have dropped
- C. must be dropping D. must have been dropped

A. must drop

B. must have dropped

C. must be dropping

D. must have been dropped

答案 : 1. ACBBB

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. I should have been there , but I ____ not find the time.
A. would B. could C. might D. should
- (01) 2. Mr. Bush is on time for everything. How ____ it be that he was late for the opening ceremony ?
A. can B. should C. may D. must
- (02) 3. Oh , I m not feeling well in the stomach. I ____ so much fried chicken just now.
A. shouldn t eat B. mustn t have eaten
C. shouldn t have eaten D. mustn t eat
- (03) 4. My English-Chinese dictionary has disappeared. Who ____ have taken it ?
A. should B. must C. could D. would
- (04) 5. You might just as well tell the manufacturer that male customers ____ not like the design of the furniture.
A. must B. shall C. may D. need
- (05) 6. According to the local regulations , anyone who intends to get a driver s licence ____ take an eye test.
A. can B. must C. would D. may
- (06) 7. You know he is not going to let us leave early if we ____ get the work done.
A. can t B. may not C. shouldn t D. mustn t
- (07) 8. The boss has given everyone a special holiday , so we ____ go to work tomorrow.
A. can t B. mustn t C. needn t D. shouldn t

A. would

B. could

C. might

D. should

- (01) 2. Mr. Bush is on time for everything. How ____ it be that he was late for the opening ceremony?

A. can

B. should

C. mav

D. must

- (02) 3. Oh , I m not feeling well in the stomach. I _____ so much fried chicken just now.

A. shouldn't eat

B. mustn't have eaten

C. shouldn't have eaten

D. mustn't eat

- (03) 4. My English-Chinese dictionary has disappeared. Who ____ have taken it ?

A. should

B. must

C. could

D. would

- (04) 5. You might just as well tell the manufacturer that male customers _____ not like the design of the furniture.

A. must

B. shall

C. mav

D. need

- (05) 6. According to the local regulations , anyone who intends to get a driver s licence ____ take an eye test.

A. can

B. must

C. would

D. may

- (06) 7. You know he is not going to let us leave early if we _____ get the work done.

A. can't

B. may not

C. shouldn't

D. mustn't

- (07) 8. The boss has given everyone a special holiday , so we ____ go to work tomorrow.

A. can't

B. mustn't

C. needn't

D. shouldn't

答案:1. BACCC 6. BAC

第二部分 解题指导

情态动词不是动词,不表示动作状态。情态动词无人称和数的变化,它不能单独使用,必须与其后的动词原形构成谓语。

情态助动词:can(could), may(might), must, have to(had to), ought to, shall(should), will(would);

具有情态助动词的特征,又具有实义动词的某些特征,称为半情态助动词 dare, need, used to, had better, would rather 等。

具体用法如下。

(一) 情态助动词

1. can 和 could 的用法

1) 表示能力(ability),指有能力做某事,意为“能够”。例如:

She can speak English but she can't speak Spanish.

Can you finish the work tonight?

Man cannot live without air.

①表示有能力克服困难做成了某事,用 is/are able to。例如:

Despite his handicap he is able to drive a car.

注意 be able to 有更多的形式:

He was able to go to the party yesterday evening and he enjoyed himself very much.

I'll not be able to come this afternoon.

I haven't been able to walk properly since I had that skiing accident.

I really appreciate being able to speak to you so frankly about this.

②表示有能力通过努力做成某事,还可用 manage to 或 succeed in doing。例如:

Do you think she'll manage to get a visa?

The army succeeded in defeating their enemy.

2) 表示请求或允许(permission),意为“可否”,“可以”。例如:

Can I smoke here?

Perhaps we can go out for a walk.

You can have the book when I have finished it.

You can't pick flowers in this park.

3) 表示可能性 (possibility), 含惊讶、怀疑、不相信的语气, 常用在否定句、疑问句或感叹句中, 意为“可能”。例如:

This cannot be done by him.

You can't sell the cow and drink the milk, as the saying goes.

①在 wh- questions 中, 或与副词 only, hardly 等连用表达可能性, 用 can 或 could, 不用 may。例如:

Who can/could that be at this time of night?

Where can/could that noise be coming from?

How can you be so careless!

It can/could hardly be the postman, he only comes in the morning.

It can/could only be Steve. He's the only one with a key.

②在肯定句中, 表示现在或将来的可能性, 用 may, might 或 could, 不用 can。例如:

He may/might/could be in the library.

What he said may/might/could be true.

I may/might leave for Beijing next month.

③在肯定句中使用 can 表示可能性时, 其含义是理论上的可能性 (theoretical possibility), 不表示实际的可能性 (factual possibility), 也就是说, 不涉及到是否真会发生。例如:

The invention can be improved.

Even expert drivers can make mistakes.

4) can be 用于推测某人或某物一时的情况, 意为“有时候会……”。例如:

SARS can be very dangerous. 非典型肺炎会很危险。

He can be very friendly at times. 他有时会很友好。

The road can be blocked. 路可能会被堵塞了。

Drinks in restaurants can be very expensive.

5) could 表示轻微的怀疑或委婉地陈述看法。例如:

His story could be true, but I hardly think it is.

I could do the job today , but I d rather put it off until tomorrow.

I m sorry I couldn t lend you the book now.

Who could have supposed you were going to do such a thing !

It seems incredible that he could have finished the work so soon.

(could have finished 表示已完成)

6) could 表示请求, 语气较委婉, 主要用于疑问句, 不用于肯定句, 答语应用 can。例如:

Could you lend me some money ? $\begin{cases} \text{Yes, I can.} \\ \text{No, I m afraid not.} \end{cases}$

7) couldn t 用于一个表示强调语气的结构

①“couldn t + 动词 + 比较级”用于对现在行为或感情的强调, 意为“非常……”, “再……不过了”。例如:

$\begin{cases} \text{- Shall I give you a ride as you live so far away.} \\ \text{- It couldn t be better. 再好不过了!} \\ \text{- Go for a picnic this weekend, OK?} \\ \text{- I couldn t agree more. 我非常同意/我举双手赞成。} \end{cases}$

②“couldn t have + 过去分词 + 比较级”用于对过去行为或感情的强调, 意为“非常……”, “再……不过了”。例如:

They couldn t have tried harder to make me feel welcome.

为了让我感到受欢迎, 他们竭尽了全力。

I couldn t have been more pleased when I heard about your results - congratulations !

当我听到你的结果时, 高兴极了, 祝贺你!

8) 注意 can 的惯用语。

①cannot (help/choose) but + 原形动词, 意为: “不得不, 只能”。

I cannot help but tell her the truth.

②can but + 原形动词, 意为: “只好; 不得不”。

We can but agree with him.

③cannot help + 动名词, 意为: “禁不住”, “不得不”。

I cannot help laughing.

④can t help (it) 意为: “控制不住, 没有办法”。

“Why are you crying?” “I just can t help it.”

It can't be helped. 这是没有办法的事。

- ⑤ cannot too 意为：“无论怎样……也不为过 越……越好”。

You cannot be too careful. 你越小心越好。

I cannot thank you too much. I owe my progress to you.

我怎样感谢你都不过分。我的进步归功于你。

- ⑥ cannot without 意为：“没有……就不能”。

You cannot watch TV without your father's permission.

One cannot succeed without perseverance.

一个人没有毅力就不能成功。

2. may 和 might 的用法

- 1) 表示许可(permission), 用于请求或征得对方的许可。例如：

May I interrupt?

You may go now.

这时，常可用 be allowed to 的相应形式代替。例如：

We may (are allowed to) keep the book for two weeks.

用“May I”征询对方许可，在文体上比较正式，在语气上比较客气。例如：

May I smoke in this room?

针对“May I”的回答：

May I use your pen? $\begin{cases} \text{Yes, you may.} \\ \text{No, you may not.} \end{cases}$

在现代口语中，用“Can I”征询对方意见更为常见。例如：

Can I take this book out? $\begin{cases} \text{Yes, you can.} \\ \text{No, you can't/mustn't.} \end{cases}$

- 2) 表示可能性(possibility), 用于推测，暗指不确定。例如：

She may know Tom's address.

He may be waiting for you at the station.

They may have got lost.

使用时还应注意以下几点。

①表示可能性时，may 不用于疑问句。在疑问句中表示“可能”时，通常用“be likely to”或“Do you think”这一结构。例如：

Is she likely to come this afternoon?

Do you think we shall win the game ?

②当句中出现“ I am afraid , I am not sure ”等表示不确定含义时 , 常选用“ may ”或“ might ”。例如 :

I may go , but I don't really want to.

He may come , but I am not quite sure.

I'm afraid he might not come to attend the meeting today.

③从语气上判断 , may 所表示的可能性比 might 大一点 , 而 might 则表示较多的怀疑。例如 :

He may be very busy now. (可能性较大)

He might be very busy now. (可能性较小)

3) 用于表让步的状语从句中。例如 :

However hard you may study , you cannot master English in a month.

Come what may , I will never desert you.

无论发生什么 , 我绝不会背弃你。

4) 用于祈使句 , 表示祝愿。例如 :

May you succeed !

May we never forget each other !

5) might 常用于表示委婉的请求或轻微的责备。例如 :

You might post this letter for me if you are going near a post box.

You might have let me know before !

6) 用于某些习惯用法中。例如 :

①may well + 动词原形 , 意为“理所当然 ; 有足够的理由” , (= have good reason to)

He has changed so much. You may well not recognize him.

She may well be proud of her son.

②may/might (just) as well , 意为“最好”(= had better) , 用于提出建议。

You may as well give him the letter.

You might as well stay at home tonight.

③may/might as well + do A + as + do B , 意为“与其做 B , 不如做 A”

You might as well throw the money away as lend it to him. 你与其借钱给他，不如把钱扔掉。

One may as well not know a thing at all as know it but imperfectly. 与其一知半解，还不如全然不知。

3. must 和 have to 的用法

1) must 和 have to 表示义务，意为“必须”、“一定要”。例如：

You must arrive in good time. The meeting is very important.

Everyone has to register their name and address in order to be able to vote.

2) must 表示肯定性或难以避免，意为“必然会”、“肯定会”。例如：

All men must die.

Don't bet on horse race; you must lose in the long run.

3) must 表示有把握的推测，意为“一定是”，“准是”，有 3 种形式：

①对现在情况的推测：must + 动词原形

That tall fellow must be a basketball player.

He must be anxious to know the results.

I failed the exam. You must think I am stupid!

②对现在正在进行中的事的推测：must be + 现在分词

You look happy. You must be having a good time.

③对过去的推测：must have + 过去分词

You must have met him yesterday.

4) must 作“偏要”，“硬要”解：

①常以第二人称为主语，意指不耐烦或令人不愉快的事。例如：

If you must smoke, at least you could use an ashtray.

If you must know, I'm going to help him look for an apartment.

Why must you buy that car?

②用于其他人称，表示主语“固执”或“不巧”的意味。例如：

Jane was never a pleasant young girl. After you gave her your advice, she must go and do the opposite.

The car must break down just when we were starting our holiday.

5) must 的否定有如下 3 种形式,用于 3 种不同的场合:

① must 表示“合理的推断和可能性”时,否定含义为“不可能”:

肯定: must be ⇒ 否定: cannot be

肯定: must have done ⇒ 否定: cannot have done

It must be eleven o'clock now.

⇒ It cannot be eleven o'clock now.

You must have met him before.

⇒ You cannot have met him before.

② must 表示“义务和必要”时,否定含义为“不必”:

肯定: must do ⇒ 否定: need not do 或 don't have to do

We must get up at six tomorrow morning.

⇒ We need not get up at six tomorrow morning.

⇒ We don't have to get up at six tomorrow morning.

③ must 表示“禁止和批评”时,常用于否定句,其含义为“决不能”:

You mustn't park your car here.

You mustn't touch that kettle. It's hot!

5) 回答以 must 提问的句子,用如下肯定或否定形式作答。

Must we clean all the rooms? $\begin{cases} \text{Yes, you must.} \\ \text{No, you don't have to.} \\ \text{No, you needn't.} \end{cases}$

6) must 可用作名词,表示“必须有的东西(做的事)”。例如:

Warm clothes are a must in the mountains.

Don't miss his latest play; it's a must.

7) must 和 have to 表示“必须”时,应注意下列几点区别:

① must 表示的是说话人的主观看法(obligation from the speaker),而 have to 则往往强调客观需要(obligation outside our control)。比较:

The play is not interesting, I really must go now.

I had to work when I was your age.

② must 一般只表现在, have to 则有更多的时态形式。

过去式 :had to

将来式 shall/will have to

现在完成式 have/has had to 过去完成式 had had to

③二者的否定意义大不相同。

A) must not 表示禁止,是说话人强有力的劝告,意为“决不可以”、“不准”、“不允许”。而 don't have to 意为“不必”。比较:

You mustn't go. 你决不可去。

You don't have to go. 你不必去。

B) didn't have to do 指“过去没有必要做”,至于是否已做,应根据上下文推断。例如:

It was very kind of you to do the washing-up, but you didn't have to do it. (此事已做)

It (指巴格达博物馆被洗劫) didn't have to happen. That's the kind of thing you should have planned for. (此事已发生)

I got up late this morning as I didn't have to go to work. (此事未做)

4. ought to 的用法

肯定式: 主语 + ought to do sth.

否定式: 主语 + ought not to (oughtn't to) do sth.

疑问式: Ought + 主语 + to do sth.

1) ought to 表示“应该”(与 should 同义,但语气稍重),无人称与时态变化。例如:

You ought to take care of him.

用于否定句和疑问句时,美国英语中常常省略“to”。例如:

You ought not smoke so much.

Ought you smoke so much?

2) 表示推测。注意 ought to 与 must 表示推测时的区别:

{ He must be home by now. (断定他已到家)

{ He ought to be home by now. (不十分肯定)

{ This is where the oil must be. (比较直率)

{ This is where the oil ought to be. (比较含蓄)

5. shall 和 should 的用法

1) shall 在疑问句中，用于第一、第三人称，表示征求对方的意见。例如：

What shall we do this evening ?

Shall he start at once or wait for a while ?

Shall he go on an errand ? 你要他办点事吗？

= Do you want him to go on an errand ?

回答：(Please) Let him go. 叫他去吧。

2) shall 用于第二、第三人称，表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺或威胁。例如：

You shall fail if you don't work harder. (警告)

He shall have the book when I finish reading it. (允诺)

He shall be punished. (威胁)

3) 用在法律、条约、规章、预言等文件中，无论主语人称如何，一律用 shall，表示义务、规定。例如：

House owners shall keep their gardens in a neat and ordinary state.

(义务)

Each citizen shall carry his identification card when travelling. (规定)

Death is certain to all ; all shall die. (预言)

4) should 表示劝告、建议、命令，其同义词是 ought to。在疑问句中，通常用 should 代替 ought to。例如：

You should go to class right away.

Should I open the window ?

5) should 表示义务，意指应该做，且有一种道义上的责任。例如：

I should help him because he is in trouble.

You should treat your neighbours with more respect.

6) should 表示期待，用于表达合理的推断(意为“应该”)或明显的结果(意为“可能”)，且所期待的事几乎是事实，因此不是虚拟语气。

It is three o'clock , the football game should begin soon.

Mary took dancing lessons for years ; she should be an excellent

dancer.

7) should 表示惊讶, 忧虑, 惋惜等情绪, 意为“竟会, 竟然”, 常用在 I'm surprised; It worries me; It's a pity; You can't imagine 等结构中。例如:

I find it quite astonishing that he should be so rude to you.

It is a pity that you should be so careless.

You can't imagine that a well-behaved gentleman should be so rude to a lady.

I'm surprised that she should have done such a thing. (should have done 表示已完成)

8) 在疑问句中, 常与 how, why, who 等连用, 表示不合理, 难于相信或不应该之事。例如:

How should I know?

Why should he publish such a book?

Who should write it but himself?

6. will 和 would 的用法

1) will 表示意志、愿望和决心。例如:

I will never do that again.

I won't let you down. 我决不会让你失望。

2) will 表示推测, 含意为“想必, 大概”(与 must, should, ought to 等表示推断同义), 指现在。例如:

It's five o'clock. Janet will be in Paris now.

It will be snowing in Beijing now.

3) will 表示习惯、倾向, 多用于第三人称, 意为“通常, 常常”。例如:

He will sit there hour after hour doing nothing.

Some birds will fly away to the south when the weather turns cold.

Boys will be boys. 男孩终究是男孩。

4) will 表示自然规律(指现在, 有时可用现在时)。例如:

If pure water is heated to 100 °C, it will boil.

Oil and water will not mix.

5) 用于对一个令人厌烦的坏习惯或对无生命物体进行批评(若仅

陈述事实，不含厌烦情绪时，也可用现在时)。例如：

We enjoy going out with Frank and Carol , but they will argue in public !

Jack will leave the lights on when he s last out of the office !

Whatever I do , my car won t start first time on cold mornings.

My car doesn t start / never starts first time on cold mornings.

6) 用在 if 条件句中

①表示意志，意为“insist on”。例如：

If you $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{will go out} \\ \text{insist on going out} \end{array} \right\}$ without a coat , you ll catch a cold.

②表示有礼貌的请求或劝阻，意为“be willing to”。例如：

If you will make another try , I shall do everything to help you.

If you will be kind enough to fill in the form , I ll have your baggage brought in.

If you won t stop smoking , you can only expect to have a bad cough.

③表示对将来行为的预示。例如：

If the water will rise above this level , then we must warn everybody in the neighbourhood.

If he won t arrive before ten , there s no point in ordering meal for him.

If the game won t be finished until ten , I ll spend the night at your place.

7) would 可表示过去反复发生的动作或某种倾向。would 表过去习惯时比 used to 正式，且没有“现已无此习惯”的含义，常与 every day , often , frequently 等连用。例如：

During the vacation he would visit me every week.

In those days the old man would get up very early in the morning and go for a walk in the fields.

8) would 表示估计或猜想。例如：

It would be about ten when he left home.

What would she be doing there ?

I thought he would have told you all about it.

9) would 表示谦恭的请求，常用于疑问句。例如：

Would you tell me the way to the station ?

Would you mind lending me that book ?

I would like to borrow a copy of Random Winds.

10) won't 或 would not 常用于表示“坚决地拒绝”。例如：

I won't listen to your nonsense.

The dog won't stop barking.

I won't have anything said against her.

We urged him to take a rest , but he wouldn't hear of it.

He would not let me enter the room.

(二) 半情态助动词

具有情态助动词的特征，又具有实义动词的特征，称为半情态助动词。它们是 dare , need , used to , had better , would rather。

1. dare 和 need 的用法

	情态动词	实 义 动 词
肯定式		He dares to escape. He needs to escape.
否定式	He daren't escape. He needn't escape.	He doesn't dare (to) escape. He doesn't need to escape.
疑问式	Dare he escape ? Need he escape ?	Does he dare (to) escape ? Does he need to escape ?

1) dare 和 need 作情态动词时，主要用于疑问句、否定句和条件从句，以及含否定或不肯定意义的语境。例如：

He daren't speak English before such a crowd , dare he ?

You needn't come so early.

If you dare speak to me like that again , you will be sorry.

You need study only the first two chapters.

I wonder if you dared come home.

We need express little surprise.

There is nothing he dare do.

I don't think he dare express his feelings.

2) dare 作情态动词，既可以指现在，也可以指过去。例如：

She dare not go out at night.

The president was so hot-tempered that no one dare tell him the bad news.

Tom wanted to come, but he daren't.

注意：①在口语中也有人这样表达：

“She dared say no more.” “He dared not drive so fast”。

注意：②也可用 dare 完成式的否定表过去：

I daren't have asked him when we met.

3) need 作情态动词，没有过去时形式。用情态动词表示过去行为，用 needn't have done 意为“本不必做但实际上已经做”。例如：

He said he need not hurry.

We had plenty of bread. You needn't have bought a loaf.

4) 下面是对情态动词 need 引起的问句的几种回答形式：

Need I finish the work today ? { Yes, you must/have to.
Yes, you ought to/should.
No, you needn't.
No, you don't have to.

5) dare 和 need 常用作实义动词，有时态、人称和数的变化。

①使用 dare 应注意，在肯定句中，后面通常接带 to 的不定式；在否定和疑问句中，后面可接带 to 或不带 to 的不定式。例如：

I dare to swim across this river.

He does not dare (to) answer.

Don't you dare (to) touch it?

②使用 need 应注意其各种时态的表达：

He needs to finish it this evening. (现在时)

They did not need to arrive so early. (过去时)

With one of new generation of food processors, cooks won't need to peel or chop any more. (将来时)

注意 didn't need to do 通常指“过去没有必要做某事”。例如：

I didn't need to clean the windows. My sister did it.

She was so nervous to reply , but fortunately she did not need to say anything.

We didn't need to take warm sweaters, as the weather was so good.

6) How dare you/he ? 不是真正的疑问句,而是对所做的事表示“愤怒、谴责”之意。例如:

How dare you open my drawer without my permission ?

How dare you say I m unfair

7) 惯用语“*I dare say*”, “*I dare say*”意为“我以为 我想”。例如:

He is not here yet , but I dare say he will come later.

2. used to , had better , would rather 的用法

1) *used to* 表示过去的习惯动作或状态(现已不复如此)。在间接引语中,其形式可不变。例如:

He told us he used to play football when he was young.

在疑问句、否定句、否定疑问句或强调句中，有两种形式：

疑问句 { Did you use to go there to see your brother?
Used you to go there to see your brother?

{Used you to go there to see your brother ?

回答形式也有两种 :Yes , $\begin{cases} \text{I did.} \\ \text{I used to.} \end{cases}$ No , $\begin{cases} \text{I didn't.} \\ \text{I usedn't.} \end{cases}$

否定句 { I usedn't to go there.
I didn't use to go there.

usedn t 亦可拼作 usen t, 但发音皆为['ju:znt]。

否定疑问句 { Used t you to be interested in the theatre ?
Didn t you use to be interested in the theatre ?

强调句 $\begin{cases} \text{I used to smoke , but it was a long time ago.} \\ \text{I did use to smoke , but it was a long time ago.} \end{cases}$

反意疑问句，也有两种形式：

She used to be very fat , $\begin{cases} \text{didn't she?} \\ \text{use(d)n't she?} \end{cases}$

2) had better 意为“最好(做……)”,后接不带 to 的不定式。例如:

We had better go now.

Hadn't we better go now? = Had we better not go now?

I think I'd better be going. (进行时表示“最好立即”。)

Breakfast had better be eaten before 8 o'clock. (被动态)

Better stay inside today, Tom. (祈使式)

You had better have done that. (完成时表示未完成动作。)

注意 ① had best 与 had better 同义, 但较少用。

注意 ② You had better 用于对同辈或晚辈, 不可用于对长辈。

3) would rather 意为“宁愿”, 后接不带 to 的不定式。如:

I'd rather do it right away.

(接动词原形, 指现在或将来。)

I'd rather not have told her the news.

(接不定式完成式, 指过去。)

由于 would rather 表选择, 因而后可接 than。例如:

I would rather work on a farm than in a factory.

I would rather watch TV than go to see the film.

I would rather lose a dozen cherry trees than that you should tell me one lie.

在 would rather 后接句子时应该用过去时或过去完成时。参阅第七章“虚拟语气在 would rather 后接从句的应用”。

(三) 情态助动词 + 不定式的完成式

结 构	含 义
1. could + have done	过去可以做而实际上未能做。“本来可以做”
2. may/might have done	对过去发生的行为的推测。“或许已经/可以做”
3. must have done	对过去发生的行为的推断。“一定已做”
4. needn't have done	本来不必做而实际上已经做了。“本不必做”
5. should have done	本来应该做而实际上没有做。“本应该做”
6. will have done	推测将来某个时间前已经完成。“可能已经做”
7. ought to have done	过去应该做而实际上未做。“本应该做”

1. could + 不定式的完成式

“could have + 过去分词”表示“过去可以做而实际上未能做某事”(can 的完成式仅用于否定和疑问句中)。可用于表示惋惜、遗憾等,属于虚拟语气。例如:

You could have done better, but you didn't try your best.

We could have finished the task, but it was always raining.

否定式“can't/couldn't have + 过去分词”表示“过去不可能发生的事情”。疑问形式和否定形式表示对过去发生的行为怀疑或不肯定。用“can”语气较强烈,“could”语气较委婉。例如:

Where could Mary have gone?

Can he have got the book?

They cannot have gone out because the light is on!

He can't/couldn't have stolen your money. 他不可能偷了你的钱。

2. may/might + 不定式的完成式

1) “may(might) have + 过去分词”表示对过去发生的行为的推测。might 所表示的可能性比 may 小,语气较委婉,常用于虚拟语气中。例如:

He may have finished the exercises, but he didn't hand in.

If we had taken the other road, we might have arrived earlier.

2) might have done 用于表示“将来某时或许已经完成”。例如:

Call me next Tuesday; I might have finished the project by then.

3) might have done 用于提出批评,表示责备或忠告等。例如:

You might have told me about the party!

You might have helped me with my work.

3. must + 不定式的完成式

“must have + 过去分词”的结构常用在肯定句中,表示对过去发生的行为的推测,意为“一定,想必”。它的否定或疑问形式用 can 代替 must。例如:

You must have seen the film The Gold Rush.

He must have been to Shanghai.

They can't have gone out, because the light is on.

4. needn't + 不定式的完成式

“needn't have + 过去分词”表示“本来不必做某事而实际上做了某事”。例如：

You needn't have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain.

We needn't have taken warm sweaters. We could have used the space in our luggage for more books!

5. should + 不定式的完成式

“should have + 过去分词”表示“本应该做而实际上没有做”。其否定式表示某种行为不该发生但却发生了。例如：

You should have started earlier, but you didn't.

She shouldn't have taken away my measuring tape, for I wanted to use it.

注意 He should have finished the work by now. (表推测)

6. will + 不定式的完成式

“will have + 过去分词”的结构表示推测，主要用于二、三人称，推测某件事情可能已经发生，此时的含义同“must have done”。例如：

We sent the invitations on Monday, so they will have received by now. Why hasn't anyone replied?

该结构也用于推测将来，希望某种行为在将来某个时间前已经完成。例如：

By the year 2170, people will have established cities and industries on Mars.

7. ought to + 不定式的完成式

1) “ought to have + 过去分词”表示“过去应做某事而实际未做”。ought to 与 should 常可以互相换用。例如：

You ought to have helped him (but you didn't).

You ought to/should have asked my permission first.

2) ought to have done 常用于对过去不当行为的指责。例如：

You ought to have told me about it earlier.

You ought not to have wasted your time.

第三部分 分类练习

1. "Look , it ____ be Lao Wang. "
" No , it ____ be him. He has gone abroad. "
A. may ; mustn't B. must ; may not C. must ; can't D. can ; may not
2. " I've taken someone else's green sweater by mistake. "
It ____ Harry's. He always wears green. "
A. would be B. will be C. could be D. have to be
3. Where ____ that noise be coming from ?
A. could B. may C. must D. will
4. He didn't agree with me at first but I ____ persuade him.
A. was able to B. needed C. could D. dared
5. I ____ walk properly since I had that skiing accident.
A. couldn't B. didn't
C. wasn't able to D. haven't been able to
6. I really appreciate ____ speak to you so frankly about this.
A. able to B. being able to C. to be able to D. could
7. You ____ walk for miles and miles among the hills without meeting anyone.
A. must B. need C. may D. should
8. "Excuse me. Is this the right way to the Summer Palace ?"
"Sorry. I am not sure. But it ____ be. "
A. might B. will C. must D. can
9. I ____ go shopping this afternoon. If I do , I will buy some fruit.
A. might B. should C. must D. can
10. Since you need to catch an early train tomorrow , we ____ leave now.
A. might as well B. had better to
C. ought to have D. should have to
11. " Who is the girl standing over there ?"
" Well , if you ____ know , her name is Mabel. "
A. may B. must C. can D. shall
12. Why ____ you always leave your dirty clothes in the bedroom ?
A. need B. can C. may D. must
13. Students ____ wear school uniforms when they have an important meeting.
A. must B. have to C. used to D. need

14. She left the reception early because she ____ get up early the next morning.
A. needed B. might C. used to D. had to
15. The boss said to the secretary , " If you work well , you ____ have a rise. "
A. must B. shall C. ought D. would
16. " Why are you and Jack arguing so much these days ?"
" He takes me for granted. He ____ watch TV every evening and ignore me completely. "
A. can B. might C. should D. will
17. " I hope Josh is OK at that summer camp. He might be homesick. "
" Don't worry about him. He ____ a great time. "
A. will be having B. ought to have C. has to have D. need to have
18. If you ____ take a seat for a moment , Mr Franks will be with you soon.
A. may B. should C. must D. will
19. As they get older , teenagers ____ be treated more like adults.
A. had better B. could C. have to D. should
20. I ____ pay Tracy a visit , but I'm not sure whether I will have time this Sunday.
A. should B. need C. would D. could
21. There ____ problems with traffic at that time of the evening.
A. needn't be B. shouldn't be C. hasn't to be D. mustn't be
22. Why ____ it get colder when we go up a mountain ? We are getting nearer to the sun !
A. ought to B. would C. should D. must
23. " I don't mind telling you what I know. "
" You ____ . I'm not asking you for it. "
A. mustn't B. needn't C. can't D. may not
24. He hardly ____ say anything more , since you know all about it.
A. don't need to B. needs C. need D. needn't
25. You ____ to the meeting tomorrow if you have something more important to do.
A. don't need come B. shan't need come
C. needn't come D. needn't to come
26. There wasn't anyone on the nightclub door so we ____ proof of our age.
A. didn't need to show B. needn't have shown
C. couldn't show D. mustn't show
27. You ____ finish the washing-up. I could have done it.
A. couldn't B. needn't C. didn't have to D. don't have to

28. "Dare you go home at night?" " ____ . "
- A. Yes , I do B. No , I daren t C. No , I don t D. Yes , I dare to
29. ____ climb that tall tree ?
- A. Would you dare B. Dare you to C. Dare you D. Will you dare
30. He ____ his parents about his failure in the exam.
- A. dares not tell B. dare not to tell
C. dare not tell D. dares not to tell
31. Jim ____ his strict father , for he failed in the examination once again.
- A. didn t dare to see B. not dare to see
C. didn t dared to see D. dare not to see
32. There used to be a church in the west of the town , ____ ?
- A. didn t there B. used it C. used there D. usedn t it
33. He said he ____ get tired when he played table tennis.
- A. didn t use to B. didn t used to
C. usedn t D. usen t to
34. You ____ through that red light. You ____ an accident.
- A. must have driven ; should have caused
B. could have driven ; might have caused
C. couldn t have driven ; should have caused
D. shouldn t have driven ; could have caused
35. I m surprised that he ____ in the exam.
- A. should fail B. would have failed
C. may have failed D. should have failed
36. You ____ her more help , even though you were really very busy.
- A. ought to have given B. must have given
C. might give D. ought to give
37. The conference ____ a full week by the time it ends.
- A. must have lasted B. will have lasted
C. would last D. has lasted
38. We sent the invitation on Monday , so they ____ them by now. Why hasn t anyone replied ?
- A. can have received B. will be receiving
C. will have received D. must receive
39. We needn t have taken warm sweaters. We ____ the space in our luggage for more books !

- A. can have used B. could have used
C. ought to use D. must have used
40. Research findings show we spend about two hours dreaming every night , no matter what we ____ during the day.
A. should have done B. would have done
C. must have done D. may have done
41. Call me next Tuesday ; I ____ the project by then.
A. might finish B. might have finished
C. should finish D. ought to finish
42. There was a terrific noise last night. It ____ an explosion.
A. can be B. should be C. must be D. must have been
43. He ____ the rules , otherwise he ____ so many mistakes.
A. should forget ; wouldn't make
B. must have forgotten ; wouldn't make
C. must have forgotten ; wouldn't have made
D. should have forgotten ; wouldn't make
44. The policeman declared that the blow on the victim's head ____ from behind.
A. should have been made B. must have been made
C. would have been made D. ought to have been made
45. I can't find Dr Lopez anywhere in the office building. Where ____ he have gone ?
A. must B. did C. can D. need
46. She ____ by credit card but she preferred to use cash.
A. might pay B. could have paid C. could pay D. must have paid
47. She ____ the hospital so soon , for she had not yet recovered.
A. hadn't left B. mustn't have left
C. didn't leave D. couldn't have left
48. It is not likely that Mary appears to be unfriendly , so she ____ you when you waved.
A. would not see C. had not seen
C. couldn't have seen D. should not have seen
49. " Shall I give you a ride as you live so far away. " ____ . "
A. It couldn't be better B. It couldn't have been better
C. It couldn't be worse D. It couldn't have been worse
50. I ____ pleased when I heard about your results - congratulations !
A. couldn't be more B. couldn't have been less
C. couldn't have been more D. couldn't be less

- (04)16. "What's that terrible noise?"
 "The neighbors ____ for a party. "
 A. have prepared B. are preparing
 C. prepare D. will prepare
- (04)17. Now that she is out of a job, Lucy ____ going back to school, but she hasn't decided yet.
 A. had considered B. has been considering
 C. considered D. is going to consider
- (04)18. The mayor of Beijing says that all construction work for the Beijing Olympics ____ by 2006.
 A. has been completed B. has completed
 C. will have been completed D. will have completed
- (05)19. He ____ more than 5,000 English words when he entered the university at the age of 15.
 A. has learned B. would have learned
 C. learned D. had learned
- (05)20. Scientists think that the continents ____ always where they ____ today.
 A. aren't; are B. aren't were
 C. weren't; are D. weren't; were
- (05)21. "Why did you leave that position?"
 "I ____ a better position at IBM. "
 A. offer B. offered C. am offered D. was offered
- (06)22. - ____ leave at the end of this month.
 - I don't think you should do that until ____ another job.
 A. I'm going to; you'd found B. I'm going to; you've found
 C. I'll; you'll find D. I'll; you'd find
- (06)23. - Your job ____ open for your return.
 - Thanks.
 A. will be kept B. will keep
 C. had kept D. had been kept
- (06)24. - Where did you put the car keys?

- Oh ,I ____ I put them on the chair because the phone rang as I ____ in.
- A. remembered ; come B. remembered ; was
C. remember ; come D. remember ; was coming
- (07)25. - How can I apply for an online course ?
- Just fill out this form and we ____ what we can do for you.
- A. see B. are seeing C. have seen D. will see
- (07)26. I got caught in the rain and my suit ____.
- A. has ruined B. had ruined
C. has been ruined D. had been ruined
- (07)27. - It was really very kind of you to give me a lift home.
- Oh ,don t mention it. I ____ past your house any way.
- A. was coming B. will come
C. had come D. have come

答案 1. BDCCB 6. ADAAD 11. DDACB 16. BBCDC
21. DBADD 26. CA

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (00)1. My uncle ____ until he was forty-five.
- A. married B. didn t marry
C. was not marrying D. would marry
- (01)2. In such dry weather , the flowers will have to be watered if they ____.
- A. have survived B. are to survive
C. would survive D. will survive
- (02)3. He will have learned English for eight years by the time he ____ from the university next year.
- A. will graduate B. will have graduated
C. graduates D. is to graduate
- (02)4. “ Will you go skiing with me this winter vacation ?”

“ It _____. ”

A. all depend

B. all depends

C. is all depended

D. is all depending

(03)5. I thought Jim would say something about his school report , but he _____ it.

A. doesn't mention

B. hadn't mentioned

C. didn't mention

D. hasn't mentioned

(04)6. The first use of atomic weapons was in 1945 ,and their power _____ increased enormously ever since.

A. is

B. was

C. has been

D. had been

(04)7. The number of deaths from heart disease will be reduced greatly if people _____ to eat more fruit and vegetables.

A. persuade

B. will persuade

C. be persuaded

D. are persuaded

(05)8. More than a dozen students in that school _____ abroad to study medicine last year.

A. sent

B. were sent

C. had sent

D. had been sent

(06)9. Send my regards to your lovely wife when you _____ home.

A. wrote

B. will write

C. have written

D. write

(06)10. When he turned professional at the age of 11 ,Mike _____ to become a world champion by his coach and parents.

A. expected

B. was expecting

C. was expected

D. would be expected

(07)11. - Did you tidy your room ?

- No ,I was going to tidy my room but I _____ visitors.

A. had

B. have

C. have had

D. will have

(07)12. With the help of high technology ,more and more new substances _____ in the past years.

A. discovered

B. have discovered

C. had been discovered

D. have been discovered

答案 1. BBCBC 6. CDBDC 11. AD

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. Old McDonald gave up smoking for a while , but soon _____ to his old ways.
A. returned B. returns
C. was returning D. had returned
- (00) 2. " You re drinking too much. "
" Only at home. No one _____ me but you. "
A. is seeing B. had seen C. sees D. saw
- (00) 3. All the preparations for the task _____ , and we re ready to start.
A. completed B. complete
C. had been completed D. have been completed
- (01) 4. Hundreds of jobs _____ if the factory closes.
A. lose B. will be lost C. are lost D. will lose
- (01) 5. I ve won a holiday for two to Florida. I _____ my mum.
A. am taking B. have taken
C. take D. will have taken
- (01) 6. A new cinema _____ here. They hope to finish it next month.
A. will be built B. is built
C. has been built D. is being built
- (02) 7. John and I _____ friends for eight years. We first got to know each other at a Christmas party. But we _____ each other a couple of times before that.
A. had been ; have seen B. have been ; have seen
C. had been ; had seen D. have been ; had seen
- (02) 8. This is Ted s photo. We miss him a lot. He _____ trying to save a child in the earthquake.
A. killed B. is killed C. was killed D. was killing
- (02) 9. " How are the team playing ?"
" They re playing well , but one of them _____ hurt. "
A. got B. gets C. are D. were

- (00) 2. "You re drinking too much. "
"Only at home. No one ____ me but you. "
A. is seeing B. had seen C. sees D. saw

- (00) 3. All the preparations for the task _____, and we re ready to start.
- A. completed B. complete
- C. had been completed D. have been completed

- (01) 4. Hundreds of jobs _____ if the factory closes.
A. lose B. will be lost C. are lost D. will lose

- (01) 5. I've won a holiday for two to Florida. I _____ my mum.
- A. am taking B. have taken
- C. take D. will have taken

- (01) 6. A new cinema _____ here. They hope to finish it next month.
- A. will be built B. is built
- C. has been built D. is being built

- (02) 7. John and I ____ friends for eight years. We first got to know each other at a Christmas party. But we ____ each other a couple of times before that.
- A. had been ; have seen B. have been ; have seen
C. had been ; had seen D. have been ; had seen

- (02) 8. This is Ted's photo. We miss him a lot. He _____ trying to save a child in the earthquake.
- A. killed B. is killed C. was killed D. was killing

- (02) 9. "How are the team playing?"
"They re playing well ,but one of them ____ hurt. "
A. got B. gets C. are D. were

- (03)10. "When will you come to see me , Dad ?"
- "I will go to see you when you ____ the training course. "
- A. will have finished B. will finish
C. are finishing D. finish
- (03)11. "How long ____ at this job ?"
- "Since 1990. "
- A. were you employed B. have you been employed
C. had you been employed D. will you employed
- (03)12. "What happened to the priceless works of art ?"
- " ____ . "
- A. They were destroyed in the earthquake
B. The earthquake was destroying them
C. They destroyed in the earthquake
D. The earthquake destroyed them
- (04)13. How can you possibly miss the news ?It ____ on TV all day long.
- A. has been B. had been C. was D. will be
- (04)14. "Sorry to have interrupted you. Please go on. "
- "Where was I ?"
- "You ____ you didn't like your father's job. "
- A. had said B. said
C. were saying D. had been saying
- (04)15. I arrived late ;I ____ the road to be so icy.
- A. wouldn't expect B. haven't expected
C. hadn't expected D. wasn't expecting
- (04)16. I ____ while reading the English textbook. Luckily , my roommate woke me up in time !
- A. had fallen asleep B. have fallen asleep
C. fell asleep D. fall asleep
- (05)17. When Mark opened the door , he saw a woman standing there. He ____ her before.
- A. never saw B. had never seen
C. never sees D. has never seen

- (05)18. After a fire broke out in the lab , a lot of equipment _____.
 A. is damaged B. had damaged
 C. damaged D. was damaged
- (05)19. I can't see any coffee in the cupboard. ____ ?
 A. Has it all been finished B. Was it all finished
 C. Has it all finished D. Did it all finish
- (05)20. _____ my sister three times today but her line was always busy.
 A. I d phoned B. I ve been phoning
 C. I ve phoned D. I was phoning

答案 :1. ACDBA 6. DDCAD 11. BAACC 16. CBDAC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. The manager entered the office and was happy to learn that four-fifths of the tickets _____.
 A. was booked B. had been booked
 C. were booked D. have been booked
- (01) 2. The new suspension bridge _____ by the end of last month.
 A. has been designed B. had been designed
 C. was designed D. would be designed
- (02) 3. Rain forests _____ and burned at such a speed that they will disappear from the earth in the near future.
 A. cut B. are cut
 C. are being cut D. had been cut
- (03) 4. By the end of last year , another new gymnasium _____ in Beijing.
 A. would be completed B. was being completed
 C. has been completed D. had been completed
- (04) 5. Although he has lived with us for years , he _____ us much impression.
 A. hadn't left B. didn't leave
 C. doesn't leave D. hasn't left

- (05) 6. The year 2002 ____ remarkable changes in Shanghai's landscape.
A. sees B. has seen C. saw D. had seen
- (05) 7. Telephone messages for the manager ____ on her desk but she didn't notice them.
A. were left B. was left
C. was leaving D. were leaving
- (06) 8. We ____ our new neighbours yet, so we don't know their names.
A. don't meet B. won't meet
C. haven't met D. hadn't met
- (07) 9. The unemployment rate in this district ____ from 6% to 5% in the past two years.
A. has fallen B. had fallen
C. is falling D. was falling
- (07) 10. John had to have his car repaired in a garage because it ____ seriously.
A. damaged B. was being damaged
C. had damaged D. had been damaged

答案 : 1. BBCDD 6. CACAD

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 动词的时态

时态是谓语动词所表示的动作或情况发生时的各种形式。英语有 16 种时态, 以动词 work 为例, 详见下表:

	一般时	进行时	完成时	完成进行时
现在	works work	is am } working are }	has have } worked	has have } been working
过去	worked	was were } working	had worked	had been working

续表

将来	will } shall } work	will } shall } be working	will } shall } have worked	will } shall } have been working
过去 将来	would } should } work	would } should } be working	would } should } have worked	would } should } have been working

下面介绍常用的 11 种时态：一般现在时、一般过去时、一般将来时、现在进行时、过去进行时、将来进行时、现在完成时、过去完成时、将来完成时、过去将来时、现在完成进行时。

1. 一般现在时的用法

1) 表示经常性、习惯性的动作。这时句中常用 often, usually, every day 等时间状语。例如：

He goes to school at six every day.

He usually spends summer in the mountains.

2) 表示现在的状态、特征或按常理应该存在的情况。例如：

England and France are separated by the English Channel.

My parents live in a village near the Swiss border.

In autumn, leaves change from green to brown.

The earth moves around the sun.

3) 用于格言中。例如：

Pride goes before a fall. 骄者必败。

Something is better than nothing. 有总比没有好。

4) 代替将来时。例如：

①在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中。例如：

When I graduate, I'll go to the countryside.

If you come this afternoon, we'll have a meeting.

②在下列句型中：

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Make sure} \\ \text{Be sure} \\ \text{Take care} \\ \text{Make certain} \\ \text{See (to it)} \end{array} \right\}$	+ (that) + 从句(常用一般现在时表将来)
---	---------------------------

例如：

Make sure all the windows are closed before you leave.

Be sure you finish it today.

See to it that the door is fastened before you go to bed.

③表示按计划、时间表要发生的动作。这时句中都带有时间状语，但仅限于下列情况：

A) 往返位移的动词 arrive, come, drive, fly, go, leave, move, return, ride, sail 等。

B) 表示开始结束的动词 begin, close, end, open, start, stop 等。

例如：

The meeting starts at five o'clock.

The train leaves at nine in the morning.

"When does the bus start?" "It starts in ten minutes."

5) 代替过去时。

仅限于 say, tell, hear, learn 等少数动词用于转述别人不久前对自己说过的话，尤其是所说的情况现在仍然存在。例如：

He says he can't wait any longer.

My friends tell me that you've been unwell.

I hear you want a secretary.

6) 代替完成时。

句型：It is + 一段时间 + since 从句。

在此句型中，“It is”比“it has been”更普通。例如：

It is ten years since I moved to Shanghai.

7) 书报的标题、球赛现场报导、小说等的情况介绍常用一般现在时。

PEACE TALKS FAIL.

Owen shoots, but the ball hits the post.

The story is set in the spring of 2003.

The Bible says love of money is the root of all evil.

2. 一般过去时的用法

1) 表示过去某时间发生的且已完成的动作。例如：

He saw Mr. Wang yesterday.

He worked in a factory in 1986.

Jack wrote ten letters this morning.

2) 表示在过去存在或持续了一段时间的某种状态。例如：

He lived in Paris until he was ten.

We lived just outside Oxford in the nineties , but we didn't have a car.

3) 表示过去经常发生的动作或多次反复的行为。例如：

He rode a horse to school every day when he was a child.

Every morning I took a walk when I was in the countryside.

My brother applied for a visa six times before he got one.

注意：①“used to”和“would + 动词原形”常用于表示过去经常发生的动作，常与过去时间状语连用。但“used to”表示过去常发生而现在不再如此。“would + 动词原形”没有“现在不再……”的含义。例如：

I used to play chess.

During the vacation I would swim in the sea.

注意：②“used to”可用于描写过去的状态，而“would”则不能。例如：

There didn't use to be (不用 wouldn't be) any crime around here in the old days.

注意：③be (was) in the habit of 也常用于表示过去的习惯。例如：

When I was young , I was in the habit of rising early.

4) 用于对已去世的人的情况描述。例如：

Edison was a great inventor.

Jack was a cripple (跛子) all his life.

5) 在虚拟语气结构中，用过去时表示现在。

It's time
 I wish
 I'd rather

} + 从句(用一般过去时表示现在)

例如：

It's time you had a holiday.

I wish you lived closer to us.

I'd rather you did it now.

6) 过去时和 ever, never, once 连用, 表示过去的经验。例如：

Did you ever see a lion?

She never heard such a beautiful song before.

说明：用过去时仅表示“过去的经验”，若表示“过去一直到现在为止的经验”，则用现在完成时。

7) 代替过去完成时。例如：

He did nothing before he went to bed.

I told them after you left.

说明：由于 before 和 after 已表明了时间的先后，所以可用一般过去时代替过去完成时。

3. 一般将来时的用法

1) will/won't 可用于表示“预测的将来”，即根据分析判断认为某事肯定会发生。例如：

The weather will be good tomorrow.

He will be in prison for a long time.

说明：在 we 和 I 后可用 shall/shan't 表将来，但这一用法现在显得有点过时。用 will 表示“根据目前情况预测某事即将发生”，通常加上一个副词。例如：

Look at the sky. It will probably/definitely rain later. (正确)

Look at those black clouds. It will rain. (错误)

2) will/won't 可用于表示“意志的将来”，谈论所作的决定，强调所下的决心。例如：

You look tired. I'll cook dinner tonight.

Oh, our guests are here. I'll go and sort out some drinks for them.

I will come with you at the weekend, whatever my parents say!

After what has just happened, I won't believe a word you say again.

3) will/won't 可用于表示“将来的事实”，与判断、安排或意愿无

关。例如：

I'll be sixteen years old next month.

The sun will rise at 5:30 tomorrow morning.

4) 与 if 条件句连用，表示随着一件事情的发生，另一件事就将发生。例如：

You'll be in time if you hurry.

Will he get angry if I tell him the truth?

5) 其它可用于表达将来的结构：

①“be going to + 动词原形”表示“future of the present cause”，表示“根据目前情况判断某事即将发生”，意为“将要、就要”，或“future of the present intention”，表示“根据目前的意愿将要做某事”，意为“打算”。例如：

Look at those black clouds. It is going to rain.

We are going to have a meeting today.

说明：在有时间状语从句或条件状语的从句的句子中，主句不能用“be going to(根据目前的意愿将要做某事)”表示将来。例如：

When he comes, I shall/will (不用 am going to) give him your message.

If you come out for a walk, you will (不用 are going to) feel much better.

②“be to + 动词原形”表示“正式安排”，意为“预定”，指按计划进行或征求对方意见。例如：

The President is to hold an official reception for the visitors.

The boy is to go to school tomorrow.

Are we to go on with this work?

此结构常用于 if 从句中，表示只有主句的行为发生后，if 条件句中的情况才能成为可能。例如：

If a man is to succeed, he must work very hard.

此结构还可用于表示“命令”和“指示”。例如：

You are not to disturb the head teacher while the inspectors are here next week.

③“be due to + 动词原形”表示“timetabled events”，意为“定于(某时作某事)”，常与时间状语连用。例如：

The repairs are due to start on 26th May.

I'm due to graduate in the next half of the year.

④“be about to + 动词原形”，意为“正要”，“即将”，表示眼下就要发生的事，因此后面一般不接将来时间状语。例如：

Come on! The check-in desk is about to close.

Ladies and gentlemen. Please take your seats. The performance is about to start.

⑤be on the point of (正要...时), be likely to (有可能要), be sure to (必然会)等也能表示将来。例如：

We were on the point of telephoning you when your telegram arrived.

They are likely to arrive before six.

The new timetable is sure to annoy some of the teachers when they see it.

4. 现在进行时的用法

1) 表示现在正在进行的动作或某些体感动词的持续状态。例如：

They are playing tennis now.

It is still raining outside.

My foot is hurting and my back is aching.

2) 少数瞬间动词用进行时表示不断重复的动作。例如：

He is jumping with joy.

Someone is knocking at the door.

3) 少数动词用进行时表示一个人的临时行为。例如：

She's staying in my house this time.

I don't really work here; I am just helping out until the new secretary arrives.

此类动词有 live, work, study, stay, help 等。

4) 指在一个特定的时间段内反复进行的事情。例如：

I'm feeding the neighbour's cat this week while she's in hospital.

Jack's having a tough time at the office at the moment and he's smoking about fifty cigarettes a day!

5) 表示根据安排在最近的将来要出现的情况，常伴有时间状语。例如：

We are leaving here tomorrow.

They are getting married next month.

We are seeing a musical at the theatre sometime next week. (= We've got the tickets.)

The Computer City has announced that it is opening four new shops next month.

此用法常用于下列表示开始、终结、往来行动的动词：arrive, begin, close, come, die, drive, end, fall, fly, go, land, leave, open, move, return, see, start, stay, stop, take off, travel 等。

6) 表示离现在较近的过去。例如：

Do you hear what she is saying?

You know I'm telling the truth.

7) 与 always, constantly, continually, forever 等连用表达某种感情色彩，如不耐烦、不满意等。例如：

She is always complaining.

He is forever finding fault with me.

The postman is always putting your letters into my letter-box.

8) 用于解释或归纳前面说的话。例如：

When I say somebody is lazy, I'm not referring to you.

If you climb mountains in such bad weather, you are asking for trouble.

9) 现在进行时可以表示“关切”、“礼貌”、“强调”、“赞美”等。例如：

Are you feeling better today? (表关切)

I'm hoping you will come. (表礼貌)

I'm telling you the truth. (表强调)

You are doing fine work at school. (表赞美)

10) 以下介词短语也表示进行的意义。例如：

under discussion(在讨论中), under way(在进行中),

under construction(在建设中), under repair(在修理中),

under medical treatment(在治疗中)

11) 下列动词为“静态动词”，通常不用于进行时态。例如：

表示存在 :be , consist , contain , exist , remain

表示拥有 :belong to , have(= own) , include , lack , own , possess

表示心理情感 :desire , despise , detest , dislike , envy , hate , like ,
love , need , pity , prefer , trust , want , wish

表示思想和信念 :believe , doubt , expect , forget , imagine , intend ,
know , realize , recognize , remember , suppose , understand

其它 :appear , resemble , seem , concern , depend , deserve , fit , mat-
ter , mean , mind

说明 以上动词若用于非静态意义时(表达别的含义或强调一个临时行为),
也可用进行时态。例如:

I'm having a really good time , thanks. (= am experiencing)

Your son is being very obedient at the moment. (= is behaving)

12) 下列动词指“某种行为”时通常不用进行时态。

accept , apologise , congratulate , declare , deny , disagree , forbid ,
forgive , guarantee , insist , invite , order , predict , promise , recommend ,
refuse , request , suggest , thank , warn 等。例如:

On behalf of the company , I apologise for any inconvenience
caused.

5. 过去进行时的用法

1) 表示过去某一时刻、某一阶段正在进行的动作。例如:

In 1980 he was studying in a university.

He was reading a novel when I came in.

2) 过去进行时常常表示行为的短暂性,或强调它的不断变化和
发展。例如:

During my training I was earning a lot less than my wife. (a tempo-
rary situation)

His symptoms were becoming more pronounced each day. (a chan-
ging situation)

3) 过去进行时常和一般过去时一起使用,用于描述一个动作进
行过程中另一个动作发生。例如:

Darkness was falling over the city when I came back home.

Seventy cars were crossing the river when the bridge collapsed.

4) 过去进行时用于强调在过去一个临时的时间段里反复进行的事情。例如：

For the first three months she was receiving chemotherapy on a weekly basis.

5) 也能与 always, constantly, continually, forever 等连用表达某种感情色彩。例如：

My brother was always losing his keys.

6) 表示现在时间。此结构用于表示心中无把握或有礼貌的请求，口气婉转，仅限于 hope, want, think, wonder 等动词。例如：

I was rather hoping that Mr Howard would be able to see me this morning.

I was wondering whether you could help me.

7) 过去进行时与一般过去时的比较。

①过去进行时表示过去正在进行的动作，而一般过去时表示一个已经完成的动作。试比较：

He was writing a book last year. (此书可能尚未写完)

He wrote a book last year. (已经写完)

②过去进行时表示短暂的动作，而一般过去时可用于表示永久性 or 较长久的情况。试比较：

It happened while I was living in Rochester.

He lived in Paris during his last years.

6. 将来进行时的用法

1) 将来进行时表示将来某个特定时间要进行的动作。例如：

What will you be doing this time tomorrow?

When I get home, you will probably be watching television.

I hope he will be feeling better when you come tomorrow.

2) 将来进行时表示早先已安排将来要做的或预定会发生的事，往往指难于改变。例如：

He will be staying with us again next year.

I will be seeing her over Christmas vacation.

因此，此结构常用于询问别人的计划或拒绝他人的邀请。例如：

Will you be staying long?

I'm sorry, I can't come to your wedding as I'll be working on that day.

3) 将来进行时把将来的事件看作是惯例或常规。此将来事件往往会持续一些时间。例如：

Winston will be performing with his steel band every night of the music festival.

We'll be having our weekly meeting tomorrow so I'll present your proposal then.

试比较：

I'll be seeing Mr. Kennedy at the court tomorrow - he's always there on Thursdays - so we can discuss your case briefly then.

(将来进行时重在表达作为惯例或常规，此事件肯定会发生)

We're having our weekly meeting tomorrow instead of Friday this week.

(现在进行时重在表达此事件是个新的安排而非惯例或常规)

We have our weekly meeting tomorrow so I'll present your proposal then.

(一般现在时重在表达此事件为一个按时间表要发生的事)

We are going to see a musical at the theatre sometime next week.

(be going to 重在表达此事件为说话者的意愿，而非预先安排)

4) 在口语中，将来进行时表示的语气较委婉。例如：

Will you be coming at six tomorrow?

If you will be wanting anything, just let me know.

7. 现在完成时的用法

1) 现在完成时所表示的动作在说话之前已完成，但对现在有影响。句中没有具体时间状语。例如：

He has gone to Fuzhou. (主语“ He ”目前在福州。)

I have lost my wallet. (目前仍未找到)

注意：①现在完成时可与不明确指出具体时间的状语连用，如 already, yet, just, recently, lately, still, ever, so far, seldom, never 等。例如：

He has already obtained a scholarship.

I haven't seen much of him recently.

注意 ②在美语中,上述时间状语也可与一般过去时连用。例如:

We already saw the film but they didn't see it yet.

2) 现在完成时所表示的动作开始于过去,持续到现在,也许还会持续下去。常与 for 和 since 连用。或与 so far, now, in the past few years, today, this week, up to now 等表示包括现在时间在内的状语连用。例如:

He has studied English for 5 years.

I have been here since 1993.

Now I have finished the work.

Up to now, everything has been successful.

注意 表示短暂动作的词(如 come, go, die, marry, buy 等)的完成时不能与 for, since 等表示一段时间的状语连用。例如:

He has got married for six years. (错误)

He has been married for six years. (正确)

He got married six years ago. (正确)

3) 主句用现在完成时, since 后的 5 种用法:

- since + {
- ①过去的时间点(a point of time in the past)
 - ②一段时间(a period of time) + ago
 - ③从句(谓语用非持续性动词的过去时)
 - ④从句(谓语用持续性动词的过去时)
 - ⑤从句(谓语用现在完成时(常用 be 动词))

①He has taught English at this school since 1993.

②I haven't seen him since three years ago.

③Great changes have taken place here since you left.

④I haven't heard from Susan since she lived in Shanghai.

(since 从句用持续性动词(较少见),表示该动作已结束。该句的含义是:自从苏珊离开上海以来)

⑤She has seldom been out since she has been ill.

(since 从句用现在完成时,(常见用 be 动词),表示动作或状态还在继续。该句的含义是 她目前仍在病中)

注意 since 引导的从句中,无论是用非持续性动词的过去时或持

续性动词的过去时，都表示动作或状态的结束。因此，since I was ill，意为“自从我病愈以来”；since I was a League member，意为“自从我退团以来”。

4) 现在完成时还可用在时间和条件状语从句中，表示将来某时完成的动作。例如：

I'll go to your home when I have finished my homework.

If it has stopped snowing in the afternoon, we'll go to the park.

5) 现在完成时用于下列有序数词及 the only 构成的句型中：

It } is + { the first
This } + { the last } + 名词 + that + 现在完成时
 { the only }

It is the first time that I've seen such a wonderful building.

It (this) is the only book that he has ever written.

6) 现在完成时用于形容词最高级构成的句型中：

It } is + { the best, the worst } + 名词 + that + { 现在
This } + { the most interesting } + 完成时

It is the best film that I've ever seen.

This is the most interesting book that I've ever read.

7) 现在完成时与过去时的区别

① 现在完成时强调某种行为或动作一直延续到现在，且仍未结束，过去时强调行为或动作的结束。例如：

The tower has stood there for centuries.

They drove on for three hours.

② 现在完成时表述的时间尚未结束，过去时表述的时间已经过去。例如：

I haven't seen Keith this morning yet. (It's still morning.)

I didn't see Keith at all this morning. (It's now afternoon/ evening.)

③ 现在完成时与现在有联系，过去时仅表示过去的事情，与现在没有联系。例如：

I have lost my key to the drawer. (至今无法打开抽屉)

I lost my key to the drawer yesterday. (也许现在仍未找到，也许

已经找到)

④现在完成时不指代一个明确的时间,过去时往往指代一个明确的过去时间。例如:

I've been to Beijing twice.

I went to Beijing in 1990 and 2006.

8. 过去完成时的用法

1) 过去完成时用于描述过去某一时刻或某一动作前完成的动作或状态。例如:

By the time the UN task force arrived, the rebel forces had taken the province.

By the end of last year we had built five new houses.

At the time of the trial last summer Hinkley had been in prison for eight months.

2) 为了使被描述的事件发生的先后表达得更清楚,用过去完成时表示在先,用过去时表示在后。例如:

When we got back, the babysitter had gone home.

When he was in Beijing, he visited places where he had played as a child.

I had learnt 5000 English words before I entered the university.

3) 主句用过去完成时时常与 before, after, until, when 等词引导的过去时间状语从句连用。由于 before, after 本身已体现动作的先后,所以主句也可用一般过去时。例如:

The train (had) left before I reached the station.

①before 的含义为“在……之前”,“……(之后)才”:

主句(过去时,动作先发生) + before + 从句(过去时,动作后发生)

He was a worker before he went to the university.

It was evening before we reached the little village.

My younger brother took the driving test five times before he managed to pass.

②before 的含义为“不等……就”,句中的过去时动作先发生。

主句(过去时,动作先发生) + before + 从句(过去完成时)

I left university before I'd taken the final exams.

She sacked him before he'd had a chance to explain.

4) 下列结构中常用过去完成时

① $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{By the end of + 过去时间} \\ \text{Towards the end of + 过去时间} \\ \text{Before the end of + 过去时间} \\ \text{At the time of + 过去事件} \\ \text{By + 过去时间} \\ \text{By the time + 句子(用过去时)} \end{array} \right\} + \text{句子(过去完成时)}$

② $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Hardly} \\ \text{Scarcely} \\ \text{Barely} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{过去完成时} \\ \text{((倒装形式))} \end{array} \right\} + \text{when} + \text{句子(过去时)}$

③ $\text{No sooner} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{过去完成时} \\ \text{((倒装形式))} \end{array} \right\} + \text{than} + \text{句子(过去时)}$

5) 表示过去没有实现的愿望。

动词 hope, wish, expect, think, intend, mean (= intend), suppose 等的过去完成时指“过去没有实现的愿望、打算、计划”，也表示“失望”或“惋惜”等情绪。例如：

We had hoped that you would be able to visit us, but you did not.

She had thought of paying us a visit, but was prevented from doing so.

6) 在虚拟结构中用过去完成时表示过去。

在 if, if only, as if 后的谓语动词用过去完成时表示过去。在 wish, I'd rather 等结构后的 that 从句中，谓语动词用过去完成时表示过去。（此用法参阅第七章虚拟语气。）

9. 将来完成时的用法

将来完成时表示预计将来某个时刻前某种行为已经完成。简单句中常有 by, by then, before, within the next week 等表时间的介词短语引导。复合句中，常有 before, when 等引导的时间状语从句。例如：

By the end of next week, they will have reached the destination.

By the time he arrives, we will already have left California.

You can have my report by the end of the morning. In fact, I'll

have finished it within the next hour.

I'll have finished reading the book before the next lesson.

Perhaps we'll have finished our work before she arrives tonight.

When we get there, they'll probably have left.

10. 过去将来时的用法

1) 过去将来时表示从过去的某时间看来将要发生的动作或存在的状态。用 would 加动词原形构成。例如：

They were sure that they would succeed.

2) 过去将来时常用于宾语从句。例如：

He said he would call for me at six.

She asked me what I would do the next morning.

3) 过去将来时的其它几种表达法：

① “was/were going to do”表示过去的“预见”或“意图”，也常表示计划没有实现。例如：

The sky was then overcast with black clouds. There was going to be a storm.

I was going to play table tennis that afternoon.

I was going to finish my article last night, but my friend arrived, so

I didn't have time to finish it.

② “was/were to do”, “was/were about to”, “was/were due to”表示按计划、安排将在过去将来要发生的事情。例如：

As I was to leave the next day, I went to bed early.

I felt nervous because I was soon to leave home for the first time.

As he raised his arm she realized that he was about to strike her again.

③ “was/were to + have done”表示“原打算”、“原计划”或“本应当”做的事没有做或没有发生。例如：

I was to have seen him last Wednesday, but he didn't come.

The new department store was to have opened on 2nd January, but the explosion prevented this.

说明：“was/were (due) to + 动词原形”表示“按原计划要进行”，但并不知道结果是否发生。“was/were (due) to + have done”表示“按原计划要进行，但结果

并未发生”。例如：

The exam results were (due) to arrive at the school today. We can ring tomorrow to find out whether they have arrived.

The exam results were (due) to have arrived at the school today but apparently the exam board has not posted them yet.

11. 现在完成进行时的用法

1) 现在完成进行时表示一个从过去某一时刻开始的动作，一直延续到说话时还在进行或刚结束。句中常出现由 for, since, how long 等引导的时间状语。例如：

Women have been speaking out on this issue for some time, with mixed results.

Her telephone has been ringing for a long time.

It has been raining since last Sunday.

I am tired. I have been painting the living room all day.

Do not disturb me. I have been writing letters all morning and have written ten so far.

How long have you been wearing glasses?

2) 现在完成进行时表示一个重复性的动作，常用于表示“关切”、“惊异”、“愤怒”等感情色彩。例如：

You have been coughing a lot lately.

He has been scoring plenty of goals this season.

You have been saying that for five years.

I suppose you have been gossiping again.

3) 现在完成进行时与 lately, recently 连用表示动作或行为的临时性。例如：

Helen's been spending a lot of time at the club lately.

People have been eating less meat recently because of the price.

4) 现在完成进行时与现在完成时的比较：

①现在完成进行时强调动作的延续性，因此有“未完成”的含义，现在完成时则表示“已完成”。例如：

I have been writing a letter. (还在写)

I have written a letter. (已写完)

②现在完成进行时强调动作的延续性，因此不用于表达该动作重复了多少次的句中。现在完成时可用于描述反复多次的行为。例如：

She has been playing with the symphony orchestra all season. (正确)

She has been playing with the symphony three times this season. (错误)

She has played with the symphony orchestra three times this season. (正确)

③现在完成进行时强调动作或行为的临时性，现在完成时强调动作或行为持续的状态。例如：

People have been eating less meat recently because of the crisis.

People have eaten a lot less meat over the last twenty years or so.

④现在完成进行时强调动作或行为本身，现在完成时强调动作或行为的结果。例如：

I've been doing my accounts all afternoon.

I've done the accounts - here they are.

(二) 被动语态

当说话者强调的是动作本身，且没有必要知道或不知道动作的执行者是谁时，常使用被动语态。被动语态可避免提及动作的执行者，这样有利于对观点的陈述。在被动语态中，句子的主语是动作的承受者。

1. 各种时态的被动语态

	一般式	进行式	完成式
现在	is/are done	is/are being done	have/has been done
过去	was/were done	was/were being done	had been done
将来	will be done		will have been done
过去将来	would be done		would have been done

2. 一些特殊的被动结构

1) 带宾语补足语的句子改为被动语态

将带复合宾语的句子改为被动语态时，一般把主动结构中的宾语

改成主语，宾语补足语保留在谓语后面。例如：

We always keep the classroom clean.

改为 :The classroom is always kept clean.

2) 带双宾语的句子改为被动语态

将带双宾语的句子改为被动语态时，通常将间接宾语改成主语，而直接宾语保留下来。例如：

We gave him a warm welcome.

改为 :He was given a warm welcome.

有时也可把直接宾语改为主语，把间接宾语改为 to 引导的短语。

例如：

We awarded him a medal.

改为 :A medal was awarded to him.

3) 带宾语从句的句子改为被动语态的两个句型

① 宾语从句的主语 + be + 主句谓语的过去分词 + 宾语从句谓语的否定式

② It + be + 主句谓语的过去分词 + that + 原宾语从句

People say she knows five languages.

{ She is said to know five languages.

{ It is said that she knows five languages.

We believe the book has been translated into English.

{ The book is believed to have been translated into English.

{ It is believed that the book has been translated into English.

此形式常用于原句谓语是如下动词的句子中：

assume , believe , claim , consider , declare , estimate ,
expect , feel , judge , know , prove , report , rumour ,
say , think 等

注意下列常见的表达形式：

据说..... It is said that

希望..... It is hoped that

据推测说..... It is supposed that
必须承认..... It must be admitted that
必须指出..... It must be pointed out that
众所周知..... It is well known that
有人相信..... It is believed that

3. 主动形式表示被动意义

1) 动词 want, need, require, deserve 后用动名词的主动形式, 这时, 动名词句中的主语有动宾关系。例如:

The children need looking after. 孩子们需要照料。

The window wants/requires repairing.

This point deserves mentioning.

2) 有些不及物动词后和副词 well, easily 等连用时。例如:

The cloth washes/sells well. 这布很经洗(很畅销)。

The third act plays well. 第三幕演得好。

The poem reads smoothly. 这首诗读起来很流畅。

This pair of glasses wears comfortably.

这副眼镜戴起来很舒服。

这类动词有 clean, cut, cook, burn, draw, pick, play, read, sell, wash, wear, write 等。

3) 某些不及物动词与 can't, won't, doesn't 等连用时。例如:

The play won't act. 这戏不宜上演。

In warm weather meat and fish won't keep long.

天气暖了, 鱼就存放不久。

The door won't shut. 这门关不上。

The car won't start. 这车发动不起来。

The library doesn't open on Sunday.

这类动词有 act, keep, lock, move, open, shut, start 等。

4) 英语中有些动词既可当不及物动词, 又可当及物动词使用, 且将作及物动词使用时句子中的宾语改为主语时, 仍用主动语态表被动(作不及物动词使用)。例如:

{ He has improved his pronunciation.
{ His pronunciation has improved.

- { They changed their work pattern.
- { Their work pattern changed.
- { We finished the party with a song.
- { The party finished with a song.

这类动词(多数为描述从一种状态到另一种状态)有:begin, bend, break, burst, change, close, cook, continue, crack, crash, decrease, drive, drop, finish, fly, grow, improve, increase, melt, open, rot, run, sail, shrink, shut, slow, split, spread, start, stick, stop, stretch, tear, widen 等。

5) 形容词 worth 后直接加动名词形式时。例如:

The book is worth reading twice. 这本书值得读两遍。

6) 某些作表语的形容词后,用不定式主动形式表示被动意义(参阅“不定式语态”)。例如:

The fish is not fit to eat. 这鱼不能食用。

7) 某些感官动词与形容词连用时。例如:

The water feels very cold. 这水摸起来很冷。

The dish tastes delicious. 这菜尝起来很可口。

这类动词有 feel, look, prove, smell, sound, taste, wear 等。

4. 某些动词不能构成被动结构

1) 动词 leave, enter, reach 等的宾语是表示处所、地点(国家、团体、组织、军队)等时。

2) 表示状态的动词,如 become, benefit, cost, contain, equal, fit, fail, have, lack, last, mean, seem, resemble, suit, look like 等。

3) 下列不及物动词及短语动词

appear	die	disappear	happen
lie	occur	rise	agree with
belong to	break out	consist of	have on
keep up with	keep words	lose heart,	take place

第三部分 分类练习

1. In Britain today women ____ 44% of the workforce ,and nearly half the mothers with children are in paid work.
- A. are making up B. will make up
C. make up D. are to make up
2. If it ____ too much trouble , I d love a cup of tea.
- A. isn t B. wasn t C. weren t D. hadn t been
3. Unless he ____ to help us , we shall lose the game.
- A. promises B. will promise C. would promise D. had promised
4. It will not be long before that young man ____ me again.
- A. will meet B. has met C. meets D. would meet
5. You can go and take a rest. I ll see to it that the job ____ finished in time.
- A. must be B. is C. be D. has
6. It is not the instruments a scientist uses but rather how he uses the instruments that ____ him a scientist.
- A. is made B. made C. make D. makes
7. The car ____ at eleven to collect the guest speakers and they ____ at the hall eleven thirty.
- A. will come ; arrive B. comes ; have arrived
C. comes ; arrive D. has come ; arrived
8. " When are you leaving ?"
" My plane ____ at 10 :45. "
- A. took off B. is about to take off C. will take off D. takes off
9. That son of your aunt s ____ noises ! What a nuisance !
- A. always makes B. will always makes
C. always made D. is always making
10. I can see the leaders. The three front runners ____ the corner into the stadium complex now.
- A. have turned B. will turn C. are turning D. were turning
11. I ____ the neighbour s cat this week while she s in hospital.
- A. am feeding B. feed C. would feed D. was to feed
12. She ____ in the Waldorf on his visit to New York , isn t she ?
- A. would stay B. has stayed C. stayed D. is staying

13. Don't take his remarks too seriously. He's so upset that I don't think he really knows what ____.
- A. he said B. he'd said C. he's saying D. he says
14. If you climb mountains in such bad weather, you ____ trouble.
- A. ask for B. have asked for C. will ask for D. are asking for
15. They won't buy any new clothes because they ____ money to buy a new car.
- A. save B. were saving C. have saved D. are saving
16. Rain forests ____ and burned at such a speed that they will disappear from the earth in the near future.
- A. cut B. are cut C. are being cut D. had been cut
17. How can a country where teachers devote all their class hours to training students to take exams ____ to compete the technology race with other countries.
- A. expect B. expecting C. be expected D. being expected
18. Sara, hurry up. I'm afraid you don't have enough time to ____ before the party.
- A. get changing B. get changed C. get to change D. get change
19. "I hear Jane has gone to the Holy Island for her holiday. "
- "Oh, how nice! Do you know when she ____?"
- A. was leaving B. had left C. has left D. left
20. The discussion ____ alive when an interesting topic was brought in.
- A. was coming B. had come C. has come D. came
21. Sales of CDs have greatly increased since the early 1990s, when people ____ to enjoy the advantages of this new technology.
- A. begin B. began C. have begun D. had begun
22. She ____ her hairstyle in her hometown before she came to Chongqing for a better job.
- A. changed B. has changed C. would change D. was changing
23. Roman Empire ____ for centuries.
- A. has existed B. existed C. had existed D. was existing
24. "If the traffic hadn't been so busy, I could have been back by 6 o'clock. "
- "What a pity! Tina ____ here to see you. "
- A. would be B. has been C. is D. was
25. Until she was married, she ____ any new clothes.
- A. has not had B. would not have C. has not D. did not have
26. Oh, it's you. I'm sorry I ____ know you ____ here.
- A. don't; are B. didn't; are C. didn't; were D. don't; were

27. Wouldn't it be better if we ____ a car ?
 A. bought B. had bought C. have bought D. buy
28. She is just as beautiful as I ____.
 A. have imagined B. imagined
 C. had imagined D. would imagine
29. " Betty got married last week. "
 " I ____ that she would get married so young. "
 A. never dream B. never dreamed
 C. shall never dream D. will dream
30. Many years ago , Jane ____ in the flat with her grandma for a long period of time.
 A. had been living B. had lived
 C. has been living D. lived
31. " You ought to have given them some advice. "
 " So I ____ , but who cared what I said ?"
 A. have B. ought C. ought to D. did
32. " I'm sorry , I shouldn't have been so rude to you. "
 " You ____ your temper but that's OK. "
 A. did lose B. have lost C. had lost D. were losing
33. I would love to have gone to the party , but I ____ extra hours to finish a report.
 A. had to work B. had had to work
 C. had worked D. have to work
34. " Can he win the first prize for running ?"
 " Impossible now. He ____ to , but he has just hurt his leg. "
 A. was expected B. has expected C. is expected D. expects
35. The books were received so eagerly that they ____ on the first day.
 A. have been sold out B. had sold out
 C. were sold out D. sold out
36. The telephone had been ringing for five minutes before it ____.
 A. answered B. had been answered
 C. was answering D. was answered
37. Neither of the people who had applied for a position in the university ____.
 A. has been accepted B. have been accepted
 C. was accepted D. will be accepted
38. " You were out when I dropped in at your house. "
 " Oh , I ____ for a friend from England at the airport. "

- A. was waiting B. had waited C. am waiting D. have waited
39. By the middle of the nineteen sixties many parts of Europe ____ a tremendous economic crisis.
A. experienced B. were experiencing
C. has experienced D. would experience
40. "What's wrong with your coat?"
"Just now when I wanted to get off the bus, the man next to me ____ on it."
A. sat B. was sitting
C. had been sitting D. had sat
41. The thief tried to break away from the policeman who ____ him but failed.
A. held B. had held C. would hold D. was holding
42. We didn't go shopping yesterday because it ____ all day.
A. has been raining B. would rain
C. was raining D. had rained
43. Where have you been? We ____ you back much earlier.
A. have expected B. expect
C. are expecting D. were expecting
44. "Perhaps we can put the meeting off until next Friday."
"That's just what I ____ about when you came in."
A. was thinking B. had thought C. would think D. thought
45. He kept looking at her, wondering whether he ____ her somewhere.
A. saw B. has seen C. seen D. had seen
46. She ____ her job and ____ as a waitress.
A. had lost; was working B. has lost; was working
C. has lost; worked D. lost; had worked
47. Upon arriving home the girl discovered that she ____ her bag at her friend's.
A. left B. had left C. forgot D. had forgot
48. Mr White, who I ____ to the south of France, still lives in London.
A. think to have moved B. think had moved
C. thought have moved D. thought had moved
49. By the time he ____ fourteen years old, he ____ advanced mathematics all by himself.
A. has been; learned B. had been; had learned
C. was; learned D. was; had learned
50. Until then, this family ____ from him for six months.

- C. has been used to get D. has been used to getting
73. Do not disturb me. I ____ letters all morning and have written ten so far.
 A. have written B. am writing
 C. was writing D. have been writing
74. The scientist ____ the experiment for half a year , but he ____ yet.
 A. made ; didn't succeed
 B. made ; hasn't succeeded
 C. was making ; didn't succeed
 D. has been making ; hasn't succeeded
75. She ____ in this school for the past ten years.
 A. was teaching B. had been teaching
 C. would teach D. has been teaching
76. It seems oil ____ from this pipe for some time. We'll have to take the machine apart to put it right.
 A. has been leaking B. is leaking
 C. had leaked D. leaked
77. Turn on the television or open a magazine and you ____ advertisements showing happy families.
 A. will often see B. often see
 C. are often seeing D. have often seen
78. While people may refer to television for up-to-the-minute news , it is unlikely that television ____ the newspaper completely.
 A. have replaced B. replace
 C. will replace D. replaced
79. Because the shop ____ , all the T-shirts are sold at half price.
 A. has closed down B. closed down
 C. had closed down D. is closing down
80. "Sara left for New York this morning. "
 "Oh , I thought she ____ until next week. "
 A. won't be going B. wasn't going
 C. isn't going D. hadn't been going
81. "As long as I have breath left in me , "he said , "I ____ to do this work. "
 A. continue B. will continue
 C. would continue D. am continuing
82. Next year my little sister ____ ten years old.

- A. is to be B. is going to be C. is about to be D. will be
83. Look at the waiter. He's carrying too much. He ____ all those plates.
 A. is dropping B. will be dropping
 C. is going to drop D. will have dropped
84. There ____ an English evening next Saturday.
 A. will have B. is to have
 C. is going to have D. is going to be
85. She ____ law the moment she has finished middle school.
 A. will be studying B. is about to study
 C. is going to study D. is to study
86. Sir Denis has made it known that much of his collection ____ to the nation.
 A. has left B. is to leave C. leaves D. is to be left
87. When we said goodbye, I thought it was forever. But we ____ again, many years later.
 A. were about to meet B. were meeting
 C. were to meet D. had met
88. Great efforts to increase wheat production must be made if bread shortage ____ avoided.
 A. will be B. can be C. were to be D. is to be
89. As he raised his arms she realized that he ____ strike her again.
 A. was about to B. was to
 C. was due to D. was being to
90. "Could I have a talk with you at two o'clock tomorrow afternoon?"
 "Difficult. I ____ lunch with the sales manager. Could we make it three?"
 A. was having B. have had C. would have D. will be having
91. When she graduates from the college this summer, she ____ here for four years.
 A. will study B. will be studying
 C. will have studied D. studies
92. At our next wedding anniversary we ____ for twenty-five years.
 A. will have been married B. will be married
 C. have been married D. would be married
93. "Can I have your report this afternoon?"
 "This afternoon? I don't think I ____ by then. "
 A. will be finishing B. will have finished
 C. am finishing D. have finished

94. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of TV sets in this factory ____
by about 10% .
- A. will have risen B. will be rising
C. has risen D. has been rising
95. Within about 30 years from now , the first people from Earth ____ on Mars.
- A. will land B. have landed C. had landed D. will have landed
96. You can have my report by the end of the morning. In fact , I ____ it within the next hour.
- A. will finish B. had finished
C. have finished D. will have finished
97. " You speak very good Chinese. "
- " Thank you. It s not surprising ; I ____ in Beijing for eight years next month. "
- A. have been living B. will have been living
C. have lived D. will have been lived
98. The local peasants gave the soldiers clothes and food without which they ____ of cold and hunger.
- A. would die B. will die C. would be dead D. would have died
99. I ____ the treatment yesterday but I couldn't get to the hospital because of the train strike.
- A. am about to start B. would start
C. am to have started D. was to have started
100. The new department store ____ on 2nd January , but the explosion prevented this.
- A. was to have opened B. had to be opened
C. was about to open D. had been opened

- (02)5. It is hard for me to imagine what I would be doing today if I _____ in love , at the age of seven , with the Melinda Cox Library in my hometown.
- A. wouldn't have fallen B. had not fallen
C. should fall D. were to fall
- (02)6. _____ be sent to work there ?
- A. Who do you suggest
B. Who do you suggest that should
C. Do you suggest who should
D. Do you suggest whom should

答案 1. DACC B 6. A

三、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (01) 1. He hesitated for a moment before kicking the ball , otherwise he _____ a goal.
- A. had scored B. scored
C. would score D. would have scored
- (02) 2. How I wish every family _____ a large house with a beautiful garden !
- A. has B. had C. will have D. had had
- (03) 3. Look at the trouble I am in ! If only I _____ your advice.
- A. followed B. would follow
C. had followed D. should follow

答案 :1. DBC

第二部分 解题指导

虚拟语气表示说话人的愿望、假设、猜测或建议，而不表示客观存在的事实。虚拟语气通过谓语动词的特殊形式来表示。下面分别介绍

虚拟语气在各种句式中的用法。

(一) 虚拟语气用于条件状语从句

虚拟条件句谓语动词的构成形式：

	条 件 状 语 从 句	主 句
与现在事实相反	If + 主语 + 动词过去式 (be 动词一律用 were)	主语 + would(或 should) + 动词原形
与过去事实相反	If + 主语 + 动词过去完成式	主语 + would(或 should) + have + 过去分词
与将来事实相反	A :谓语用动词过去式 B :谓语用 were to + 动词原形 C :谓语用 should + 动词原形	A :主语 + would(或 should) + 动词原形 B :祈使句

注意 :①主句中的 should 通常用于第一人称 , would 可用于任何人称 , 同时也可根据意思用情态动词 could , might。

注意 :②“与将来事实相反”中的 B 式与 C 式之间的差别是“ were to + 动词原形”比“ should + 动词原形”所表示的实现的可能性更小。

注意 :③在与将来事实相反的句中 , 只有条件状语从句用 should 时主句才能用 B 式的祈使句。

1. 表示与现在事实相反

If I were you , I should study English.

If he had time , he would attend the meeting.

2. 表示与过去事实相反

If you had come yesterday , you would have met him.

3. 表示与将来事实相反

If you came tomorrow , we would have the meeting.

If it were to/should rain tomorrow , the meeting would be put off.

If it should rain , don't expect me. (可接祈使句)

4. if 的省略

当从句中有 were , had , should , would 等放在主语前可构成疑问句

的词时，可省略 if，用倒装形式。例如：

Had she more money , she would dress fashionably.

Had you been here earlier , you would have seen him.

Should there be a meeting tomorrow , I would come.

Were I in school again , I would work harder.

(二) 一些特殊的虚拟条件句

1. 错综时间条件句

当条件状语从句表示的行为和主句表示的行为所发生的时间不一致时，动词的形式要根据它所表示的时间来调整。

if 条件句	主句
表过去(用过去完成时)	表现在(用过去将来时)
If you had taken the medicine , you would feel better now.	
表现在(用过去时)	表过去(用将来完成时)
If he were leaving , you would have heard about it.	

例如：

If Fleming hadn't discovered the penicillin , there would be far more deaths every year than there actually are.

(= Fleming did discover penicillin so there are fewer deaths now.)

If the island were still a tourist attraction , last week's earthquake would have caused far more deaths.

(= The island is no longer a tourist attraction so the earthquake didn't cause a huge number of deaths.)

2. 虚拟条件句中可含有陈述语气的从句

If it were not for that fact that you are ill , I would ask you to do this right now. (虚拟现在式，陈述语气用现在时)

If I had known that he was not at home , I would not have called on him. (虚拟过去式，陈述语气用过去时)

3. 含蓄条件句

有时，虚拟语气句中不出现 if 条件句，而是利用介词或介词短

语、分词短语，不定式或连词通过上下文表现出来。这时，须根据句子的含义来判定是用虚拟现在式还是虚拟过去式。

1) 介词或介词短语：

but for , without , with , under 等

But for the rain , we should have a pleasant journey.

(介词短语指现在，主句用虚拟现在式)

But for your help , I would have failed then.

(介词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

Without air , there would be no living things.

(介词短语指现在，主句用虚拟现在式)

Without your help , I wouldn t have succeeded.

(介词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

With favorable winds , we might have got there in two days.

(介词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

We could have done better under more favorable conditions.

(介词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

In that case we could have done the work better.

(介词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

2) 分词短语

This same thing , happening in wartime , would amount to disaster.

(分词短语指现在，主句用虚拟现在式)

Born in better times , he would have been a scholar. (分词短语指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

3) 不定式短语

To hear him speak English , one would take him for a foreigner. (不定式的一般式指现在，主句用虚拟现在式)

To have studied harder , you would have passed the exam. (不定式的完成式指过去，主句用虚拟过去式)

4) 连词 but , but that , or 或 otherwise

主句(虚拟语气) +	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but} \\ \text{but that(若不是)} \end{array} \right\}$	+ 从句(陈述语气)
主句(陈述语气) +	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{or(否则)} \\ \text{otherwise(否则)} \end{array} \right\}$	+ 从句(虚拟语气)

It would be a mistake not to help him , but I really don't know the answer. (指现在)

He would have given you more help , but he was so busy. (指过去)

I would go abroad but that I am short of money. (指现在)

I should have started but that the weather was so bad. (指过去)

She eats too much every day , or she would be thinner. (指现在)

I was busy , otherwise I would have given you more help. (指过去)

He is not a careful driver , otherwise he wouldn't have had that accident. (指过去)

4. 虚拟语气在简单句中

下面的句子,其实是省去了虚拟条件从句,因此其时态与虚拟条件句中主句谓语的时态一致。

A child could do that. (用虚拟现在式,指现在)

A more considerate person would not have said such a thing. (用虚拟过去式,指过去)

(三) 虚拟语气在某些从句中的运用

1. 虚拟语气用于宾语从句

在下列动词的后面接宾语从句时,用“should + 动词原形”,should 常被省略。这类动词有:

- 表示建议: suggest(建议), propose(建议), recommend(建议), advise(建议), move(建议);

- 表示主张: insist(坚持), maintain(主张), hold(主张), urge(呼吁);

- 表示要求: ask(要求), request(要求), require(要求), demand(要求), desire(希求), prefer(宁愿), arrange(安排);

- 表示命令: order(命令), command(命令);

例如:

We suggested that we (should) have a meeting.

The doctor ordered that she (should) stay in bed for a few days.

He demanded that we (should) start right away.

注意 ①这类句子用于被动语态时，其后的主语从句也要用虚拟语气。例如：

It was arranged that they (should) leave the following week.

注意 ②insist 作“坚持(认为)”解时，宾语从句不用虚拟语气。只有当 insist 作“坚持(应该)”解时，宾语从句才用虚拟语气。例如：

Mike insisted that he had never stolen anything.

We insisted that she (should) go with us.

注意 ③suggest 作“使人想到”或“暗示”解时，宾语从句不用虚拟语气。只有当 suggest 作“建议”解时，宾语从句才用虚拟语气。例如：

His attitude suggests that he isn't really interested.

I suggest that we should have lunch now.

2. 虚拟语气用于表语从句、同位语从句

在表示建议、命令、主张、目的、愿望等名词后的表语从句和同位语从句，其谓语动词要用虚拟语气的结构“(should) + 动词原形”。这类名词有：

advice, aim, decision, demand, desire, idea, necessity, order, plan, proposal, request, recommendation, requirement, resolution, suggestion, wish

We all agreed to his suggestion that we (should) go to Beijing for sightseeing.

My idea is that he (should) do exercises first.

3. 虚拟语气用于主语从句

在主语从句中，谓语动词的虚拟语气结构用“(should) + 动词原形”的结构，表示惊奇、不相信、惋惜、理应如此等。句型为：

1) It is/was + 某些形容词 + that + 句子(用虚拟语气)

例如：

It is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{necessary, important} \\ \text{natural, desirable} \\ \text{advisable, strange} \\ \text{urgent, preferable} \end{array} \right\}$ that we (should) + 动词原形.

2) It is/was + 名词 + that + 句子(用虚拟语气)

例如：

It was $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a pity} \\ \text{a shame} \\ \text{no wonder} \end{array} \right\}$ that you (should) + 动词原形.

3) It is/was + 过去分词 + that + 句子(用虚拟语气)

例如：

It is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{desired, suggested} \\ \text{decided, proposed} \\ \text{requested, ordered} \\ \text{recommended} \end{array} \right\}$ that she (should) + 动词原形.

上述3种主语从句中, should 意为“应该”、“竟然”, 可以省去, 但不可换用 would. 主句所用动词的时态不限。

注意 这种从句表示的是事实。如果说话人对这种事实表示惊奇, 就可用虚拟语气。反之, 如果不表示惊奇, that 从句也可用陈述语气。例如：

It is strange that he did not come yesterday.

It is a pity that you can't swim.

4. 虚拟语气用于 It's (high) time 后的从句中

It is time + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we went to bed. (用过去式)} \\ \text{we were going to bed. (用过去进行时)} \\ \text{we should go to bed. (should 加动词原形)} \end{array} \right.$
--

“It is (high) time (that)” 意为“(现在)该……”, 含有建议的意味。表示现在或将来, 从句的谓语动词多用过去式或过去进行时态。在 I/He/She/It 后一般不用 were, 要用 was。有时亦可用 should + 动词原形, 但 should 不能省略。有时可用 could, 但不能用 would。例如：

It is (high) time we left (should leave).

It is high time I was going.

It is about time your baby could walk.

说明 It's time 后不接否定句。因此 “It's high time we didn't stay.” 是个错句，可改为 “It's high time we left.” “It's time (for sb.) to do sth.” 是个常用句型。

5. 虚拟语气用于定语从句

定语从句和主句的时态可参照虚拟条件从句和主句的搭配。

Anybody who should do that would be laughed at. (指将来)

= If anybody should do that, he would be laughed at.

A man who stopped working would amount to nothing.

= If a man stopped working, he would amount to nothing. (指现在)

Any person who had behaved that way would have been dismissed.

= If any person had behaved that way, he would have been dismissed. (指过去)

6. 虚拟语气用于 “wish/if only + 句子”

用法	谓语动词形式
与现在事实相反	用过去式 (be 动词一律用 were)
与过去事实相反	用过去完成式 或 could have + 过去分词
与现在或将来事实相反	用 would/could/might + 动词原形

“wish/if only + 句子”表示不能实现的愿望，汉语可译为“可惜……”、“……就好了”、“悔不该……”、“但愿……”等。它所引导的从句时态不受主句影响。

1) 与现在事实相反 (从句用过去时, be 动词一律用 were)

I wish it were spring all the year round.

I wish I had more free time.

If only I were a bird! 如果我是一只鸟就好了!

2) 与过去事实相反 (用过去完成式或 could have + 过去分词)

I wish/wished I had taken your advice.

If only I had taken his advice. 我当初听他的话就好了。

could have done 表示对过去行为遗憾,意为“要是……就好了”。

I wished I could have gone to the movie with you yesterday.

I wish your father could have been there to see it all.

3) 与现在或将来事实相反(从句用 would/could/might + 动词原形)

I wish you would agree with me.

If only the rain would stop. 要是雨能停就好了。

wish/if only + 从句,从句用“could + 动词原形”表示一种无法实现的愿望。例如:

I wish I could dance but I'm afraid I've got two left feet.

If only we could see the situation through his eyes.

某些动词的过去进行时态也可用于表将来。例如:

I wish I were coming with you tomorrow.

说明 ①wish 与 if only 的比较:

if only 比 wish 语气更强。为了进一步加强语气,还可将主语放在 if 与 only 之间。例如:

If you only knew how much trouble you've caused.

说明 ②wish + 从句(从句用 would 的注意事项):

A) 用于希望改变现在或将来的故意行为,也用于提出批评或表示埋怨。例如:

I wish you'd stop looking at me like that.

I wish you'd stop shouting. I'm not deaf you know.

B) 当 wish 的主语就是宾语从句的主语时,宾语从句中应改用 could。例如:

I wish I could be (不用 would be) more energetic.

7. 虚拟语气用于“as if/though + 句子”

主句 + { as if as though	+ 从句 { 与现在事实相反→过去时或 were 与过去事实相反→过去完成时
------------------------------	--

It looks as if it might rain. (指现在)

He talks to me as though I were a child. (指现在)

He speaks English so fluently as if he had studied English in England. (指过去)

as if/though 后接的从句也常用陈述语气,这是因为从句中的情况往往是可能发生的或可被设想为真实的。例如:

It looks as if our side is going to win.

He sounds as if he knows what he's talking about.

You look as though you haven't eaten for days.

It isn't as if he's in any position to pass judgement !

8. 虚拟语气在 would rather / sooner 后接从句的应用

would rather + 从句	{ 从句用过去时指现在或将来 从句用过去完成时指过去
-------------------	-------------------------------

I would rather you paid me now.

I would rather you painted the wall green next time.

I would rather she hadn't done that.

说明 此结构也适用于 would sooner, would just as soon 后的从句中。

如果 would rather 后所表达的动词逻辑上的主语就是该句子的主语时，通常直接接动词。比较：

{	We d sooner you spent your money on something useful.
{	I d rather spend my money on something useful.

9. 虚拟语气在 suppose (that), even if, what if, imagine 等引导的表示假设的句中的应用

suppose (that), even if/though, what if, imagine 等引导的从句与事实相反，谓语动词用虚拟语气。

suppose (that) supposing (that) even if what if imagine (that)	{ + 句子 { 用过去时指现在或将来 用过去完成时指过去
--	----------------------------------

Suppose he asked you to marry him, what would you say?

Supposing your parents had refused, how would you have felt?

Even if he were wrong, you should not treat him like that.

Even though I were as rich as you, I would not do such a thing.

Even if he had been there, I should have said the same thing.

What if you came tomorrow instead of today?

That was very nice ,but what if you had not finished it ?

Imagine that we were on a lonely island now.

如果叙述的是事实,谓语动词用陈述语气。例如:

Supposing he gets caught at customs ? You know how vigilant they can be.

His grades were always excellent ,even though he was often absent.

Even if they do go down with flu after they ve had the vacation ,it s likely to be less serious.

What if the plan doesn t work ?

10. 虚拟语气在 If it were not for 中的应用

此结构意为“如果没有……”,表示同现在事实相反的假设,主句用过去将来式。例如:

If it were not for the rain ,the crops should (would) die.

If it had not been for 意为“如果当时没有……”,表示同过去事实相反的假设,主句用过去将来完成式。例如:

If it had not been for your timely help ,I would have failed.

11. 虚拟语气用于 if 以外的某些连词引导的条件状语从句中

在下列连词引导的条件状语从句中:

in case(= if) , on condition (that) , so long as

In case she should come , hand this gift to her.

I lent it to him on condition that he should return it.

So long as it be fine ,I will start.

说明 若表示可能实现或可能会发生的事,上述词语引导的句子也可不用虚拟语气。由于 on condition that , as long as 只能用于描述现在或将来,因此不能用于与过去事实相反的虚拟语气中。

12. 虚拟语气用于某些连词引导的目的状语从句中

在下列连词引导的目的状语从句中:

so that , in order that , for fear (that) , in case (that)

Bring it nearer so that I can see it better.

He rested in order that he might work harder.

I have come all the way from Vienna in order that you should thoroughly understand me.

We all seemed afraid to say what was in our minds ,for fear that it might start trouble.

I will not make a noise for fear that I should disturb you.

Shut the window for fear that it may rain.

He doesn't dare (to) leave the house in case he is /should be recognized.

Better chain up the dog in case (that) he bites.

说明 :① so that , in order that (常接 may , might , can , could , 有时也接 should)

② for fear (that) 唯恐 ,怕的是(可根据语气接 might , should , 口语中也常用陈述语气)

③ in case (that) 以防(万一) ;唯恐 ;为了不(常接 should , 口语中可用陈述语气代替 should + V)等。

13. 虚拟语气用于让步状语从句中

在下列连词引导的让步状语从句中 :

whether , though , whatever

And I support such testing , whether it be in public schools or in a homeschooling situation.

Though he be the President himself , he shall hear us.

Whatever be the reason for his action , we cannot tolerate such disloyalty.

(四) 虚拟语气用于祝愿及某些固定表达形式

1. 虚拟语气用于祝愿(常用动词原形)

God bless you ! 上帝保佑你 ! Heaven forbid ! 上天不容 !

May you succeed ! 祝你成功 !

Long live our motherland ! 祖国万岁 !

2. 虚拟语气用于某些固定的表达式

1) 用于下列短语中

so be it 那就这样吧 ; be that as it may 无论如何 ;

if need be 如有必要 ;

If he doesn't want to see us , then so be it.

- { - There's very little chance of winning this case.
 { - Be that as it may, I'm not going to give up fighting.

I'll take it all the way to the Supreme Court if need be.

2) 用于下列特殊结构中, 意为“无论”

“Be + 主语 + ever so 形容词”, 意为“无论怎样……”

(参阅第十三章“倒装”)

“Be + 主语 + 表语 A or 表语 B”, 意为“无论是 A 或 B”

(参阅第十三章“倒装”)

第三部分 分类练习

- She made the demand that she ____ at once.
 A. leave B. leaves C. left D. to be left
- The director demanded the flexible approach some engineers refused to adopt ____ into practice at once.
 A. should put B. to be put C. be put D. of being put
- Mother insisted that the child's hands ____ before dinner.
 A. should wash B. be washed C. would wash D. were washed
- The young man insisted that he ____ nothing wrong and ____ free.
 A. did ; set B. had done ; should be set
 C. should do ; be set D. had done ; must be set
- It ____ that the football match ____ put off because of the weather.
 A. suggested ; would be B. was suggested ; be
 C. is suggested ; shall be D. suggested ; should be
- The suggestion has been made ____ the basketball game ____ put off.
 A. for ; to B. that ; be
 C. which ; should be D. to ; being
- Jane's pale face suggested that she ____ ill , and her parents suggested that she ____ a medical examination.
 A. was ; have B. be ; have C. were ; had D. was ; has
- Our teacher recommends that we ____ as attentive as possible when we visit the gallery.
 A. are B. be C. were D. had been
- The commander ordered that the wounded ____ to hospital right away.

A. to be sent B. be sent C. to send D. should send

10. She does not stick to her exercises and a balanced diet. If she _____, she would remain slim and healthy.
A. had done B. would do C. did D. should
11. We're safer in a train than we would be if we _____ any other way.
A. travel B. have travelled
C. travelled D. had travelled
12. "It's many years since I saw you last. I didn't recognize you at first. "
"I wouldn't have, either, if someone _____ you by name. "
A. called B. had called C. didn't call D. hadn't called
13. _____ it rain tomorrow, we would have to put off the visit to the Yangpu Bridge.
A. If B. Should C. Were D. Would
14. You _____ such a serious mistake if you had followed his advice.
A. may not make B. might not make
C. shouldn't have made D. might not have made
15. Would that be silly to talk about it any more _____ that be true?
A. unless B. if C. should D. would
16. _____ your letter, I would have written back two days ago.
A. If I received B. Should I receive
C. Had I received D. If I could have received
17. If it were not for the fact that you _____ ill, I would ask you to do this right now.
A. were B. had been C. are D. should be
18. If Mother _____ me that truth when I _____ young, I would not make such mistakes so often now.
A. has told; was B. told; was
C. told; had been D. had told; was
19. If the island were still a tourist attraction, last week's earthquake _____ far more deaths.
A. caused B. would cause
C. would have caused D. had caused
20. If John Lennon and Paul McCartney _____, the pop music of today _____ very different.
A. didn't meet; would be B. didn't; would have been
C. hadn't met; would be D. hadn't met; would have been
21. He is talking so much about America as if he _____ there.

- A. had been B. has been C. was D. has gone
22. He treated me as though ____ his own son.
A. I am B. I would be C. I was D. I were
23. "Have you ever been to Beijing?"
"No, but I wish I ____."
A. have B. will C. do D. had
24. She wishes her husband ____ so many questions when she is tutoring the children.
A. is not asking B. doesn't ask C. had not asked D. would not ask
25. If only I ____ my watch!
A. hadn't lost B. haven't lost C. didn't lose D. don't lose
26. If only I ____ dance but I'm afraid I've got two left feet.
A. can B. would C. should D. could
27. I don't think it advisable that Tom ____ to the job since he has no experience.
A. is assigned B. will be assigned
C. be assigned D. has been assigned
28. I thought it strange that he ____ the last examination.
A. would not pass B. not passed
C. not pass D. had not passed
29. It is a pity that he ____ so stupid.
A. were B. should be C. could be D. must be
30. I would rather you ____ at three o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
A. had come B. would come C. will come D. came
31. Don't take the children out for a walk right after the nap. I'd rather you ____ them out before supper.
A. took B. take C. will take D. have taken
32. "I blamed her yesterday." "I would rather you ____ that."
A. didn't do that B. hadn't done
C. wouldn't do D. shouldn't do
33. It's high time that the voice of the people ____ in this House.
A. heard B. be heard C. was heard D. would be heard
34. It's Saturday, and quite time you ____ work till Monday morning.
A. left off B. leave off C. had left off D. didn't go on
35. Our former maths teacher moved to Beijing last year, otherwise, he ____ us.
A. would still have taught B. would still be teaching
C. will still teach D. still taught

47. He was so rude that day. A true friend ____ that to me.
A. would not have said B. will not have said
C. would not say D. had not said
48. To hear him speak English , you ____ him for a foreigner.
A. should take B. would take
C. should have taken D. would have taken
49. When a railroad was first invented ,no one ____ that one day this simple idea would changed the world.
A. could know B. could have known
C. would know D. should have known
50. Anybody who ____ that painting might have taken it for a photo.
A. would have seen B. saw
C. have seen D. had seen

第八章 动词的非谓语形式

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Cleaning women in big cities usually get ____ by the hour.
A. pay B. paying C. paid D. to pay
- (98)2. European football is played in 80 countries , ____ it the most popular sport in the world.
A. making B. makes C. made D. to make
- (99)3. Robert is said ____ abroad , but I don't know what country he studied in.
A. to have studied B. to study
C. to be studying D. to have been studying
- (99)4. When I got back home I saw a message pinned to the door ____
“Sorry to miss you : will call later. ”
A. read B. reads C. to read D. reading
- (00)5. I've worked with children before , so I know what ____ in my new job.
A. expected B. to expect C. to be expecting D. expects
- (00)6. The managers discussed the plan that they would like to see ____ the next year.
A. carry out B. carrying out C. carried out D. to carry out
- (01)7. ____ such heavy pollution already , it may now be too late to clean up the river.
A. Having suffered B. Suffering
C. To suffer D. Suffered
- (02)8. Having a trip abroad is certainly good for the old couple , but it remains ____ whether they will enjoy it.

- A. to see B. to be seen C. seeing D. seen
- (02)9. It is said in Australia there is more land than the government knows ____.
- A. it what to do with B. what to do it with
C. what to do with it D. to do what with it
- (02)10. The research is so designed that once ____ nothing can be done to change it.
- A. begins B. having begun C. beginning D. begun
- (03)11. A cook will be immediately fired if he is found ____ in the kitchen.
- A. smoke B. smoking C. to smoke D. smoked
- (04)12. My advisor encouraged ____ a summer course to improve my writing skills.
- A. for me taking B. me taking
C. for me to take D. me to take
- (04)13. ____ in the queue for half an hour , Tom suddenly realized that he had left his wallet at home.
- A. To wait B. Have waited
C. Having waited D. To have waited
- (05)14. It s necessary to be prepared for a job interview. ____ the answers ready will be of great help.
- A. To have had B. Having had
C. Have D. Having
- (05)15. When asked by the police , he said that he remembered ____ at the party , but not ____.
- A. to arrive ; leaving B. to arrive ; to leave
C. arriving ; leaving D. arriving ; to leave
- (05)16. The prize of the game show is \$ 30 , 000 and an all expenses ____ vacation to China.
- A. paying B. paid C. to be paid D. being paid
- (05)17. I couldn t do my homework with all that noise ____.
- A. going on B. goes on C. went on D. to go on

- (06)18. There have been several new events _____ to the program for the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games.
A. add B. to add C. adding D. added
- (06)19. I can't stand _____ with Jane in the same office. She just refuses _____ talking while she works.
A. working ; stopping B. to work ; stopping
C. working ; to stop D. to work ; to stop
- (07)20. - Excuse me sir , where is Room 301 ?
- Just a minute. I'll have Bob _____ you to the room.
A. show B. shows C. to show D. showing
- (07)21. He is a student of Oxford University _____ for a degree in Computer Science.
A. studied B. studying
C. to have studied D. to be studying

答案 : 1. CAADB 6. CABCD 11. BDCDC 16. BADCA
21. B

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. What worried the child most was _____ to visit his mother in the hospital.
A. his not allowing B. his not being allowed
C. his being not allowed D. having not been allowed
- (98)2. If _____ the same treatment again , he is sure to get well.
A. giving B. give C. given D. being given
- (98)3. He claimed _____ in the supermarket when he was doing shopping yesterday.
A. being badly treated B. treating badly
C. to be treated badly D. to have been badly treated
- (98)4. To fetch water before breakfast seemed to me a rule _____.
A. to never break B. never to be broken

- C. never to have broken D. never to be breaking
- (98)5. She asked me to help her , ____ that she couldn t move the heavy suitcase alone.
A. only to realize B. realizing
C. having been realized D. realized
- (99)6. " Let me tell you something about the journalists. " " Don t you remember ____ me the story yesterday ?"
A. told B. telling C. to tell D. to have told
- (99)7. There are five pairs ____ , but I m at a loss which to buy.
A. to be chosen B. to choose from
C. to choose D. for choosing
- (99)8. " Mum , why do you always make me eat an egg every day ?" " ____ enough protein and nutrition as you are growing up. "
A. Get B. Getting C. To get D. To be getting
- (99)9. A computer does only what thinking people ____ .
A. have it do B. have it done
C. have done it D. having it done
- (99)10. The lady said she would buy a gift for her daughter with the ____ .
A. 20 dollars remained B. 20 dollars to remain
C. remained 20 dollars D. remaining 20 dollars
- (00)11. He sent me an e-mail , ____ to get further information.
A. hoped B. hoping C. to hope D. hope
- (00)12. ____ in 1636 , Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.
A. Being founded B. It was founded
C. Founded D. Founding
- (00)13. The ____ boy was last seen ____ near the East Lake.
A. missing ; playing B. missing ; play
C. missed ; played D. missed ; to play
- (00)14. Tony was very unhappy for ____ to the party.
A. having not been invited B. not having invited

- C. having not invited D. not having been invited
- (01)15. Finding her car stolen , ____.
- A. a policeman was asked to help
B. the area was searched thoroughly
C. it was looked for everywhere
D. she hurried to a policeman for help
- (01)16. Do let your mother know all the truth. She appears ____ everything.
- A. to tell B. to be told
C. to be telling D. to have been told
- (01)17. I really appreciate ____ to relax with you on this nice island.
- A. to have had time B. having time
C. to have time D. to having time
- (01)18. The bell ____ the end of the period rang , ____ our heated discussion.
- A. indicating ; interrupting B. indicated ; interrupting
C. indicating ; interrupted D. indicated ; interrupted
- (02)19. I feel it is your husband who ____ for the spoiled child.
- A. is to blame B. is going to blame
C. is to be blamed D. should blame
- (02)20. In order to gain a bigger share in the international market , many state-run companies are striving ____ their products more competitive.
- A. to make B. making
C. to have made D. having made
- (02)21. Quite a few people used to believe that disaster ____ if a mirror was broken.
- A. was sure of striking B. was sure of having struck
C. was sure to be struck D. was sure to strike
- (02)22. Though ____ money , his parents managed to send him to university.
- A. lacked B. lacking of C. lacking D. lacked in

- (02)23. Don't use words , expressions , or phrases ____ only to people with specific knowledge.
 A. being known B. having been known
 C. to be known D. known
- (02)24. ____ to sunlight for too much time will do harm to one's skin.
 A. Exposed B. Having exposed
 C. Being exposed D. After being exposed
- (03)25. It is believed that if a book is ____ , it will surely ____ the reader.
 A. interested ; interest B. interesting ; be interested
 C. interested ; be interesting D. interesting ; interest
- (03)26. The discovery of new evidence led to ____ .
 A. the thief having caught B. catch the thief
 C. the thief being caught D. the thief to be caught
- (03)27. Generally speaking , ____ according to the directions , the drug has no side effect.
 A. when taking B. when taken
 C. when to take D. when to be taken
- (03)28. An army spokesman stressed that all the soldiers had been ordered ____ clear warnings before firing any shots.
 A. to issue B. being issued
 C. to have issued D. to be issued
- (04)29. According to a recent U. S. survey , children spend up to 25 hours a week ____ TV.
 A. to watch B. to watching
 C. watching D. watch
- (04)30. The flu is believed ____ by viruses that like to reproduce in the cells inside the human nose and throat.
 A. causing B. being caused
 C. to be caused D. to have caused
- (04)31. The flowers ____ sweet in the botanic garden attract the visitors to the beauty of nature.

- A. to smell B. smelling
C. smelt D. to be smelt
- (04)32. The disc , digitally ____ in the studio , sounded fantastic at the party that night.
A. recorded B. recording
C. to be recorded D. having recorded
- (04)33. Having been attacked by terrorists , _____.
A. doctors came to their rescue
B. the tall building collapsed
C. an emergency measure was taken
D. warnings were given to tourists
- (05)34. He got well-prepared for the job interview , for he couldn't risk _____ the good opportunity.
A. to lose B. losing C. to be lost D. being lost
- (05)35. ____ into use in April 2000 , the hotline was meant for residents reporting water and heating supply breakdowns.
A. Put B. Putting C. Having put D. Being put
- (05)36. It was unbelievable that the fans waited outside the gym for three hours just ____ a look at the sports stars.
A. had B. having C. to have D. have
- (05)37. More and more people are signing up for Yoga classes nowadays , _____ advantage of the health and relaxation benefits.
A. taking B. taken
C. having taken D. having been taken
- (06)37. Eugene s never willing to alter any of his opinions. It s no use _____ with him.
A. to argue B. arguing C. argued D. having argued
- (06)38. Energy drinks are not allowed _____ in Australia but are brought in from New Zealand.
A. to make B. to be made
C. to have been made D. to be making
- (06)39. Russ and Earl were auto mechanics _____ the same pay , but Earl

had more ambition.

A. to earn

B. to have earned

C. earning

D. earned

(06)40. The mother felt herself ____ cold and her hands trembled as she read the letter from the battlefield.

A. grow

B. grown

C. to grow

D. to have grown

(06)41. ____ automatically , the e-mail will be received by all the club members.

A. Mailed out

B. Mailing out

C. To be mailed out

D. Having mailed out

(07)42. After a knock at the door , the child heard his mother s voice ____ him.

A. calling

B. called

C. being called

D. to call

(07)43. There is nothing more I can try ____ you to stay , so I wish you good luck.

A. being persuaded

B. persuading

C. to be persuaded

D. to persuade

(07)44. The Town Hall ____ in the 1800 s was the most distinguished building at that time.

A. to be completed

B. having been completed

C. completed

D. being completed

答案 1. BCDBB 6. BBCAD 11. BCADD 16. DBAAA

21. DCD CD 26. CBACC 31. BABBA 36. CABBC

41. AAADC

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

(00)1. The picture ____ on the wall is painted by my nephew.

A. having hung

B. hanging

C. hangs

D. being hung

(00)2. ____ the general state of his health , it may take him a while to re-

cover from the operation.

A. Given B. To give C. Giving D. Having given

(01)3. ____ late in the morning , Bob turned off the alarm.

A. To sleep B. Sleeping C. Sleep D. Having slept

(01)4. One learns a language by making mistakes and ____ them.

A. connect B. correcting C. corrects D. to correct

(02)5. Prices of daily goods ____ through a computer can be lower than store prices.

A. are bought B. bought C. been bought D. buying

(03)6. Mr. Smith , ____ of the ____ speech , started to read a novel.

A. tired ; boring B. tiring ; bored
C. tired ; bored D. tiring ; boring

(04)7. He looked around and caught a man ____ his hand into the pocket of a passenger.

A. put B. to be putting C. to put D. putting

(05)8. ____ with a difficult situation , Arnold decided to ask his boss for advice.

A. To face B. Having faced C. Faced D. Facing

答案 :1. BAABB 6. ADC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

(00)1. “ You should have thanked her before you left. ”

“ I meant ____ , but when I was leaving I couldn t find her anywhere. ”

A. to do B. to C. doing D. doing so

(00)2. Will those ____ the children from abroad come to the headmaster s office ?

A. teaching B. teach
C. who teaches D. who teaching

(00)3. While building a tunnel through the mountain , ____.

- A. an underground lake was discovered
 B. there was an underground lake discovered
 C. a lake was discovered underground
 D. the workers discovered an underground lake
- (01) 4. He let me repeat his instruction ____ sure that I understood what was ____ after he went away.
 A. to make ; to be done B. making ; doing
 C. to make ; to do D. making ; to do
- (01) 5. Sandy could do nothing but ____ to his teacher that he was wrong.
 A. admit B. admitted C. admitting D. to admit
- (01) 6. In order to improve English , ____.
 A. Jenny's father bought her a lot of tapes
 B. Jenny bought a lot of tapes for herself
 C. a lot of tapes were bought by Jenny
 D. a lot of tapes were bought by Jenny's father
- (01) 7. Mr. Reed made up his mind to devote all he had to ____ some schools for poor children.
 A. set up B. setting up
 C. have set up D. having set up
- (01) 8. ____ from heart trouble for years , Professor White has to take some medicine with him wherever he goes.
 A. Suffered B. Suffering
 C. Having suffered D. Being suffered
- (02) 9. In some parts of London , missing a bus means ____ for another hour.
 A. waiting B. to wait C. wait D. to be waiting
- (02) 10. When ____ , the museum will be open to the public next year.
 A. completed B. completing
 C. being completed D. to be completed
- (02) 11. In order to make our city green , ____.
 A. it is necessary to have planted more trees
 B. many more trees need to plant

- C. our city needs more trees
D. we must plant more trees
- (02)12. With a lot of difficult problems _____, the newly-elected president is having a hard time.
A. settled B. settling C. to settle D. being settled
- (03)13. Friendship is like money : easier made than _____.
A. kept B. to be kept C. keeping D. being kept
- (03)14. _____ the meeting himself gave them a great deal of encouragement.
A. The president will attend B. The president to attend
C. The president attended D. The president s attending
- (03)15. Unless _____ to speak , you should remain silent at the conference.
A. invited B. inviting
C. being invited D. having invited
- (03)16. She will tell us why she feels so strongly that each of us has a role _____ in making the earth a better place to live.
A. to have played B. to play
C. to be played D. to be playing
- (04)17. I'm going to the supermarket this afternoon. Do you have anything _____ ?
A. to be buying B. to buy
C. for buying D. bought
- (04)18. The pilot asked all the passengers on board to remain _____ as the plane was making a landing.
A. seat B. seating C. seated D. to be seating
- (04)19. Victor apologized for _____ to inform me of the change in the plan.
A. his being not able B. him not to be able
C. his not being able D. him to be not able
- (04)20. After his journey from abroad , Richard Jones returned home , _____.

- A. exhausting B. exhausted
C. being exhausted D. having exhausted
- (04)21. Suddenly , a tall man driving a golden carriage ____ the girl and took her away , ____ into the woods.
A. seizing ; disappeared B. seized ; disappeared
C. seizing ; disappearing D. seized ; disappearing
- (05)22. Accustomed to ____ the steep mountains , he had no difficulty reaching the top.
A. climbing B. climb
C. having climbed D. have climbed
- (05)23. This company was the first ____ portable radios as well as cassette tape recorders in the world.
A. producing B. to produce
C. having produced D. produced
- (05)24. When the first English settlers arrived in the New World , the Indians ____ jewellery made of animal bones greeted them warmly.
A. wearing B. to wear C. worn D. having worn
- (05)25. The purpose of new technology is to make life easier , ____ it more difficult.
A. not making B. not make C. not to make D. nor to make
- (05)26. I am sure that Laura s latest play , ____ staged , will prove a great success.
A. since B. unless C. once D. until
- (05)27. Sugar , when ____ with water , dissolves quickly.
A. mixed B. mixing C. mix D. is mixed
- (06)28. The parents suggested ____ in the hotel room but their kids were anxious to camp out during the trip.
A. sleep B. to sleep C. sleeping D. having slept
- (06)29. There are hundreds of visitors ____ in front of the Art Gallery to have a look at Van Gogh s paintings
A. waited B. to wait C. waiting D. wait
- (06)30. ____ the employees working efficiency , the supervisor will allow

- them to have a coffee break.
- A. Improving B. To improve
C. Having improved D. Improved
- (06)31. In the dream Peter saw himself ____ by a fierce wolf , and he woke suddenly with a start.
- A. chased B. to be chased
C. be chased D. having been chased
- (06)32. China has promised to revise its existing regulations and ____ new policies according to WTO requirements.
- A. forming B. to form
C. to be forming D. have formed
- (07)33. All the staff in our company are considering ____ to the city centre for the fashion show.
- A. to go B. going C. to have gone D. having gone
- (07)34. ____ the safety of gas , the government has checked the city's gas supply system thoroughly.
- A. To ensure B. Ensuring
C. Having ensured D. To have ensured
- (07)35. She wants her paintings ____ in the gallery , but we don't think they would be very popular.
- A. display B. to display C. displaying D. displayed

答案 1. BADAA 6. BBCAA 11. DCADA 16. BBCCB
21. DABAC 26. CACCB 31. ABBAD

第二部分 解题指导

动词的非谓语形式有三种 不定式、动名词和分词。它们的句法作用见下表

	主语	表语	宾语	宾补	主补	定语	状语	介宾
不定式	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

续表

	主语	表语	宾语	宾补	主补	定语	状语	介宾
动名词	✓	✓	✓			✓		✓
分词		✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	

(一) 不定式

不定式的时态语态变化，具体结构如下表：

	主 动 态	被 动 态
一般式	to write	to be written
进行式	to be writing	
完成式	to have written	to have been written
完成进行式	to have been writing	

不定式由“to + 动词原形”构成，其否定形式是“not to do”。不定式可以带宾语或状语构成不定式短语，没有人称和数的变化，但有时态和语态的变化。不定式可作主语、宾语、状语、表语和定语，但不能单独作谓语。不定式的逻辑主语有时用“for + 名词或代词宾格”构成。

1. 不定式的用法

1) 作主语

不定式短语作主语时，往往用 it 作形式主语。例如：

To see is to believe.

It is right to give up smoking.

2) 作表语

The important thing is to save lives.

My job is to help patients.

3) 作宾语

He wanted to go.

She deserved to win because she was the best.

下列动词后常接不定式作宾语，表示主语是施动者：

afford , agree , aim , appear , arrange[▲] , ask^{*} , attempt , beg^{*} , campaign[▲] , care , choose^{*} , claim , dare^{*} , decide , demand , expect^{*} , fail , fight , guarantee , happen , help^{*} , hesitate , hope , intend^{*} , long[▲] , manage , need^{*} , neglect , offer , pause , plan[▲] , prefer , prepare , pretend , promise , prove , refuse , seem , strive , swear , tend , threaten , trouble^{*} , undertake , wait[▲] , want^{*} , wish^{*}

说明① :以上带“[▲]”号的动词可用于“动词 + for + 宾语 + to do”的结构。例如 :

I've arranged for a car to pick them up at the station.

说明② :以上带“^{*}”号的动词可用于“动词 + 宾语 + to do”的结构。例如 :

He doesn't really expect her to pass the exam.

4) 作宾语补足语

He asked me to do the work with him.

① 在下列感官动词和使役动词用于“动词 + 宾语 + do”结构。

一感(feel) , 二听(hear , listen to) , 三使役(make , let , have) ,
五看(see , look at , watch , notice , observe)

但是这些句子如果变成被动结构都必须带 to。let 的被动形式通常用 allow/permit/give permission 的被动形式。例如 :

{ I often hear him sing the song.
{ He is often heard to sing the song.

{ I let him go.
{ He was allowed/permitted/given permission to go.

② 下列动词可用于“动词 + 宾语 + to be + 形容词或名词”结构。

believe , consider , count , declare , deny , feel , find , guess ,
imagine , judge , know , prove , realize , suppose , think

I believe him to be honest.

Everybody knows this to be a fact.

I judge him to be about fifty.

He declared himself to be a member of the club.

③ 下列动词可用于“动词 + 宾语 + to do”结构。

advise , allow , ask , beg , cause , challenge , command ,
dare , determine , direct , discover , drive , enable , expect ,
encourage , forbid , force , get , inform , invite , oblige ,
order , permit , persuade , prepare , recommend , remind ,
request , require , send , teach , urge , want , warn , wish

I advise/allow/ask you to leave.

We shall request the committee to consider our suggestion.

I recommend you to buy this dictionary.

④hope , demand , suggest 等后不能接动词不定式作宾语补足语。

I hope/ demand/ suggest you to come. (错误)

I hope that you can come on time. (正确)

I demand/suggest that you should come on time. (正确)

5) 作定语

She s finally made a decision to leave.

The farmers thought of ways to protect their crops.

许多名词,尤其是某些由动词和形容词派生的名词后常接不定式作定语。例如 :

I don t trust his promise to come for a visit.

He has persisted in her refusal to spend Christmas in Bursley.

Your ability to analyse the problem really surprises me.

He has fulfilled his ambition to be a writer.

下列名词可用于“名词 + 不定式”这一结构 :

ability , ambition , anxiety , attempt , chance , encourage ,
effort , decision , desire , eagerness , failure , moment , need ,
offer , opportunity , place , plan , pleasure , promise , reason ,
refusal , readiness , right , time , way , willingness , wish

此外应注意以下几点 :

①由 the only 及序数词 (the first , the second) , 顺序词 (the last , the next) 或形容词最高级修饰的名词也常接不定式作定语。例如 :

He is always the last one to leave the office.

This is the fifth case of anthrax(炭疽) to occur in New York this

year.

②不定式作定语在下列句子中几乎等于一个定语从句，具有情态意义，大都用于表示即将发生的动作。例如：

He is not a man to bow before difficulties. (不可能会)

She usually has a lot of meetings to attend in the evening. (必须要做)

It isn't a thing to talk about. (不应该谈论)

We'll have more activities like this in the few weeks to come. (将要到来)

The conference to take place in Shanghai next month is of great importance. (将要发生)

注意：作定语的不定式如果是不及物动词，或者不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等，不定式后面须有相应的介词。例如：

He is looking for a room to live in.

There is nothing to worry about.

Please give me a knife to cut with.

但是，不定式所修饰的名词如果是 time, place 或 way, 不定式后面的介词习惯上可省去。例如：

He had no money and no place to live (in).

6) 作状语，表示目的、结果、条件或原因

A. 作目的状语：

I came here to see you.

To stop the train, pull the lever downwards.

目的状语还可以用如下表达法：

in order to (可置于句首表强调) so as to (通常不置于句首) 其否定式为 in order not to, so as not to, 但不能用 not to

We turned the lights off in order not to waste electricity.

Check your composition so as to avoid mistakes.

不定式本身有自己的主语时，可用“for to”来表示。如：

My father bought a new book for me to read.

B. 作结果状语：

He hurried to the school to find nobody there.

What have I done to offend you ?

结果状语还可以用如下表达法：

so as to ; such as to ; enough to ; too to
表示令人意外的结果用 only + to find/discover/realize

He lifted a rock only to drop it on his own feet.

They queued for hours at the box office only to discover that the show was sold out.

The house is so high and narrow as to resemble a tower.

There isn't enough (food) to go around , I'm afraid.

He arrived at the station too late to catch the early train.

C. 作条件状语：

To look at him , you would like him.

I should be happy to be of any service to you.

It would take too much time to tell you the whole story.

D. 作原因状语：

We were very excited to hear the news.

I could not but laugh to hear such a funny story.

E. 注意下面结构中不定式的不同含义：

too + 形容词/副词 + to + 不定式

①通常在“too to ”结构中不定式具否定意义。例如：

It is too difficult to understand.

It was too late to do anything.

②下列形容词用于“too to ”结构，不定式表示肯定。

anxious , delighted , eager , easy , glad , kind , pleased ,
ready , surprised , willing

She was too surprised to see how angry her father was.

看到父亲那么生气，她非常吃惊。

③当 all , but , not , never , only , quite , really 等后接“too (to)”结构时，“too”的含义为“very”，不定式没有否定含义。例如：

I'm only too glad to stay at home. 我太想留在家里啦。

It's never too late to learn. 活到老, 学到老。

You're really too kind. 你真是太好心了。

7) 作独立成分

To tell the truth, I don't agree with you.

常用的这类短语有:

to be frank 坦白地说

to be exact 确切地说

to be sure 当然, 肯定

to begin with 首先

to say the least 说得轻些

needless to say 不用说

to say nothing of 更不用说.....

to make a long story short 长话短说

8) 不定式与疑问词 who, which, when, where, how, what 等连用, 在句中起名词作用, 可充当主语、表语、宾语等。例如:

He didn't know what to say. (宾语)

How to solve the problem is very important. (主语)

My question is when to start. (表语)

注意 在与 why 连用时, 只用于 why 或 why not 开头的简短疑问句中, 后面紧跟的动词不定式不带 to。(参阅“不带 to 的不定式”)

2. 不定式的时态

1) 不定式的一般形式所表示的动作通常与谓语的动作(状态)同时(或几乎同时)发生, 或是在它之后发生。例如:

I saw him go out.

I plan to attend the meeting to be held tomorrow.

(句中不定式短语 to be held 也表示将来)

比较 Did you attend the meeting held yesterday?

2) 如果谓语表示的动作(情况)发生时, 不定式表示的动作正在进行, 这时不定式就要用进行式。例如:

I am very glad to be working with you.

He is believed to be coming.

(不定式的进行时也表示将来)

= It is believed that he is coming.

不定式的进行时态常用在 appear, happen, pretend, seem 等动词后。例如:

He pretended to be sleeping when I came in.

3) 如果不定式的动作发生在谓语动词之前,就要用完成式。例如:

I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.

He is believed to have come.

The novel is believed to have been translated into Chinese.

不定式的完成时态常用在 appear, believe, hope, pretend, seem 等表示看法与想法的动词后。此结构有时也可以 it 作形式主语的结构代替。例如:

They pretend to have finished the job.

He seems to have bought the new book.

4) 下列动词的过去时加不定式完成式,或它们的过去完成时 (be, be due to 除外)加不定式一般式表示过去的期待,没有实现的愿望或计划等,常译为“本打算,原希望”等。

be, be due to, expect, intend, hope, mean, plan, promise, suppose, think, want, wish
--

例如 hoped to have done sth. = had hoped to do sth.

I hoped to have finished the work earlier.

I intended to have come to see you.

I had intended to call on you yesterday, but someone came to see me just when I was about to leave.

I was to have met him at the station, but he didn't come.

3. 不定式的语态

1) 不定式有名词句法作用,它的被动语态在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、补语。例如:

To love and to be loved is the greatest happiness of life. (作主语)

Do you want to be taught French? (作宾语)

The house seems to have been built in the eighteenth century. (作表语)

I know what is to be done. (作表语)

说明:“what is to be done”是宾语从句, to be done 在从句中作表语。

He was seen to be caught by the police. (作主语补语)

I don't want any of you to be involved in the case. (作宾语补语)

2) 名词后接不定式的情况：

①不定式修饰的名词或代词和不定式构成逻辑上的主谓关系，不定式往往用主动形式。

Have you got a key to unlock the door? (A key unlocks the door.)

He is not a man to impress others as being very rude.

②不定式和它前面被修饰的名词或代词构成逻辑上的动宾关系，又和该句主语构成逻辑上的主谓关系时，不定式常用主动形式表被动。

I have got a letter to write. (I write a letter.)

He needs a room to live in. (He lives in a room.)

I know what to do. (I do what.)

注意下面两个句子的区别：

I have so much work to do. 我有很多工作要(亲自去)做。

I have so much work to be done. 我有很多工作要找人做。

3) 形容词后接不定式的情况：

①下列描述人的情感和意愿等的形容词可构成“形容词 + 不定式”这一结构。

afraid, anxious, bound, careful, certain, crazy, curious, due, eager, fit, happy, likely, lucky, pleased, right, shocked, stupid, sure, thrilled, wrong

这时句子的主语也是不定式逻辑上的主语，因此不定式用主动形式。例如：

We're lucky to be having such good weather.

②下列描述属性的形容词也可构成“形容词 + 不定式”这一结构。

attractive, awkward, boring, cheap, clumsy, comfortable, convenient, dangerous, delicious, difficult, easy, exciting, expensive, good, hard, impossible, interesting, nice, pleasant, safe, simple, soft, terrible
--

这时句子的主语虽然是不定式逻辑上的宾语，不定式仍用主动形式。因为人们往往认为形容词后省去了 for one 或 for people。例如：

Such matches are boring to watch.

He is hard to talk to.

The book is difficult to understand.

若强调句中的受事者，亦可用被动式。例如：

The handwriting is very difficult to be read.

The box is too heavy to be lifted.

4) 作句子的状语，其语态的形式依照含意而定

To do good work, one must have proper tools. (目的)

I had to shout to be heard. (目的)

Madame Loisel wanted to go to the party not only to see, but also to be seen (by others). (目的)

What have I said to make you so angry? (结果)

I went to visit him, only to be told that he was out. (结果)

5) 不定式用被动形式的情况

作定语的不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的承受者时，不定式用被动语态。

He is not a man to be frightened by a wolf.

Have you anything to be sent?

你有什么要(我或别人)寄的东西吗？

注意 Have you anything to send? 你有什么东西要寄吗？

(不定式 to send 的动作执行者是 you)

6) 在 there + be 的结构中

在 there + be 结构中，当说话人考虑的是必须有人去完成某件事时，不定式用主动形式；如果说说话人强调的是事情本身必须完成，则用被动形式。例如：

There is a lot of work to do. (Somebody has to do the work.)

There is a lot of work to be done. (The work has to be done.)

请注意下面两个句子含义的区别：

There is nothing to do. 意为无事可做，感到十分无聊。

There is nothing to be done. 意为东西坏了，无法使之恢复正常。

4. 不带 to 的不定式

1) 下列感官动词和使役动词后用不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语

一感(feel), 二听(hear, listen to), 三使役(make, let, have),
五看(see, look at, watch, notice, observe)

(例句参见“不定式作宾语补足语”条。)

2) 在下列结构的 than 之后常接不带 to 的不定式

would rather than	would sooner than	rather than,
do nothing than	do (no) more than	do less than

I would rather go than stay.

These people would sooner work than play.

He insisted on going back to his work rather than stay in hospital.

In the course of a day students do far more than just attend classes.

3) 在下列结构的 but 之后常接不带 to 的不定式

cannot but,	cannot choose but,	cannot help but
do nothing but(except, besides),		
have nothing to do but(except),		

I cannot but admire his courage.

She could not help but weep at the sad news.

She could do nothing but cry.

注意:如果介词 but/except/besides 之前没有行为动词 do 的各种形式,那么它后面的不定式要带 to。例如:

I have no choice but to accept the fact.

4) 疑问词 why 常直接与不带 to 的不定式连用,构成以 why 开头的简短疑问句。如 why not do sth. (为什么不,为何不)或 why do sth. 为什么要,干吗要)。例如:

Why not have a rest?

Why not send me an e-mail?

Why bring that cup again?

Why worry about it now?

5) 在 let fly/go, make believe, make do, I've heard say 等固定搭配中,不定式不带 to。

5. 不定式的复合结构 for sb. to do sth. 在句子中的作用

1) 作主语

It is quite possible for you to catch up with them in a short time.

2) 作宾语

I think it better for you to see the doctor.

3) 作表语

What we want is for you to understand the matter clearly .

4) 作定语

He is an example for us to follow.

5) 作状语

I e-mailed pictures for him to see what Paris is like. (目的)

I am sorry for you to think like that. (原因)

(二) 动名词

动名词的时态语态变化，具体结构如下表：

	主 动 态	被 动 态
一般式	writing	being written
完成式	having written	having been written

1. 动名词的用法

1) 作主语

Seeing is believing.

Collecting information is very important to business men.

It is no use arguing with him.

2) 作表语

Her job is teaching.

Teaching is learning.

3) 作宾语

He is fond of playing football.

He finished reading the book yesterday.

4) 作定语

He has a reading room.

注意 动名词作定语修饰名词，表示该名词的功用：

a writing desk 写字台 a smoking room 吸烟室

a walking stick 手杖 a fighting post 战斗岗位

2. 接动名词作宾语的情况

1) 在下列动词后接动词作宾语时用动名词形式：

admit , advise , allow , anticipate , appreciate * , avoid * , ban , confess , consider , delay , deny , detest * , dislike * , encourage , endure * , enjoy * , ensure , escape , excuse * , face * , fancy * , feel like , finish , forbid , forgive , give up , imagine * , involve * , include , keep , mention * , mind * , miss * , omit , pardon , permit , postpone , practise , prevent * , put off , quit , recall * , recommend , resist * , risk * , save , suggest , tolerate * , understand * , can't help * (禁不住) , can't resist (忍不住)
--

说明 : 以上带星号“*”的词还可用于“动词 + 宾语 + -ing”这一结构。例如：

Could you imagine wearing that dress !

Could you imagine Jessica wearing that dress !

2) 在下列动词后直接跟动词作宾语时用动名词 ; 如果后面有名词或代词作宾语 , 然后再接动词作宾语补足语 , 其宾语补足语用带 to 的不定式。

allow , advise , encourage , forbid , permit , recommend
--

We don't allow { smoking here.
 { students to smoke here.

I recommend { taking a holiday.
 { you to take a holiday.

They encouraged { learning English by radio.
 { me to learn English by radio.

3) 动词 need , require , want 作“需要”解 , deserve 作“应得”解 , 其后跟动词作它的宾语表示主语是该动作的受动者时 , 必须用动名词主动式 (或不定式的被动式) 表示被动意义 , 例如 :

The window { needs
 { requires } { cleaning.
 { wants } { to be cleaned.

He deserved { hanging.
 { to be hanged. } (他罪该万死。)

4) 在 excuse, forgive, pardon 后接动名词时通常需要在动名词之前加上形容词型的物主代词,也可接宾格人称代词 + for + -ing。例如:

Excuse $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{my} \\ \text{me for} \end{matrix} \right\}$ opening your letter by mistake.

Forgive $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{my} \\ \text{me for} \end{matrix} \right\}$ interrupting you.

5) 下列短语中的“to”是介词,而不是不定式符号,因此后面须接名词或动名词。

admit to 承认

amount to 等于

be accustomed to 习惯于

confess to 供认

be equal to 能胜任,等于

find one's way to 设法到达

give way to 对.....让步

give rise to 使.....发生

keep to 坚持

lead to 导致

next to 几乎

be open to 愿意接受

pay attention to 注意

be sentenced to 被判刑

stand up to 勇敢面对

say yes/no to 同意/不同意

turn to 求助于

make a great contribution to 对.....作出很大的贡献

例如:

Surely she will be equal to performing her duty.

add to 增加

apply oneself to 致力于

come to 谈到

devote oneself to 献身于

be familiar to 为.....所熟悉

get down to 着手做

give one's mind to 专心于

in addition to 除.....外

look up to 尊敬

look forward to 盼望

object to 反对

be opposed to 反对

be reduced to 沦为,降为

stick to 坚持

see to 注意处理,照料

trust to 依靠

be used to 习惯于

3. 动名词的惯用语

1) There is no + doing 意为“根本不可能”

(= It is impossible to + V)。例如:

There is no telling what will happen.

2) What do you say to + doing? 意为“你认为……怎样?”

(= What do you think of doing?). 例如:

There is a flower show in the park. What do you say to going there, if it is fine tomorrow?

3) It is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{no use/ good} \\ \text{not any use/ good} \\ \text{useless} \end{array} \right\} + \text{doing}$ 意为“做……是没有用的。”

例如:

It is no use/good making an excuse for this.

4) 在 have trouble 等的短语后:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{have difficulty/trouble} \\ \text{have fun/headaches} \end{array} \right\} (\text{in}) + \text{doing}$

例如:

We had great difficulty (in) solving the problem.

They had a lot of fun listening to fairy tales.

5) 在下列以 time 为中心词的短语后:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{have a hard/good time} \\ \text{spend a lot of time} \\ \text{lose no time} \end{array} \right\} (\text{in}) + \text{doing}$

例如:

We had a difficult time persuading him.

When we arrived we lost no time (in) finding a hotel.

6) be on the point of doing 意为“快要”(= be about to + V)。例如:

The baby was on the point of crying when her mother finally came home.

7) make a point of doing 意为“认为……是必要的, 特别注意”(= make it a point to + V)。例如:

I always make a point of getting up early.

8) come/go near (to) doing 意为“几乎要”(= be almost doing = nearly do) 例如:

He came/went near (to) being drowned.

9) 动词 do 常与一些表示室内活动等的动名词连用。例如：

do (some/much/a lot of/any) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{cooking/cleaning/reading/} \\ \text{sewing/shopping/washing/} \\ \text{sightseeing} \end{array} \right.$

例如：

They did too much drinking last night.

When I was in Spain ,I did a lot of sightseeing.

10) 动词 go 常与一些表示运动或休闲的动名词形式连用表示进行某项活动。例如：

go $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fishing/swimming/skating/climbing/dancing/boating/} \\ \text{bowling/surfing/shopping} \end{array} \right.$

4. 动名词的复合结构

当动名词本身有其逻辑主语时，就构成了动名词的复合结构。动名词的逻辑主语多用名词所有格或物主代词表示，动名词的复合结构可作主语或宾语：

1) 逻辑主语是有生命的名词：作主语时，必须用名词或代词所有格；作宾语时（尤其在口语中），也可用名词普通格或人称代词宾格 (informal)。例如：

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Tom's/His(正确)} \\ \text{Tom/Him(错误)} \end{array} \right\}$ being diligent cannot be denied.

She didn't mind $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Jack's/his(正确)} \\ \text{Jack/him(正确)} \end{array} \right\}$ coming late.

2) 逻辑主语是无生命名词时，只用名词普通格。例如：

Is there any hope of our team winning the match?

3) 逻辑主语是指示代词或不定代词 this, that, somebody, someone, nobody, none, anybody, anyone 时，只用普通格。例如：

She was disturbed by somebody shouting outside.

4) 逻辑主语是以“-s”结尾的名词，或是由一个以上的名词构成的词组，用英语普通格。例如：

It was quite unexpected the students finishing the exam so soon.

I never heard of a person of character doing such a thing.

5. 动名词的时态和语态

1) 动名词的时态

动名词的时态分一般式和完成式两种。如果动名词的动作没有明确地表示出时间是与谓语动作同时发生还是在谓语动作之前发生，用动名词的一般式。例如：

We are interested in playing chess.

His coming will be of great help to us.

如果动名词的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前，通常用动名词的完成式。例如：

I'm sorry for not having kept my promise.

但是在某些动词或词组后，常用动名词的一般式，尽管其动作是在谓语所表示的动作之前发生。例如：

On hearing the bad news, she couldn't help crying.

I shall never forget seeing the Great Wall for the first time.

2) 动名词的语态

动名词的被动语态也有一般式与完成式两种。当主语是这个动名词所表示的动作的对象时，动名词用被动语态。被动语态由“being + 过去分词”或“having been + 过去分词”构成。例如：

He narrowly escaped being run over.

He likes being helped.

He was afraid of being left at home.

The house showed no sign of having been damaged.

有些动名词在句中是主动形式，但是被动含义。例如：

The house requires/needs/wants repairing.

注意：在 to be worth doing 句型中，动名词 doing 表示的是被动意义。修饰 worth 用 well。例如：

The book is well worth reading.

6. 动名词和不定式结构在意义上的区别

1) 动名词形式表示一般习惯、抽象概念，或已成为过去的动作；不定式表示的往往是具体的或特定的动作，也可表示现在或将来的动作。例如：

Playing with fire is dangerous. (泛指玩火)

To play with fire will be dangerous. (指一具体动作)

It's no use crying over spilt milk. (抽象动作)

He realized that to go on like this was no use. (具体动作)

He has forgotten seeing me before. (指已成为过去的动作)

I must remember to remind John that the garden needs watering.
(指将来的动作)

- 2) remember, forget + $\begin{cases} \text{to do (动作尚未发生)} \\ \text{doing (动作已经发生)} \end{cases}$

I must remember to read the book. 我须记得去读这本书。

I remember reading the book. 我记得读过这本书。

I will not forget to write to him. 我不会忘了给他写信。

I shall never forget visiting Paris for the first time.

我永远忘不了第一次参观巴黎的情景。

- 3) regret + $\begin{cases} \text{to do (常接动词 say, tell, inform 等) 公布坏消息} \\ \text{doing 追悔过去所做的事} \end{cases}$

I regret to say that we don't have it in stock.

很抱歉, 我们没有存货。

I regret having told him the secret. 我后悔告诉了他秘密。

- 4) mean + $\begin{cases} \text{to do “打算/想要做某事”} \\ \text{doing “意味着/结果是”} \end{cases}$

I mean to come early today. 我打算今天早些来。

Missing the train means waiting for another hour.

误了这趟火车意味着再等一个小时。

- 5) $\begin{cases} \text{propose to do “想要做”} \\ \text{try to do “尽量做”} \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} \text{propose doing “建议做”} \\ \text{try doing “尝试做”} \end{cases}$

She proposes to start tomorrow. 她想明天出发。

I propose waiting till he comes. 我建议等到他来。

I'll try to improve my spoken English.

我要设法提高我的英语口语。

Try knocking at the back door if nobody hears you at the front door. 如果敲前门没人应答, 试着敲后门。

- 6) stop + $\begin{cases} \text{to do} & \text{停下来, 开始做某事} \\ \text{doing} & \text{停止做某事} \end{cases}$

$\begin{cases} \text{He stopped to talk. 他停下来讲话。} \\ \text{Stop talking. 不要讲话。} \end{cases}$

- 7) go on + $\begin{cases} \text{to do} & \text{继续做另一件事} \\ \text{doing} & \text{不间断地继续做} \end{cases}$

$\begin{cases} \text{After opening the door, she went on to feed the chicken.} \\ \text{开门后, 她接着喂鸡。} \\ \text{They went on playing games despite the bad weather.} \\ \text{尽管天气很糟, 他们仍然继续玩游戏。} \end{cases}$

8) 在 attempt, can't bear(stand, endure), hate, intend, love, like, neglect, omit, prefer 等动词后用动名词或不定式无多大区别。但说话人有所指的时候, 通常用不定式。

9) start, begin, continue, cease 在书面语中多后接动名词, 在口语中多后接不定式。但在 start, begin 后接 realize, understand, know, see 等动词时, 只能用不定式。在一般情况下, 尽量避免出现 2 个不定式或 2 个动名词。

10) 在 should (would) like/love 等后须用不定式。

(三) 分词

分词的时态语态变化, 具体结构如下表:

	主动形式	被动形式
现在分词一般式	writing	being written
现在分词完成式	having written	having been written
过去分词		written

1. 分词的时态和语态

1) 分词的时态。

A. 分词一般式表示的动作和谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生 ;或一个动作发生后, 另一个动作紧接着发生 ;或 2 个动作虽有先后, 但说话人并不着重表示它们的先后 ;分词的一般式常在书面语中用作背景

描写。例如：

Walking down the street , I ran into Mr Zhang.

Hearing the news , I jumped with joy.

Switching off the lights , I turned over and buried my head in the pillow.

Living in the country , we had few social engagements.

B. 分词完成式表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生。表时间时常置于句首，表原因时可置于句首或句末。例如：

Having noted down our names and addresses , the policeman dismissed us.

Having passed my driving test , I was able to buy my first car.

I was able to buy my first car , having passed my driving test.

C. 分词一般式和完成式均可表示已完成的动作，但在说话人心中，用一般式把 2 个动作看作几乎同时发生，用完成式则强调 2 个动作的先后。例如：

Locking the door , she went out.

Having studied in the university for 3 years , he knows the place very well.

2) 分词的语态：

A. 分词一般式的被动语态（being done）强调动作正在进行中。例如：

The house being built will be our office building.

Being surrounded , the rebel troops were forced to surrender.

B. 分词完成式的被动语态（having been done）强调先于谓语动词。例如：

Having been criticized by the teacher , Li Ming gave up smoking.

Not having been invited , he felt very unhappy.

C. 过去分词也表示被动，但没有强调动作先后的含义。例如：

The concert given by the symphony orchestra was a great success.

They are problems left over by history.

Seen from the hill , the city looks magnificent.

Given good health , I hope to finish the work this year.

2. 分词的用法

1) 作定语

分词短语作定语时,放在被修饰的名词之后;单个分词作定语时,放在被修饰的名词之前。例如:

The man standing at the window is our teacher.

Polluted air and water are harmful to people's health.

注意:①现在分词作定语,表示动作正在进行或与谓语动词所表示的动作几乎同时发生,或表示某个经常的动作或状态。例如:

The gentleman standing over there is our principal.

A rolling stone gathers no moss. (滚石不生苔 转业不聚财)

注意:②如果两个动作有先有后,一般不能用现在分词作定语,而要用定语从句。例如:

The teacher criticized the student who had broken the window.

The thief who took her bag has been arrested.

2) 作状语

分词或分词短语作状语,可以表示时间(= when)、原因(= as, since, because)、结果(= so that)、条件(= if, unless)、让步(= though, even if)等。例如:

Hearing the news, they all danced for joy. (时间)

Heated, water changes into steam. (时间或条件)

Being a student, I must study hard. (原因)

Filled with excitement, this is more than a novel about war at sea.
(原因)

Their car was caught in a traffic jam, thus causing the delay. (结果)

United, we stand; divided, we fall. (条件)

Exercising every morning, you will improve your health. (条件)

Wounded, the brave soldier continued to fight. (让步)

Admitting what you say, I still think you are wrong. (让步)

The children ran out of the room, laughing and talking merrily.
(方式)

The teacher stood there surrounded by the students. (方式)

注意 :①分词短语作状语 ,其逻辑主语须与句子的主语一致。例如 :

Entering the room , he found a letter on the desk. (正确)

Entering the room , a letter was found on the desk. (错误)

注意 :②当分词的逻辑主语与主句的主语不同时 ,分词必须有自己的主语。例如 :

Time permitting , I will finish another lesson.

Mother being ill , I have to stay home.

注意 :③现在分词作结果状语时 ,常表示意外的结果。例如 :

I stayed at work rather late , missing my last train home.

注意 :④分词或分词短语常可改写为状语从句 ,表示行为方式、伴随状况的分词短语 ,可改写为并列句。例如 :

表时间 : { 分词 :Turning the corner , we saw the hospital in front of us.
从句 :As we turned the corner we saw the hospital in front of us.

表原因 : { 分词 :Not being qualified , she will be unable to answer your questions.
从句 :She will be unable to answer your questions because she is not qualified.

表结果 : { 分词 :The corporation shut down the plant , leaving many workers unemployed.
从句 :The corporation shut down the plant , with the result that many workers were left unemployed.

表条件 : { 分词 :Treated gently , the fabric should last for years.
从句 :If you treat it gently , the fabric should last for years.

表方式 : { 分词 :The children ran out of the room , laughing and talking merrily.
并列句 :The children ran out of the room , and they laughed and talked merrily.

3) 作表语

现在分词作表语表示主语的性质或特征，常可用 very 修饰 过去分词作表语表示主语所处的状态。例如：

The news is very inspiring.

You shouldn't try to stand up if you are badly hurt.

注意下列表示“变成”、“保持”、“感觉”等意义的动词有系动词的特征，可与某些现在分词或过去分词构成主系表结构：

appear , become , come , feel , go , get , grow , lie , look , remain , rest , stay , sit , stand
--

接现在分词：

come running/hurrying in get going/chatting/moving

look tempting/promising remain standing/listening

lie dying sit waiting stand looking

接过去分词：

appear disappointed/amazed/touched ,

become annoyed/interested/acquainted ,

come untied/undone/unwrapped/unfastened/unstitched ,

feel troubled/distressed/puzzled/upset/exhausted ,

go unnoticed/unpunished/uncorrected/undetected/unrecorded ,

grow used/excited/frightened ,

look/seem startled/concerned/troubled ,

remain unfinished/unconvinced/unsolved ,

get absorbed/caught lie wounded

stay seated/unarmed rest assured

4) 作宾语补足语

下列感官动词常用于“动词 + 宾语 + 现在分词”这一结构：

catch , discover , feel , find , hear , leave , notice , observe , see , spot , watch
--

We saw the teacher making the experiment.

Did you notice the man leaving the house ?

注意下面的结构：

$$\text{主语} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{feel/hear/listen to/watch} \\ \text{see/look at/notice/observe} \end{array} \right\} + \text{宾语} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{doing} \\ \text{do} \end{array} \right\} \text{sth.}$$

在感官动词“一感”(feel)、“二听”(hear, listen to)、“五看”(see, watch, look at, notice, observe)后,既可用现在分词构成复合宾语,也可用不带 to 的不定式构成复合宾语,但两者的含义是有差别的。

A) 用现在分词作宾语补足语表示动作正在发生(即处于发生的过程中,还没有结束,或是一个反复进行的动作)。例如:

I saw the girl crossing the street.

我看到那女孩在横穿马路。

I saw a young mother slapping her child.

我们看到那个年青的母亲反复打她的孩子。

B) 用不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语描述某个单一的动作,或表示动作发生了(即动作全过程结束了)。例如:

We saw a young mother slap her child in the supermarket.

我们看到那个年青的母亲在超市打了一下她的孩子。

I saw the girl cross the street and run away.

我看到那女孩穿过马路跑了。

3. 现在分词和过去分词作前置定语时的区别

1) 现在分词作前置定语

①表示正在进行的主动动作。例如:

the rising sun = the sun that is rising 正在升起的太阳

注意下列短语:

a sleeping child 熟睡的孩子 boiling water 沸水

a falling star 流星 a waiting crowd 等待的人群

increasing demand 日益增长的需求 lasting peace 永久和平

②表示主动但不正在进行。例如:

He is a promising student. 他是个有前途的学生。

注意下列短语:

remaining days 剩下的岁月 a tiring day 劳累的一天

an embarrassing position 窘境 guiding principle 指导原则

neighbouring country 邻国 a walking dictionary 活字典

2) 过去分词作前置定语

①表示被动，且有时有已完成的含义。例如：

the risen sun = the sun that has just risen 初升的太阳

I don't like to eat fried eggs. 我不喜欢吃煎蛋。

注意下列短语：

boiled water 开(过的)水 required courses 必修课

furnished room 有家具的房间 a written report 书面报告

②表示完成且有主动的含义(仅限于某些不及物动词的过去分词作定语)。例如：

Where are the escaped prisoners? 那些逃犯在哪里?

注意下列短语：

departed friends 离去的朋友 an arrived visitor 一位来客

fallen leaves 落叶 an escaped prisoner 一个逃犯

returned students 归国留学生 faded flowers 凋谢的花

retired workers 退休工人 a sunken ship 一艘沉船

③用在表示情绪的词语中。例如：

He gave a satisfied smile. 他给了个满意的微笑。

注意下列短语：

a frightened glance 惊恐的扫视

a worried look 愁容

an excited scream 激动的尖叫声

the intended effect 预期的效果

his embarrassed manner 他的尴尬的举止

a puzzled / an embarrassed expression 困惑的/尴尬的表情

但是 relaxed/relaxing environment 放松的环境

4. 接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词分类

第一类包括 see, hear, watch, find, feel, consider 等表示感官和心理状态的动词。例如：

I saw them assembled in the hall.

We found her greatly changed.

I considered this problem settled.

第二类包括 get, have, keep, leave, make 等表示“使役”、“致使”的动词。例如：

I try to make myself understood.

Please keep me informed of the latest developments.

She will get the fence mended.

第三类包括 like , need , order , want , wish 等表示要求、希望、命令的动词。例如：

I should like the matter (to be) settled immediately.

The commander ordered the army unit (to be) reorganized.

I don't want any of you (to be) involved in the scandal.

Do you wish your breakfast (to be) brought to your room?

5. catch 等几个特殊动词接分词作宾语补足语的情况

在表示“使役”或“致使”的动词后面，接现在分词作宾语补足语表示主动意义，接过去分词作宾语补足语表示被动意义。具体情况如下：

动词	catch	have	keep	get	leave	make	send	set	start
现在分词	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	✓	✓	✓
过去分词	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×

We had the fire burning all day.

He had his foot injured in the fall.

His words left me wondering what he was driving at.

They left the boy stranded in a terrible situation.

Can you give me some advice on how to get the conversation going?

Tom is a lazy boy. I often catch him sleeping in class.

The joke set us all laughing.

The explosion sent things flying in all directions.

After repairing it, the mechanic managed to start the machine running again.

You should make your views known.

注意：①在 catch , send , set , start 后只接现在分词不接过去分词

作宾补。

注意 !②在 make 后只接过去分词不接现在分词作宾补。

注意 !③won't have + 宾语 + $\begin{cases} \text{过去分词(不允许)} \\ \text{现在分词(不能让, 不允许)} \\ \text{不定式(不带 to)(不能让)} \end{cases}$

此结构仅用于第一人称的否定句中,表示“不允许”、“不能容忍”、“不能让”。例如:

I won't have anything said against me.

I won't have my instructions disobeyed in this way.

I won't have that sort of thing happening again.

I won't have you teasing the girl.

I won't have him cheat me.

I won't have you blame it on me.

6. 分词与不定式作状语的区别

1) 目的状语通常用不定式,可放在句首或句末,有时和词组 so as to, in order to 搭配。分词很少用作目的状语,且都位于句末。例如:

We started early so as to get there before ten.

He telephoned me, inviting me to his party.

2) 作结果状语时,不定式常和 too to, only to, enough to, so as to 等搭配,有时则表示出乎意料的结果;而分词作结果状语常由 thus 引起,常表示一种自然的结果,。例如:

I consider him too lazy to be a good student.

I went to his house, only to find he was out.

The boy is always telling lies, thus losing all of his friends.

He dropped the cup, breaking it into pieces.

3) 分词常用于表示方式或伴随情况的状语中,这类句子常可改写为并列句。例如:

He walked down the hill, singing (= and sang) softly to himself.

不定式表示伴随仅用于独立结构中(例句略)。

7. 从属连词引导非谓语动词的情况

从属连词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{不定式} \\ \text{现在分词} \\ \text{过去分词} \end{array} \right\}$ + 句子(主 语 + 谓语)
--

从属连词加不定式, 现在分词或过去分词这一结构实际上是从属连词后省略了明确的主语而来的。从属连词加不定式或现在分词有主动的含义, 从属连词加过去分词有被动的含义。

1) 从属连词 + 不定式

可引导不定式的常用从属连词:

as if, as though, whether or

She doesn't know whether to cry or to laugh. (让步连词)

He raised his hand as if (he was going) to take off his hat. (比较连词)

2) 从属连词 + 现在分词

可引导现在分词的常用从属连词:

when, while, where, as if, even if, if, although, once, unless, until

While (he was) flying over the Channel, the pilot saw what he thought to be a meteorite(流星). (时间连词)

Flowers danced in the gentle breeze as if (they were) giving encouragement to the people working in the fields. (比较连词)

If (you) arriving by coach, please let the secretary know. (条件连词)

Once (you) having made a promise, you should keep it. (时间连词)

Although (he) never having been there before, he found the house without any difficulty. (让步连词)

说明 after, before 和 since 引导-ing 分句时为介词, 而非从属连词。

3) 从属连词 + 过去分词

可引导过去分词的常用从属连词:

when, while, where(ver), as if, even if, if, although, once, unless, until, as soon as
--

This must be kept till (it is) called for. (时间连词)

We will not attack , unless (we are) attacked. (条件连词)

If (it is) left in the sun , the cloth will lose all its colour. (条件连词)

The documents will be returned as soon as (they are) signed. (时间连词)

This book , wherever (it is) found , is to be restored to its owner. (地点连词)

注意 :从属连词 + 非动词(名词、形容词或介词短语等)的结构参见第十一章复合句“状语从句中省略主语的情况”。

8. with/without 引导非谓语动词及非动词的情况

用于“with + 名词或代词 + 非谓语动词或非动词(形容词、副词、介词短语)”结构,在句中作状语,表示时间、原因、条件、让步、方式、伴随情况等:

- 1) With + 名词或代词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{现在分词} \\ \text{过去分词} \\ \text{不定式} \end{array} \right\}$ + 句子
- 2) With + 名词或代词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{名词} \\ \text{形容词} \\ \text{副词} \\ \text{介词短语} \end{array} \right\}$ + 句子

例如:

With winter coming on , it s time to buy warm clothes. (接现在分词,表时间)

With the authorities having arrived , the ceremony began. (接现在分词完成式,表时间)

With her skirt caught on a nail , she could not move. (接过去分词,表原因)

With no one to talk to , John felt miserable. (接不定式,表原因)

The brave man fought the tiger with a stick his only weapon. (接名词,表条件)

Even with conditions quite unfavourable , he would succeed. (接形

容词,表让步)

With friends around ,hell turns into heaven. (接副词,表条件)

He stood there ,with his hat in his hand and a pipe in his mouth.

(接介词短语,表方式)

He wandered in without shoes or socks on.

Without anyone noticing ,he slipped through the window.

The war was over without a shot being fired.

They had passed without a single word spoken.

第三部分 分类练习

1. 动词不定式专项练习

1. You had better get a doctor ____ your bad tooth.
A. pull out B. to pull out C. pulled out D. pulling out
2. Did you notice Mary ____ to her bedroom ?
A. came in and ran B. come in and run
C. coming in and running D. having come in and run
3. I wanted to have him ____ the job ,but he had it ____ instead.
A. do ; done B. does ; be done C. to do ; doing D. to do ; done
4. It's dangerous to let the children who are so young ____ in the river.
A. to go swimming B. going to swim
C. go swimming D. go to swim
5. I'm afraid your suggestion can't help ____ the service of their shop.
A. improving B. in improving C. improve D. for improving
6. The enemy had no way out but ____.
A. surrender B. surrendering
C. to surrender D. having to surrender
7. The matter had better ____ as it is.
A. leave B. being left C. left D. be left
8. The telephone is out of order and ____.
A. needs to be repaired B. needs to repair
C. needs to be repairing D. needs being repaired
9. I urged him ____ because the road was dangerous.
A. careful B. to be careful C. being careful D. carefully

10. I recommend you ____ this dictionary.
A. buying B. to buy C. of buying D. to buying
11. An old man entered the inn and asked for accommodation ____ for him.
A. to be made B. should be made
C. being made D. should have been made
12. You don't have to spend a lot ____, you just need plenty of styles.
A. to be fashionable B. only to be fashionable
C. being fashionable D. as to be fashionable
13. We entered the supermarket ____ a shelter from a sudden rain.
A. to be finding B. to be found
C. just to find D. only to find
14. He made a long speech ____ his ignorance of the subject.
A. only to show B. only showing
C. showing only D. to show only
15. Helen is always the first ____ to the office.
A. comes B. coming C. to come D. who came
16. These candles may be attractive ____, but they were not made to our current safety standard.
A. to be looked at B. being looked at
C. to look at D. to looked at them
17. If anyone happens to drop in while I am out, ____ him or her leave a message.
A. get B. have C. ask D. tell
18. In fact, I would rather leave for Beijing than ____ in Shanghai.
A. stay B. staying C. to stay D. having stayed
19. William Shakespeare is generally believed ____ all those plays himself.
A. to write B. writing
C. to have written D. having written
20. With the meeting ____ in just a couple of hours, I hadn't the time to worry about those unimportant things.
A. begun B. beginning C. would begin D. to begin

2. 动名词专项练习

1. I wouldn't advise ____ there by bus, because it is too crowded.
A. and go B. to go C. to going D. going
2. I would appreciate ____ back this afternoon.

- A. you to call B. you call
C. your calling D. you re calling
3. The doctor recommended ____ hard work for the first few weeks.
A. to avoid B. to avoiding C. being avoided D. avoiding
4. With modern traffic control facilities speeders can't expect to escape ____ detected and fined.
A. to be B. being C. to have been D. having been
5. I really can't risk the children ____ these awful programs.
A. to see B. having seen C. to seeing D. seeing
6. It's strange that she didn't mention ____ him at the party.
A. to meet B. to meeting C. meeting D. met
7. The ____ is a traditional part of the Christmas festivities.
A. giving presents B. giving of presents
C. presents to give D. presents to giving
8. I feel like ____ a long walk. Would you like ____ with me ?
A. taking ; going B. taking ; to go
C. to take ; to go D. to take ; going
9. I forget ____ them ____ in the school garden.
A. allowing ; playing B. about allowing ; playing
C. allowing ; to play D. to allow ; playing
10. Who could have imagined such a sweet-tempered girl as Alice ____ such a thing !
A. doing B. to do C. will do D. does
11. The increasing use of foreign words could lead to ____ the good qualities of traditional Chinese.
A. people forgetting B. people forgot
C. forgetting people D. people forget
12. I don't mind ____ to the party.
A. being not invited B. to be not invited
C. not being invited D. not to be invited
13. There is no point ____ such a long way since you can buy it in the neighborhood.
A. to go B. by going C. having gone D. in going
14. It is considered no good ____ without understanding.
A. recite B. to be recited C. recited D. reciting
15. I was afraid of the tent ____ down during the night.
A. being fallen B. falling C. fallen D. fell

4. 动词的非谓语形式综合练习

1. It was so cold that the travellers had the fire ____ all the night.
A. burning B. to burn C. burn D. burnt
2. They are going to have the serviceman ____ an electric fan in the office room tomorrow.
A. install B. to install
C. to be installed D. installed
3. You must have the paper ____ by the end of this month.
A. finish B. to be finished
C. finished D. being finished
4. I don't mind ____ the decision as long as it is not too late.
A. your delaying making B. you delay to make
C. your delaying to make D. you to delay making
5. "Do you mind ____?" "Go ahead. "
A. turning on the fan B. if I turn on the fan
C. to turn on the fan D. I turn on the fan
6. We regret ____ that the film was not worth ____.
A. to say ; to see B. to say ; seeing
C. saying ; to see D. saying ; to be seen
7. He regrets ____ to watch the volleyball match.
A. not being able B. being not able
C. not to be able D. to be not able
8. Does Mr Smith remember ____ to China when he was a child ?
A. being taken B. to be taken C. taking D. to take
9. They still remembered the years ____ together in the country.
A. when they B. which spent
C. spent happily D. they had for
10. There's a man at the reception desk who seems very angry and I think he means ____ trouble.
A. making B. to make
C. to have made D. having made
11. If you miss the last train , it will mean ____ overnight at a hotel.
A. to stay B. stay C. to staying D. staying
12. The whole place requires ____.
A. to be cleaned B. to be cleaning C. being cleaned D. to clean

13. Mr John requires each of his students ____ a composition every other week.
A. writing B. writes C. to write D. to have written
14. The students are all gone. Because of the bad weather , the teacher permitted them ____ early.
A. leave B. to being leaving
C. to leaving D. to leave
15. We shall request the committee ____ our suggestion.
A. to consider B. consider C. considering D. considered
16. They expected the ground floor flat ____ first.
A. to be sold B. being sold C. to sell D. be sold
17. I was ____ him last Wednesday but he didn t come.
A. about to see B. to see
C. about to have seen D. to have seen
18. I d like to ____ to the beach last summer , but I had no time.
A. go B. having gone C. be going D. have gone
19. I had intended ____ to the party , but I had a very important meeting to attend.
A. coming B. having come C. come D. to come
20. The man we followed suddenly stopped and looked as if ____ whether he was going in the right direction.
A. to see B. seeing C. to have seen D. having seen
21. The lady stood in the sitting room as if ____ a visit ____ a friend.
A. expecting ; from B. expected ; from
C. expected ; to D. expecting ; at
22. When ____ someone for the first time , she may or may not offer her hand.
A. to be met B. met C. to meet D. meeting
23. Though ____ at her sister s success , Vicky couldn t help feeling somewhat envious.
A. delighting B. to be delighting
C. delighted D. to be delighted
24. ____ made her mother very angry.
A. Helen married Jack B. Helen has married Jack
C. Helen marrying Jack D. Helen s marrying Jack
25. ____ in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.
A. The girl was educated B. The girl educated
C. The girl s being educated D. The girl to be educated
26. China is a ____ country ____ to the third world.

- A. developed ; belongs B. developing ; belonging
C. developing ; belongs D. developed ; being belonged
27. ____ map dated back to about 3000 B. C.
A. The oldest known B. Known as the oldest
C. It was the oldest known D. Known to be the oldest
28. " Who were those people with the flags ?"
" A group ____ itself the League of Peace. "
A. calls B. calling C. called D. being called
29. For most of the ____ history , China had the world most ____ civilization.
A. recorded ; advanced B. recording ; advancing
C. recording ; advanced D. record ; advanced
30. She had a very ____ when she heard the news.
A. disappointed look B. disappointing look
C. disappointed appearance D. disappointment look
31. It was so ____ a poem that quite a few students were ____ to tears.
A. moved ; moved B. moving ; moving
C. moving ; moved D. moved ; moving
32. I have ____ that nobody is allowed to smoke here.
A. made clear B. to be clear
C. made it clear D. made things clear
33. She was glad that her success would ____ for the women who would follow.
A. make things easier B. make it easier
C. be easier D. be easier to make
34. We found ____.
A. the work hard for doing B. it hard for doing the work
C. hard to do the work D. the work hard to do
35. He went on to say that it was as important to respect others as ____ by others.
A. being respected B. to be respected
C. to respect D. respected
36. She must be looking forward as much to his return as he himself is to ____ her.
A. see B. have seen C. seeing D. having seen
37. We were greatly encouraged by the news of our team ____ another gold medal.
A. to have won B. to win C. won D. having won
38. Have you ever dreamed of ____ a terrifying shadowy figure chasing you down an endless corridor ?

- A. there to be B. there be C. there being D. there having
39. "How many students , do you think , will be present at the meeting ?"
 "I expect ____ 20 students at the meeting. "
- A. there being B. there to be C. there be D. there been
40. Tests do far more than just ____ scores.
 A. providing B. provide C. to provide D. provided
41. Everyone knows that he spends more time surfing on the Internet than he ____.
 A. writes B. does writing C. is writing D. does to write
42. True opera lovers go to an opera-house for the purpose of listening to famous songs and familiar music rather than ____ an involved plot.
 A. to get to know B. know
 C. getting to know D. got to know
43. You should know better than ____ into the road.
 A. rush B. to rush C. rushing D. rushed
44. When I caught him ____ I stopped buying things there and started dealing with another shop.
 A. cheating B. cheat C. to cheat D. to be cheating
45. His remarks left me ____ about his real purpose.
 A. wondered B. wonder C. to wonder D. wondering
46. Please excuse me if I have left any of your questions ____.
 A. unanswered B. unanswering C. to answer D. to be unanswered
47. While the weather is fine , I must get down ____ the house.
 A. repainting B. to repaint C. to repainting D. on repainting
48. I prefer taking a bus to ____ a bicycle.
 A. ride B. riding C. driving D. drive
49. There s a flower show in the park. What do you say to ____ there ?
 A. be going B. have gone C. going D. go
50. That was so serious a matter that I had no choice but ____ the police.
 A. called in B. call in C. calling in D. to call in
51. The traditional approach to ____ with complex problems is to break them down into smaller , more easily managed problems.
 A. dealing B. deal C. be dealing D. be dealt
52. The day we had looked forward to ____ at last.
 A. coming B. come C. came D. comes
53. Would you agree to ____ the operation ?

- A. Parsons having full control of
B. Parsons control
C. Parson s having full control of
D. be in Parson s control of
54. The mother had a hard time ____ to get the children to go to bed.
A. to try B. trying
C. to have tried D. having tried
55. The doctor lost no time ____ the patient first aid.
A. to give B. to have given
C. giving D. having given
56. He claimed ____ at yesterday s party.
A. having been badly treated B. to have been badly treated
C. being treated badly D. to be treated badly
57. I m very sorry for what has happened ; the bad result ought to ____ out to those concerned at the very beginning.
A. have been pointed B. have pointed
C. being point D. point
58. Able-bodied people just don t realize how difficult it is ____ good jobs.
A. of disabled people getting B. of disabled people to get
C. for disabled people getting D. for disabled people to get
59. I saw him ____ under a tree , thinking.
A. sat B. seated C. seating D. seat
60. Whom would you rather ____ with you , George or me ?
A. to go B. have gone C. have go D. going
61. Laws that punish parents for their little children s actions against the laws get parents ____.
A. worried B. to worry C. worrying D. worry
62. Though they had a meeting yesterday , there is still much that remains ____.
A. to solve B. solving C. to be solved D. solved
63. The wallet was returned to Mr Hopkins without anything ____.
A. missing B. to be missed C. missed D. to miss
64. We have been looking for the boy all the morning but he is nowhere ____.
A. to see B. seeing C. seen D. to be seen
65. " Why was he fined ? " " He happened to ____ several flowers in the park. "
- A. catch picking B. be seen pick

- C. be caught to pick D. be seen picking
66. ____ to the left and you'll see the post office.
A. To turn B. Turning C. If turn D. Turn
67. The news reporters hurried to the airport , only ____ the film star had left.
A. to tell B. to be told C. telling D. told
68. I think the book is worthy ____ carefully.
A. to study B. being studied
C. studying D. of being studied
69. These surveys indicate that many crimes go ____ by the police.
A. unrecording B. unrecorded
C. to be unrecorded D. to be unrecording
70. ____ to sunlight for too much time will do harm to one's skin.
A. Exposed B. Being exposed
C. Having exposed D. After being exposed
71. Those who make their children that are so young ____ do their lessons all day are unwise.
A. that they B. / C. as to D. enough to
72. Children nowadays tend to be so rebellious that parents often feel at a loss about what ____ from them.
A. expected B. to expect
C. to be expecting D. expects
73. ____ it or not , his discovery has created a stir in scientific circles.
A. Believe B. To believe C. Believing D. Believed
74. The two farmers ____ what appeared to be small guns forced the enemy officer to hand in his map.
A. carried B. were carrying C. carrying D. had carried
75. The lecturer ____ will be here tomorrow.
A. to talk about so much B. to be talking about so much
C. so much talking about D. so much talked about
76. If I correct someone , I will do it with as much good humor and self-restraint as if I were the one ____ .
A. to correct B. correcting
C. having corrected D. being corrected
77. It now occurs to me that you're the man ____ the world news on television.
A. reporting B. having reported

90. Having no money but _____ to know , he simply said he would go without dinner.

A. not to want anyone

B. not wanting anyone

C. wanted no one

D. to want no one

第九章 介 词

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (00)1. ____ production up by 60% , the company has had another excellent year.
A. As B. For C. With D. Through
- (04)2. ____ two exams to worry about , I have to work really hard this weekend.
A. With B. Besides C. As for D. Because of
- (06)3. - When do we need to pay the balance ?
- ____ September 30.
A. In B. By C. During D. Within
- (07)4. This is a junior school. You should go to a senior school ____ a girl of your age.
A. for B. about C. from D. to

答案 1. CABA

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. ____ most students , she was always well prepared and never came to class late.
A. Like B. As C. For D. To
- (98)2. I wanted two seats ____ Madame Curie for Friday night , so I rang the cinema to see if I could book two tickets.
A. of B. about C. to D. for
- (99)3. The number of the employees has grown from 1 ,000 to 1 ,200. This means it has risen ____ 20 percent.

- A. by B. at C. to D. with
- (00)4. I know nothing about the young lady ____ she is from Beijing.
A. except B. except for C. except that D. besides
- (01)5. The sunlight came in ____ the windows in the roof and lit up the whole room.
A. through B. across C. on D. over
- (02)6. Luckily , the bullet narrowly missed the captain ____ an inch.
A. by B. at C. to D. from
- (03)7. The conference has been held to discuss the effects of tourism ____ the wildlife in the area.
A. in B. on C. at D. with
- (04)8. The accident is reported to have occurred ____ the first Sunday in February.
A. at B. on C. in D. to
- (05)9. John became a football coach in Sealion Middle School ____ the beginning of March.
A. on B. for C. with D. at
- (06)10. - It's a top secret.
- Yes , I see. I will keep the secret ____ you and me.
A. with B. around C. among D. between
- (07)11. Leaves are found on all kinds of trees , but they differ greatly ____ size and shape.
A. on B. from C. by D. in

答案 :1. ADACA 6. ABBDD 11. D

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (02) 1. " You are so lucky. "
" What do you mean ____ that ?"
A. for B. in C. of D. by
- (04) 2. In order to change attitudes ____ employing women , the govern-

ment is bringing in new laws.

- A. about B. of C. towards D. on

答案 : 1. DC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (01) 1. Rose was wild with joy ____ the result of the examination.
A. to B. at C. by D. as
- (02) 2. Marie Curie took little notice ____ the honours that were given to her in her later years.
A. of B. on C. about D. from
- (03) 3. The speech by the mayor of Shanghai before the final voting for EXPO 2010 is strongly impressed ____ my memory.
A. to B. over C. by D. on
- (04) 4. I am sorry it is ____ my power to make a final decision on the project.
A. over B. above C. off D. beyond
- (05) 5. "Does Lisa have a new hair style?"
"Yes. In fact, it is quite similar ____ yours. "
A. as B. like C. to D. with
- (06) 6. More and more young people are fond ____ playing tennis nowadays.
A. on B. to C. in D. of
- (07) 7. Dolly wants to cycle round the world and she is really keen ____ the idea.
A. on B. for C. at D. with

答案 : 1. BADDC 6. DA

第二部分 解题指导

介词又叫前置词,是一种虚词。介词不能单独做句子成分,必须

与名词或代词(或相当于名词的其他词类、短语或从句)构成介词短语,才能在句中充当一个成分。

(一) 介词的分类和介词短语在句中的作用

1. 介词的分类

- 1) 简单介词:如 at, in, on, besides, since, for 等。
- 2) 合成介词:如 inside, out of, onto, without 等。
- 3) 短语介词:如 because of, next to, instead of, due to 等。
- 4) 二重介词:如 from behind, until after 等。
- 5) 分词介词:如 concerning(关于), considering(就.....而言), following(在.....之后), including(包括), regarding(关于), respecting(关于), saving(除.....外)等。

2. 介词短语在句中的作用

1) 作定语。例如:

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

The houses opposite ours are being pulled down.

2) 作状语。例如:

With production up by 60% , the company has had another excellent year.

He has been here since Friday.

3) 作表语。例如:

Japan is to the east of China.

He is always among the first to come to school.

4) 作宾语补足语。例如:

Make yourself at home.

We found her in better spirits.

3. 介词后直接接形容词的情况

介词后接形容词通常加上 being。例如:

He was dismissed from his job for being absent-minded while working.

但在现代英语中,某些介词后可省略 being 直接接形容词。这种用法仅限于某些含介词的短语,通常比较固定,不能随意套用。例

如：

1) take for granted

I took it for granted that you would stay with us.

2) far from + 形容词

His explanation was far from satisfactory.

3) anything but + 形容词

He is anything but angry.

4) kind of + 形容词

He looks kind of pale after his illness.

5) sort of + 形容词

She is sort of excited.

6) consider as + 形容词

We consider the wire as disconnected.

7) accept as + 形容词

We accept the conclusion as true.

8) regard as + 形容词

Do you regard it as necessary I should come ?

说明 在 regard as 后还可接介词短语和分词。例如：

He regarded the account of the accident as of very little value.

They regarded the contract as having been broken.

After a few rounds of talks , both sides regarded the problem as settled.

4. 省略介词直接接名词的情况

当“of + age/colour/height/length/size/shape/volume”等作表语时，通常可省略 of，直接接名词。例如：

They were (of) the same age.

He was (of) medium height.

The sky is (of) the colour of jade.

5. It is brave of you to do that.

It is easy for you to do that.

下列表示人物特征的形容词同 of 后的名词或代词关系密切，有意义上的主表关系，常与 of 搭配：

brave , careful , careless , clever , considerate , cruel , foolish , good , honest , kind , nice , right , rude , stupid , silly , thoughtful , wise , wrong

例如：

It was very kind of you to come to help me.

= You were very kind to come to help me.

下列表示事物性质的形容词同 for 后的名词或代词关系不密切，没有意义上的主表关系，但与句中的不定式结构关系密切，有意义上的主表关系，常与 for 搭配：

easy , hard , heavy , necessary , impossible , possible , important , difficult
--

例如：

It is hard for him to get rid of his bad habits.

= For him to get rid of his bad habits is hard.

（二）注意几个常用介词的用法

用 法	常 用 介 词
1. 表示时间	at , in , on , by , through
2. 表示在附近	near , by , beside , at
3. 表示地点	at , in , on
4. 表示除外	besides , except , except for , but
5. 表示方位	in , to , on
6. 表示“在……上/下”	above , below , over , under , on , beneath
7. 表示方式	by , through , with
8. 表示原因	through , with , from , for , at , due to , owing to , because of , on account of , thanks to
9. 表示价格，比率，对比	at , by , for , against
10. 表示属性，特性	of , with
11. 表示比较	as , like

1. 表示时间

at, in, on, by 和 through 表示时间的区别：

at 指时间表示：

1) 时间的一点、时刻等。例如：

They come home at sunrise (at noon, at midnight, at ten o'clock, at daybreak, at dawn).

2) 较短暂的一段时间。可指某个节日或被认为是一年中标志大事的日子。例如：

He went home at Christmas (at New Year, at the Spring Festival, at night, at midsummer).

At the beginning (middle, end) of that month he was sick.

His grandfather died at seventy-two.

in 指时间表示：

1) 在某个较长的时间(如世纪、朝代、年、月、季节、以及泛指的上 午、下午和傍晚等)内。例如：

He was born in 1942.

He did it in the holidays.

2) 在一段时间之后。

• 一般情况下,用于将来时间时,谓语动词为“一时性的动作”,
in 作“在……以后”解。例如：

He will arrive in two hours.

(arrive 表示一时性的动作,意指“两小时后”。)

• 谓语动词为“延续性的动作”时,in 作“在……以内”解。例如：

These products will be produced in a month.

(produce 表示延续性的动作,意指“一个月内”。)

• after 用于将来时间时也指“一段时间之后”,但其后的时间是
“一点”(如 after two o'clock),而不是“一段”。

on 指时间表示：

1) 具体的时日和一個特定的时间,如某日、某节日、星期几等。 例如：

On May 4th (On Sunday, On New Year's day, On Christmas Day), there will be a celebration.

He will come to meet us on our arrival.

- 2) 在某个特定的早晨、下午或晚上。例如：

He died on the eve of victory(胜利前夕)。

He arrived at 10 o'clock on the night of the 5th.

- 3) 准(时)，按(时)。例如：

If the train should be on time, I should reach home before dark.

by 指时间表示：

- 1) 不迟于，在(某时)前。例如：

He must have returned by now.

Jack had made some friends by the time you came.

He will come by six o'clock.

By then he was more than fifty years of age.

- 2) 在……间，在……的时候。例如：

He worked by day and slept by night.

I don't like travelling by night.

through 指时间意为“从……开始到结束”，此时与 throughout 相同：

He guarded us all through the night.

We work hard all through the year.

It rained throughout the night.

2. 表示在附近

near, by, beside, at 表示“在……附近”的区别：

- 1) near 表示相对的“近”，实际距离可能还很远。例如：

Suzhou is near Shanghai.

There is a post office near our school.

2) by 和 beside 都表示“靠近”，实际距离不可能很远，但 beside 比 by 更具体地表示出“在……旁边”的意思。例如：

He was sitting beside her.

There is a big tree by the river.

3) at 也有“在旁边”的意思，但多表示有目的的行为所处的位置，而 by 和 beside 仅表示位置关系。例如：

The students are sitting at the desks listening to the teacher.

Several students are sitting by/beside the window talking about a

film.

3. 表示地点

at, in 和 on 表示地点的区别：

at 表示地点：

1) 用于指较小的地方。例如：

I shall wait for you at the station.

2) 用于门牌号码前。例如：

He lives at 115 Fuzhou Road.

in 表示地点：

1) 用于指较大的地方。例如：

He lives in Shanghai.

2) 虽然是很小的地方，如果说话人住在那里，也可用 in。商店、机关、学校等，若看作一个地点(point)用 at，若看作一个场所(place)用 in。比较：

{ I met him at the post-office.
{ I'm now working in the post-office.

on 表示地点，一般指与面或线接触：

1) 意为“在……上”。例如：

The picture was hanging on the wall.

He put the book on the table and sat on the chair.

2) 意为“在……旁边”。例如：

He lives in a house on the river.

Xiamen is on the sea.

New York is on the Hudson River.

但：He sails on the river every day.

3) 意为“在……(里)”。例如：

He lives on Fifth Avenue.

He has few friends on the campus.

4. 表示除外

besides, except, except for, but 的区别：

1) besides 表示“除了……以外，还有”，即把前后两个部分加起来组成一个整体，相当于 in addition to/including/together with 等。例如：

Besides Mr. Wang , we also went to see the film.

(王先生也去了)

注意 : besides 用于否定句中时 , 与 except , but 同义。例如 :

We have no other books besides (except) these.

2) except 表示“只有……除外”,即从同类的人或物中扣除,相当于 not including / but not 等。例如 :

We all went to see the film except Mr. Wang.

(王先生没去)

3) except 后面还可接名词性从句、状语从句、副词、介词短语或不定式。例如 :

A. 接名词性从句

I know nothing about that fellow except that he lives across the street.

He took nothing except what was due to him.

B. 接状语从句

My mother usually goes to work by bike except when it rains.

C. 接副词

We looked everywhere except there.

D. 接介词短语

I get up early every day except (on) Sunday.

I looked everywhere except in the bedroom.

E. 接不定式 : except 后的动词不定式带 to 或不带 to , 主要取决于 except 前是否含有动词 do。试比较 :

Mary does everything except wash the car.

However I don't know what I can do except agree to your idea.

It has no effect except to make him angry.

The windows were never opened except to air the room for a few minutes in the morning.

4) except 用在句首时,往往后面要加上 for。例如 :

Except for this , everything is in order.

= Everything is in order except this.

还应注意 except for 不在句首时,意为“除了因为……(with the exception of)”,它所叙述的事实或细节部分地修正句子的主要意思,

没有从同类的人或物中扣除的含义。例如：

The composition is very good except for a few spelling mistakes.

The village is quiet except for some birds singing in the woods.

5) but 意为“除了”，与 except 同义，except 强调被排除的部分，but 则强调整句的内容，常修饰否定意义的代词或疑问代词。例如：

Nobody knew it but me.

Who would do such a thing but Jack ?

5. 表示方位

in , to 和 on 在方位名词前的区别：

in 表示在某范围之内 例如：

Guangdong lies in the south of China.

to 表示在某范围之外的地方 例如：

Fujian lies to the south of Jiangsu Province.

on 表示“毗邻”、“接壤”。例如：

Mongolia lies on the north of China.

6. 表示“在……上/下”

above , over , on , beneath 的区别：

这四个词都有“在……上”的意思，其区别如下：

1) above “在……之上”，“高于……”(表示相对高度，不一定在正上方)，其反义词是 below。例如：

A bird is flying above the woods.

He keeps his head above water.

2) over “在……之上”(表示垂直之上或表示附于某物之上并将之遮住)，其反义词是 under。例如：

There is a lamp over our heads. (指头顶上方)

Spread a cloth over the table. (指附于某物之上)

3) on “在……之上”(表示与表面接触)。例如：

He put a map on the desk.

They sat on the grass.

4) beneath 表示位置(几乎)紧接触在某物之下：

The earth felt soft beneath our feet.

He wore a woollen vest beneath his shirt.

7. 表示方式

by, through, with 表示方式、方法,手段的区别

1) by 表示以一般的方法或方式:

We often met by appointment.

The bicycle is made by machine, not by hand.

The streets are lighted by electricity.

No one in those days could live by writing poems.

说明 表示以某种方式行事,名词前不加定冠词。例如:

by weight(以计重量的方式) by auction(以拍卖的方式)

by volume(以计体积的方式) by contract(以承包的方式)

2) by 表示传达、传递的方式或媒介:

How did you send the letter, by airmail or by e-mail?

by express 以快邮 by post 用邮寄

by letter 用信件 by radio 以无线电

3) by 表示用交通工具、通讯工具,后接名词单数,不加冠词:

He came by train but his wife came by bus.

They came by air and left by ship.

注意下面两个句子的区别:

Did you come by train? 你是坐火车来的吗?

Did you come in his car/on my bike? 你搭乘他的车(骑我的车)来的吗?

4) through 表示媒介、方法,作“以”、“通过”、“经由”解:

I obtained my position through a friend.

He succeeded through hard work.

Through a frank exchange of views, a new start has been made.

We send letters through the post office.

5) with 表示行为方式,意为“以”、“带着”、“用”:

You will get over that with practice.

He came back with some food.

I have no money with me.

We are well provided with food and clothing.

6) with 表示使用具体的工具或手段:

He writes with a pen.

We saw the strange bird with our own eyes.

He killed the mad dog with bare hands.

The streets are lighted with electric lights.

在表示通过某种手段或方式时, by 和 through 有时可通用, 但 by 的意思更明确, 用得更普通。当 through 所表达的意思超过一般的媒介手段(如上例中的 through a friend = by the influence of a friend)时, 就不能换用 by。

在表示手段时, by, through, with 有时也可换用, 但 with 的意思更明确。例如:

Through/By/With his efforts Edison succeeded in making so many useful inventions.

介词 with 引起的复合结构表示状态、境况等。

With + 名词或代词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{介词短语, 现在分词} \\ \text{过去分词, 不定式} \\ \text{形容词, 副词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{句子}$

具体用法可参阅第八章非谓语动词中的“with 引导非谓语动词及非动词的情况”一节。

8. 表示原因

through, with, from, for, at 表示原因的区别

due to, owing to, because of, on account of, thanks to 表原因的
成语介词的用法区别

1) through 表示原因, 作“因为”解, 常和 neglect, carelessness, mistake, fault 等词连用, 表示偶然或消极的原因, 如疏忽、过错、不慎等:

He cut himself through carelessness.

The experiment failed through no fault of ours.

2) with 表示原因, 指由于外界影响到内部, 意为“因为”、“由于”:

He is down with high fever.

The little girl was shivering with cold.

3) from 表示动机、疲劳、痛苦、死亡等原因:

She did it from a sense of duty.

He often dozed off from tiredness.

She felt tired from a whole day's work.

4) for 常表示为了某一目的、事业的原因

Forgive me for keeping you waiting.

The boys all jumped for joy at the news.

5) at 表示原因, 指“当听到、看到、想到”等:

She looked surprised at seeing us.

At this news they felt very glad.

6) due to 引导的介词短语常用作表语, 现代英语中也可以用作状语。例如:

Our delay is due to traffic jam.

That Shelly became a poet may have been due to his mother's influence.

Later, he was released due to poor health.

7) owing to 引导的介词短语多用作状语。例如:

Owing to his lack of experience, John failed to do the work well.

Now his crops completely failed, owing to a disease that had set in.

8) because of 和 on account of 引导的介词短语通常用作状语, 不用作表语。例如:

Because of her bad leg, Jane couldn't walk as fast as the others.

I said nothing about it because of his children's being there.

但若主语不是一个名词而是一个事实, because of 和 on account of 短语可用作表语。例如:

We stayed at home; that was because of the snow.

His health is failing; that is on account of the lack of healthy forms of exercise.

9) thanks to 引导的介词短语只作状语, 不能作表语。例如:

Thanks to your kind help, we finished early.

Thanks to your generous donation, we can rebuild our laboratory.

9. 表示价格, 比率, 对比

at, by, for, against 表示价格, 比率, 标准的区别

1) at 表示比率、单位和价格:

You bought this bike at a high price.

The population is growing at a surprising rate.

The train runs at about 120 miles an hour.

She will get it at any cost.

Normally, we walk at a/the speed of four miles per hour.

- 2) by 表示“按照”，相当于 according to：

It is nine o'clock by my watch.

I set my watch by the standard clock of the custom house.

- 3) by 表示“以……计”，其结构为：“by + the + 计量单位(必须用单数)”，但接复数数词或抽象名词表示以某种方式时前面不加冠词。
例如：

Meat is sold by the pound.

They are paid by the hour.

by the day by the week by the month by the year

by the dozen by the hundred by the thousand

The words in a book are counted $\begin{cases} \text{by thousands.} \\ \text{by the thousand.} \end{cases}$

The freight was charged by weight. 运费以重量来计算。

by accident by chance by force by hard work

by hand by heart by mistake by machine(ry)

- 4) by 表示“尺寸，距离”，“增减程度”。例如：

The hole high up in the wall is about 18 cm by 9 cm. (18 厘米长，9 厘米宽)

Industrial production rose by nearly two-fifths in the past three years.

Adam is my senior by five years.

- 5) for 表示交换或交换值：

They rented it to us for fifteen dollars a month.

He agreed to give her 500 dollars for the picture.

- 6) against 表示对比：

We have six girl students in our class this year against ten last year.

Against the U. S. dollar its value increased by more than 15 per-cent.

10. 表示属性，特性

of, with 表示属性，特性的区别

of 后面常接抽象名词，这样的 of 短语一般相当于抽象名词的形

容词。

1) 用作后置定语。例如：

A man of wisdom = a wise man

fifty years of age = fifty years old

2) 用作定语。例如：

This matter is of great importance. (= very important)

Your information is of great value to us. (= valuable)

此类抽象名词有 age, colour, help, height, length, no use, shape, size, thickness, width. 日常应用时, of 常被省略。例如：

I am afraid my book will not be (of) much help to you.

It is (of) no use learning without practice.

I want another pair of shoes (of) the same size.

3) “be of a + 名词”表示不同物质的共同性质。例如：

Birds of a feather flock together.

These songs are of a type.

4) with 表示属性,特性时,后面接的通常不是抽象名词,而是具体名词,用于说明人或事物的形状。例如：

a coat with four pockets

a magazine with a pretty girl on the cover

11. 表示比较

as 和 like 后接名词也常用来表示比较：

“as + 名词”用于描述某人的工作,身份,所扮演的角色或某物所起的作用。即比较对象“本身就是”。

Simon's working as a waiter during the summer vacation.

Use your payroll number as a password for the computer.

“like + 名词”用于比较两个看上去相似的东西。即比较对象“貌似而其实不是”。

They were behaving like children !

When Mike puts on his dark suit he looks like a waiter.

(三)注意下列短语中介词的搭配

1. 动词 + 介词/副词

about : argue , bring , care , concern , come , complain , dream , hear ,
lie , set , speak , think , worry , write , etc.

across : come , get , run , etc.

after : ask , go , look , run , etc.

against : argue , compete , defend , go , guard , lean , prevent , protest , protect , sail , stand , struggle , turn , warn , etc.

around : talk , play , show , etc.

aside : lay , put , push , set , throw , etc.

at : call , cry , gaze , glance , hesitate , laugh , tremble , wonder , work , etc.

away : blow , clear , cut , die , go , give , pass , put , throw , etc.

back : answer , bring , call , cut , hold , keep , look , put , talk , take , ring , set , write , etc.

by : come , drop , go , sit , stand , etc.

down : break , bring , burn , copy , cut , settle , etc.

for : apply , apologize , ask , answer , beg , call , care , concern , compete , excuse , hope , hunt , long , make , pay , prepare , reach , search , send , stand , strive , struggle , take , thank , wish , etc.

forward : bring , put , push , etc.

from : borrow , copy , date , defend , date , demand , escape , excuse , expect , graduate , hear , keep , prevent , protect , receive , result , separate , suffer , etc.

in : believe , break , bring , call , check , delight , drop , employ(ed) , encourage , engage(d) , experience(d) , fail , fill , give , hand , interest(ed) , join , let , lie , perform , result , share , succeed , etc.

into : change , break , bump , burst , develop , divide , get , run , turn , etc.

of : become , complain , consist , cure , demand , despair , dream , expect , hear , inform , inquire , know , learn , remind sb. , smell , talk , think , warn , etc.

off : cut , fall , give , go , keep , knock , make , pay , show , see , set , turn , etc.

on : act , agree , base , call , carry , congratulate , decide , depend , feed , improve , insist , keep , lean , live , operate , perform , rely , take , try , wait , etc.

out : break , bring , burn , carry , come , cross , die , give , help , hold ,
leave , make , put , run , send , set , try , turn , watch , wear , work ,
etc.

over : concern , cry , get , go , hand , look , run , talk , take , watch ,
win , etc.

through : carry , cut , get , go , pull , put , see , etc.

to : add , admit , agree , answer , apologize , belong , come , devote ,
lead , refer , reply , see , stick , turn , etc.

up : break , bring , call , clean , clear , come , cut , do , dress , eat ,
end , fix , go , grow , pick , put , make , mix , send , stay , take ,
think , throw , wash , etc.

with : agree , begin , compare , compete , concern , connect , deal ,
go , help , meet , provide , etc.

2. 动词 + 副词 + 介词

add up to 合计达

break away from 从中逃脱

come out with 说出 , 泄露

date back to 追溯到

get down to 着手做

go in for 从事

go through with 完成

live up to 符合 , 不辜负

look up to 尊敬

make up for 弥补

put up with 容忍 , 忍受

be up to 须由.....决定

catch up with 赶上

come up with 追上 , 想出 , 提出

do away with 废除 , 去掉

get on with 与.....相处

go on with 继续

keep up with 跟上

look down on/upon 轻视

look forward to 盼望

(be) made up of 由组成

run out of 用完 , 耗尽

3. 动词 + 名词 + 介词

catch sight of 看到

find fault with 找岔子 , 挑剔

keep an eye on 照看 , 注意

make fun of 拿.....开玩笑

make a fool of 愚弄 , 使出丑

take delight in 以.....为乐

take hold of 抓住

get rid of 摆脱 , 处理掉

have interest in 有兴趣

lose sight of 看不见 , 遗漏

make friends with 与交友

put an end to 结束

set fire to 使燃烧

take notice of 注意到

take part in 参加

take pity on 同情

take pride in 以……为自豪

take advantage of 利用, 占……的便宜

4. 形容词 + 介词

about : anxious , certain , concerned , curious , doubtful (or of) , excited , happy , nervous , uneasy , worried , etc.

at : amazed , angry , annoyed , astonished , bad , clever , delighted , disappointed , efficient , expert (or in) , good , quick , sad (or about) , shocked , skilful (or in) , slow (or in doing sth.) , etc.

for : convenient , eager , enough , famous (or as) , fit , grateful (or to sb.) , necessary , perfect , proper , qualified (or in) , ready (or to) , responsible , sorry , thankful , thirsty , etc.

from : absent , away , different , far , free , safe , separate , etc.

in : absorbed , disappointed , fortunate , honest , interested , rich , strong , weak , etc.

of : afraid , ahead , ashamed , aware , capable , careful (or with) , certain , conscious , considerate , fond , free , guilty , ignorant , independent , kind (or to) , north/south/east/west , proud , short , shy , sure (or about) , worthy , etc.

on : dependent , intent , keen , etc.

to : close , contrary , cruel , dear , deaf , devoted , equal , faithful , grateful (or for sth.) , harmful , helpful , junior , necessary , new , obvious , opposite , responsible , rude , second , sensitive , similar , strange , suitable , thankful , useful , etc.

with : angry (with sb. , at sth.) , annoyed , bored , busy (or at) , content , crowded , delighted , disappointed , faced , familiar (or to) , frank , friendly , patient , pleased , popular , satisfied , sick , strict , wrong , etc.

5. 名词 + 介词

between : balance , connection , difference , link , etc.

for : admiration , appetite , charge , consideration , demand , desire , excuse , love , material , need , respect , reason , talent , wish , etc.

in : advance , belief , increase , influence , interest , success , etc.

on : action , advice , attack , attempt (or at) , comment , dependence , discussion , drain , effect , experiment , expert , impact , impression , influence , judgement , lecture , mercy , operation , pressure , report , stress , tax , etc.

over : advantage , check , concern (or about , with , for) , control , victory , etc.

to : access , answer , attention , attitude , contribution , damage , devotion , end , entrance , guide , introduction , key , limit , note , objection , reaction , respect , response , solution , etc.

with : association , combination , conference , connection , marriage , etc.

6. 介词惯用短语

1) as

as a result 结果

as a rule 通常

as a matter of fact 事实上

as far as 就.....而言

as follows 如下

as for/to 至于,就.....而言

as is known to all 众所周知

as such 像这样的(人或物)

as regards 至于,关于

as yet 迄今,到目前

2) at

at a loss 不知所措,茫然

at any rate 无论如何

at ease 安逸

at liberty 随意,自由

at length 详细地,最终

at leisure 悠闲地,从容地

at no time 决不

at random 任意地

at the cost of 以.....为代价

at (the) best 充其量

at the latest 最迟

at the price of 以.....的价格

at the risk of 冒险

at will 随意地

at one t (it s) + 形容词最高级 处于最.....的状态

at all events 不管怎样,无论如何

at the mercy of 在.....的支配下

at large 在逃;一般说 随便地

at one s wits end 智穷才尽,不知所措

3) beyond

beyond doubt 毫无疑问

beyond belief 难以置信

beyond expression 无法形容	beyond expectation 出乎意料
beyond question 毫无疑问	beyond the reach of 够不着
beyond imagination 无法想象	
beyond one's power 超出某人能力	
beyond one's control 不受某人控制	
beyond compare/comparison 无法比喻, 无以伦比	

4) by

by accident/chance 偶然	by mistake 由于粗心大意
by means of 通过, 借助于	by agreement 经同意
by and large 大体上	by contrast 相比之下
by all means 想方设法	by no means 决不, 千万别
by virtue of 由于, 凭借	by heart 记忆, 背诵
by reason of 由于, 因为	by turns 轮流
by the way 顺便提及	by way of 经由, 取道

5) for

for the benefit of 为.....的利益	for all 虽然, 尽管
for the purpose of 为.....的目的	for fear of 生怕, 以防
for the sake of 因为.....的缘故	for short 简称
for sure/certain 肯定, 无疑	for good 永远, 一劳永逸地
for the better 好转	for the worse 恶化, 变坏

6) in

in a word 总而言之	in the case of 至于
in case of 万一, 以防	in detail 详细地
in advance 预先, 提前	in existence 现有的, 现存的
in brief 简言之	in fashion 时尚, 流行
in common 共同的	in particular 特别, 尤其
in debt 负债	in return 作为回报
in effect 有效, 实际上	in short 总之
in favour of 支持	in stock 有存货
in general 一般说来	in addition to 除.....外
in no case 决不	in contrast to 与.....相比
in a/no way 有点/决不	in honor of 尊敬 纪念
in person 亲自	in terms of 就.....来说

in relation to 关于	in the face of 面临
in regard to 关于	in the hope of 怀着.....的希望
in turn 依次, 轮流	in the light of 根据, 考虑到
in sight 看得见, 在视野内	in view of 鉴于, 考虑到
in connection with 与.....有关, 关于	
in comparison with/to 与.....相比, 与.....比较,	
7) on	
on account of 由于	on an/the average 平均说来
on behalf of 代表	on credit 赊购
on business 因公	on guard 警戒
on holiday 度假	on fire 着火
on leave 在休假	on purpose 故意
on that occasion 在那场合	on the spot 在现场; 当场
on the air 在播送	on sale 出售
8) out of	
out of balance 失去平衡	out of breath 气喘吁吁
out of control 失去控制	out of danger 脱离危险
out of date 过时	out of fashion 不合时尚
out of order 失灵; 出故障	out of proportion 不相称
out of mind 忘却; 发疯	out of range 在射程以外
out of question 不成问题	out of the question 不可能
out of sight 看不见	out of shape 走形; 状态不佳
out of stock 脱销	out of touch 失去联系
9) under	
under arrest 被拘留	under age 未成年(不满 21 岁)
under control 受控制	under consideration 在考虑中
under discussion 在讨论中	under investigation 在调查中
under repair 在修理中	under way 在进行中
10) with	
with a light heart 愉快地	with an effort 努力地
with efficiency 有效地	with ease 容易地
with one voice 一致地	with pleasure 乐意地

第三部分 分类练习

1. Mary was disappointed when she found out they had gone to the ball ____ her.
A. except B. except for C. without D. besides
2. It's the third turning ____ the left after the post office.
A. by B. in C. on D. for
3. The policeman helped the old woman ____ the street.
A. through B. past C. across D. over
4. Early ____ the morning of May 1 , we started off ____ the mountain village.
A. in ; for B. in ; to C. on ; / D. on ; for
5. How many people are there ____ your basketball team ?
A. on B. at C. among D. with
6. The tables in that restaurant are so close together that there's hardly room to move ____ them.
A. from B. between C. among D. of
7. ____ the two books that I've read , I like the second better.
A. In B. Of C. About D. Among
8. Tom sold his car ____ a thousand dollars.
A. at B. by C. for D. in
9. I bought these books ____ one yuan a copy.
A. by B. at C. for D. with
10. I planned to reach London ____ Wednesday morning , but I didn't arrive ____ Friday evening.
A. on ; on B. in ; in C. in ; till D. on ; until
11. What is the difference ____ pronunciation ____ the two words ?
A. of ; between B. in ; between C. of ; in D. in ; of
12. The experiment is intended to examine the effect ____ lack of sleep ____ healthy people.
A. for ; on B. on ; of C. from ; of D. of ; on
13. ____ the sound of the knocking ____ the door , he rose and went to open it.
A. On ; / B. At ; on C. To ; of D. With ; at
14. Please write ____ ink , and don't forget to write ____ every other line.
A. with ; at B. by ; between C. with ; in D. in ; on
15. The traveller did not know ____ which direction to go.
A. at B. to C. for D. in

16. The other day Li Ming dropped in ____ Li Fang ____ her house.
A. at ; on B. on ; at C. but ; at D. / ; on
17. Please retell the story ____ your own words.
A. with B. by C. in D. at
18. You can easily get books ____ Shakespeare at any big bookstores.
A. on B. with C. for D. to
19. There is an increase of 16% in the consumption of tobacco ____ the previous year.
A. over B. than C. to D. then
20. It was a small pocket book three inches ____ two.
A. across B. to C. for D. by
21. You can find the store ____ No. 19 Beijing Road.
A. on B. in C. at D. near to
22. We discussed the matter ____ tea and cakes.
A. at B. by C. with D. over
23. Xiao Li masters several other foreign languages ____ English.
A. beside B. but C. besides D. except
24. What one thinks and feels is mainly ____ traditions , habit and education.
A. because of B. due to C. thanks to D. owing to
25. Your bike is excellent ____ the colour.
A. except B. except for C. besides D. beside
26. I need to go and see the doctor , but I'll have to wait ____ the coming Sunday.
A. until B. on C. for D. after
27. The car crashed into the train , and the driver was killed ____ the spot.
A. by B. to C. at D. on
28. Mr. Li is an engineer ____ profession.
A. with B. by C. on D. at
29. ____ that joke , Tom burst ____ laughter.
A. At ; into B. With ; into C. On ; to D. After ; to
30. If any beast comes ____ you , I'll stay ____ you and help you.
A. to ; with B. at ; with C. to ; at D. on ; by
31. We are grateful ____ you ____ your help.
A. to ; with B. for ; for C. to ; for D. for ; with
32. The key ____ the four modernizations lies ____ the science and education.
A. to ; on B. to ; in C. of ; on D. of ; in
33. ____ its great size , the machine moves noiselessly.
A. For all B. To all C. In all D. After all
34. You shouldn't eat so much chocolate ____ meals.

- A. between B. on C. in D. at
35. Some animals sleep ____ day and wake up ____ night.
A. at ; by B. by ; by C. by ; on D. on ; in
36. I've found the cat. It was tearing the cloth ____ its teeth.
A. by B. through C. with D. in
37. Mary used to be very shy , but she has grown ____ it now.
A. out of B. over C. without D. away
38. The town lies ____ the west of the river , and a tall building lies ____ the river.
A. at ; by B. in ; at C. to ; on D. on ; beside
39. The ship sailed ____ Xiamen ____ 30 miles an hour.
A. for ; at B. to ; at C. for ; by D. to ; with
40. I am afraid you have mistaken me ____ my twin sister.
A. for B. with C. to D. by
41. "What time is it , please ?"
"It is seven ____ my watch. "
A. in B. at C. on D. by
42. It's quite warm today ____ January.
A. for B. in C. during D. on
43. How much must I pay you ____ the tickets ____ tonight ?
A. on ; of B. for ; for C. for ; of D. for ; during
44. We congratulated ____ her ____ entering college.
A. / ; on B. to ; for C. on ; for D. for ; for
45. He was elected monitor of our class by a majority of thirty votes ____ eight.
A. to B. against C. for D. by
46. The railway was opened ____ traffic ____ April 4 , 1985.
A. to ; on B. to ; in C. by ; on D. for ; on
47. French as a foreign language is second ____ importance only ____ English.
A. to ; of B. of ; in C. in ; to D. to ; in
48. She declined the invitation ____ the party because of the coming exam.
A. to B. of C. for D. on
49. "Is she older than you ?"
"Yes , she is older than I ____ two years. "
A. to B. by C. for D. over
50. Ted has been absent ____ class for quite some time.
A. for B. with C. of D. from

答案 1. DDBBC 6. DDC

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Tommy caught the school bus , ____.
A. and Jane did neither
B. but so did Jane
C. and Jane didn't either
D. but Jane didn't
- (99)2. One more week , ____ we will accomplish the task.
A. or B. so that C. and D. if
- (99)3. " It was careless of you to have left your clothes outside all night. "
" My God ! ____ . "
A. So did I B. So I did
C. So were you D. So did you
- (00)4. The news that they failed their driving test discouraged him , ____ ?
A. did they B. didn't they C. didn't D. didn't it
- (00)5. Greenland , ____ island in the world , covers over two million square kilometers.
A. it is the largest B. that is the largest
C. is the largest D. the largest
- (00)6. An awful accident ____ , however , occur the other day.
A. does B. did C. has to D. had to
- (01)7. I don't suppose anyone will volunteer , ____ ?
A. do I B. don't I C. will they D. won't they
- (01)8. Fishing is his favorite hobby , and ____ .
A. he'd like to collect coins as well
B. he feels like collecting coins , too
C. to collect coins is also his hobby.
D. collecting coins also gives him great pleasure
- (02)9. Mrs Black doesn't believe her son is able to design a digital camera , ____ .

- A. is he B. isn't he C. doesn't she D. does she
- (04)10. Bill's aim is to inform the viewers that cigarette advertising on TV is illegal, ____?
- A. isn't it B. is it C. isn't he D. is he
- (04)11. "English has a large vocabulary, hasn't it?"
- "Yes. ____ more words and expressions and you will find it easier to read and communicate."
- A. Know B. Knowing C. To know D. Known
- (05)12. There was a loud scream from the backstage immediately after the concert ended, ____.
- A. wasn't there B. was there
- C. didn't it D. did it
- (05)13. At last, we found ourselves in a pleasant park with trees providing shade and ____ down to eat our picnic lunch.
- A. sitting B. having sat C. to sit D. sat
- (07)14. The little boy came riding full speed down the motorway on his bicycle. ____ it was!
- A. What a dangerous scene
- B. What dangerous a scene
- C. How a dangerous scene
- D. How dangerous the scene

答案 1. DCBDD 6. BCDDA 11. AADA

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. The changes in the city will cost quite a lot, ____ they will save us money in the long run.
- A. or B. since C. for D. but
- (00) 2. ____ some of this juice — perhaps you'll like it.
- A. Trying B. Try C. To try D. Have tried
- (01) 3. ____ at the door before entering please.
- A. Knocked B. To knock C. Knocking D. Knock
- (05) 4. He never said that he was good at mathematics, ____?

A. was he B. wasn't he C. did he D. didn't he

答案: 1. DBDC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. You had one of your teeth pulled out yesterday, ____?
A. had you B. hadn't you C. did you D. didn't you
- (01) 2. ____ blood if you can and many lives will be saved.
A. Giving B. Give C. Given D. To give
- (02) 3. ____ role she played in the film! No wonder she has won an Oscar.
A. How interesting B. How an interesting
C. What interesting D. What an interesting
- (02) 4. Brian told you that there wasn't anyone in the room at that time, ____?
A. was there B. wasn't there C. didn't he D. did he
- (03) 5. If you want help — money or anything, let me know, ____ you?
A. don't B. will C. shall D. do
- (03) 6. Don't be discouraged. ____ things as they are and you will enjoy every day of your life.
A. Taking B. To take C. Take D. Taken
- (04) 7. There is no light in the dormitory. They must have gone to the lecture, ____?
A. didn't they B. don't they C. mustn't they D. haven't they
- (07) 8. If you talk nice and polite, people listen to you. If you shout, this is no good, ____?
A. do you B. don't you C. is it D. isn't it

答案: 1. DBDCB 6. CDC

第二部分 解题指导

只有一个主语(或并列主语)和一个谓语(或并列谓语)的句子叫

简单句。简单句可分为 4 类：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句、感叹句。下面分析这 4 种类型的句子。

(一) 陈述句

用来陈述一件事或表示一种看法。

1. 肯定式

I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.

We sincerely hope that you are in the best of health.

2. 否定式

1) 如果句子的谓语动词是 be, have 或有助动词或情态动词, 在它们之后加 not 构成否定式。例如:

He is not a student. / He has not any books.

He will not go there.

注意 not 与 and 连用时表示部分否定。例如:

He cannot read and write.

= He can read but he cannot write.

He is not rich and kind.

= He is rich but he is not kind.

2) 如果句子的谓语动词是行为动词而又没有助动词或情态动词, 在谓语动词前加 don't (第三人称用 doesn't, 过去式用 didn't)。例如:

I don't want to do that. / He doesn't like this.

3) 其他否定词如 no, hardly, never 等也可构成陈述句的否定式。例如:

He has no brothers or sisters.

I will never ride a horse.

He can hardly speak an English word.

4) 两者的全部否定用 neither 或 neither ... nor。例如:

Neither of them knows French.

Neither John nor Mary is here.

5) 两者的部分否定用 both + not。例如:

Both of them didn't attend the meeting.

他们俩并非都参加了会议。

6) 三者以上的全部否定用 none, nothing, nobody, no one 等。例如:

None of these answers is/are right.

Nobody agrees with what you said.

7) 三者以上的部分否定用某些表示总体意义的词(如 all, many, every 等)加 not 构成。例如:

Not many people like music.

Not every girl likes singing and dancing.

All these books are not mine. 这些书不都是我的。

All that glitters is not gold. 发闪光的不一定都是金子。

8) 在某些句子中,按语义本应放在 that 从句中的否定词 not 被移至主句的谓语动词中,这种否定结构主要用于表示“相信”、“臆测”等的一类动词(如 believe, expect, imagine, suppose, think 等)。例如:

I don't think it is very cold today. 我认为今天不很冷。

We don't believe that he can do it. 我们相信他做不了这件事。

(二)疑问句

疑问句用以提出问题。按结构可分为 4 种。

1. 一般疑问句

1) 谓语是 be 或 have, 将 be 或 have 放在主语前。例如:

Have you any English books?

也可说: Do you have any English books?

Is she a teacher?

2) 谓语动词是行为动词,则将助动词 do 或情态动词置于主语前面。例如:

Do you have a meeting every week?

3) 否定疑问句通常把 be, have 或情态动词和 not 的简略式 n't 一起放在句首。例如:

Isn't she a doctor?

回答时,如果是肯定,则说: Yes, she is. 如果是否定,则说: No, she isn't.

2. 特殊疑问句

1) 疑问词作主语或主语的定语时,与陈述句的语序相同。例如:

Who is in the room?

Whose father works in Beijing?

2) 疑问词作句子的宾语、状语、表语或修饰这三种成分的时候,

用“疑问词 + 一般疑问句”。例如：

Where do you come from ?

When will you go ?

注意 :who 是主格 , whom 是宾格。一般可用 who 代替 whom。但如果前面有介词 , 仍然要用 whom。例如 :

Who (Whom) are you looking for ?

With whom did you work yesterday ?

3) “ Why + 一般疑问句否定式 ”。这种结构一般表示劝告、建议、责备等。例如 :

Why don t you come earlier ?

4) 含有插入语的特殊疑问句的结构。

特殊疑问词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do you think} \\ \text{do you suppose} \\ \text{do you say} \end{array} \right\}$ + 陈述句语序

When do you think he will come ?

Which train did you say you had taken ?

What do you suppose has happened ?

3. 反意疑问句

反意疑问句分以下三类 :

第一类 :肯定的陈述句 + 否定的反意疑问句

否定的陈述句 + 肯定的反意疑问句

第二类 :肯定的陈述句 + 肯定的反意疑问句

否定的陈述句 + 否定的反意疑问句

第三类 :祈使句 / 感叹句 + 反意疑问句

1) 第一类 陈述部分为肯定形式 , 则反意部分用否定形式 ; 陈述部分用否定形式 , 则反意部分用肯定形式。

第一类的结构应注意以下 20 种情况 :

①陈述部分的谓语是表示“所有”的 have (has) , 反意部分仍用 have , 也可用 do 的适当形式。但美式英语只用 do 的适当形式。例如 :

You have a car , $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haven t / don t (英式英语)} \\ \text{don t (美式英语)} \end{array} \right\}$ you ?

若陈述部分的动词是 have 的过去时态 had , 反意部分的动词用 did。若陈述部分的动词是 have 的过去完成时态 , 反意部分的动词用

had。例如：

Ali and Stefan had another baby last year , didn't they ?

You had met him before this evening , hadn't you ?

若陈述部分为否定句，反意部分的动词取决于陈述部分的动词形式。例如：

You haven't any brothers , have you ?

He doesn't have a car , does he ?

当 have 作“让发生某情况，遭受，得到，吃”解时，反意部分用 do 的适当形式。例如：

You have Jones do the work , don't you ?

She had her watch stolen , didn't she ?

You had a long-distance call from your son , didn't you ?

They had milk and bread for breakfast , didn't they ?

②陈述部分的谓语动词是 have/has to，表示“不得不”，反意部分的谓语动词通常用 do 的适当形式。例如：

We have to get up at four tomorrow , don't we ?

They had to leave early , didn't they ?

③陈述部分的谓语是 had better，反意部分用 hadn't。例如：

You had better take off your shoes , hadn't you ?

You'd better not wake me up , had you ?

④陈述部分的谓语是 there be，反意部分也用 there be 形式。例如：

There is a radio on the table , isn't there ?

There has been a great increase in retail sales , hasn't there ?

There won't be any trouble , will there ?

⑤陈述部分的谓语动词为 used to 时，其反意部分的谓语动词可采取两种形式。例如：

He used to live in London , $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{use(d) n't he ? (英式英语)} \\ \text{didn't he ? (美式英语)} \end{array} \right.$

⑥陈述部分的谓语是 ought to，反意部分的谓语动词通常用 ought，美式英语用 should。例如：

Such things ought not to be allowed , ought they ?

He ought to be punished , $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{oughtn't} \\ \text{shouldn't} \end{array} \right.$ he ?

但在正式文体中，用 ought we not 形式。例如：

We ought to go, $\begin{cases} \text{ought we not?} \\ \text{should we not?} \end{cases}$

⑦陈述部分有 dare 或 need 时，若 dare 和 need 为实义动词，疑问部分的谓语用 do 的适当形式；dare 和 need 为情态动词，疑问部分用 dare 或 need 构成。例如：

We need to do it, don't we?

You daren't go there, dare you?

⑧含有情态动词 must 的反意疑问句要注意以下情况：

表示有必要

若陈述部分的 must 表示“有必要”时，附加疑问句部分则用 needn't。例如：

You must go home right now, needn't you?

He must see the doctor, needn't he?

表示必须

若陈述部分的 must 表示“必须”时，附加疑问句部分则用 mustn't。例如：

The car must be locked, mustn't it?

I must hand in the exercise-book before eight, mustn't I?

表示禁止

若陈述部分的 mustn't 表示禁止时，附加疑问部分用 must。例如：

You mustn't walk on grass, must you?

表示对现在情况的推测

若陈述部分强调对现在情况的推测，“must + be”的结构，疑问部分“用 aren't/isn't + 主语”；“must + do”结构，疑问部分用“don't/doesn't + 主语”。例如：

You must be tired, aren't you?

He must be working very hard, isn't he?

He must see her a lot, doesn't he?

You must have many friends, don't you?

表示对过去情况的推测

若陈述部分强调对过去情况的推测，谓语动词是“must have + 过

去分词”时,有两种情况:

一是有过去时间状语,或明显指过去时,疑问部分的谓语动词用过去式“didn't/weren't + 主语”。例如:

He must have met her yesterday, didn't he?

You must have been tired after a long walk, weren't you?

二是没有过去时间状语,或明显强调对现在的影响时,疑问部分的谓语动词用完成式“haven't/hasn't + 主语”。例如:

You must have seen the film, haven't you?

He knows a lot about Barcelona. He must have been there, hasn't he?

⑨陈述部分有 no, never, hardly, seldom, few, little, nowhere, nothing 等否定或半否定词,反意部分用肯定形式。例如:

He is hardly 14 years old, is he?

You seldom send him an e-mail, do you?

⑩陈述部分谓语出现否定词缀时(前缀或后缀),或谓语动词有否定意义,反意部分仍用否定形式。例如:

He is unfit for his office, isn't he?

He failed to pass the exam, didn't he?

⑪陈述部分的主语有否定意义,反意部分用肯定形式。陈述部分的宾语有否定意义,反意部分可用肯定或否定形式。例如:

No books are perfect, are they?

Nothing could stop him, could it?

He said nothing at the meeting, { did he?
didn't he?

⑫陈述部分的主语为 everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody 等不定代词,其疑问部分的主语在英式英语中改用 they。例如:

Everybody enjoyed the party, didn't they?

Somebody tried to take the picture away, didn't they?

No one was hurt, were they?

在正式文体中常用 he。例如:

Nobody says a word about the incident, doesn't he?

⑬陈述部分的主语是 something, anything, everything, nothing 或

指示代词 this , that , 或名词性从句、动词不定式、动名词等, 疑问部分的主语可用 it , 它在形式上与前者不同, 但在逻辑上是与前者一致的。例如:

Everything looks fresh , doesn't it ?

This is your mother , isn't it ?

What she said was believable , wasn't it ?

Getting up early is very important , isn't it ?

但 these , those 作主语时, 反意部分要用 they。例如:

These are not books , are they ?

⑭陈述部分的主语是“none of + 名词”, 反意部分用肯定式, 但它的人称和数要与 of 后的名词保持一致。例如:

None of the students are from Japan , are they ?

None of the news sounds true , does it ?

⑮陈述部分是 I m 结构, 疑问部分一般用 aren't I ? / ain't I ? 或 am I not ? 如:

I m late , $\begin{cases} \text{aren't I ? (非正式)} \\ \text{ain't I ? (非正式)} \\ \text{am I not ? (正式)} \end{cases}$

⑯陈述部分以不定代词 one 作主语, 疑问部分的主语在正式场合用 one , 在非正式场合用 you , 美式英语可用 he。例如:

One can't be too careful , can $\begin{cases} \text{one ? (正式场合)} \\ \text{you ? (非正式)} \\ \text{he ? (美式英语)} \end{cases}$

⑰陈述部分的谓语动词是表示愿望的 wish , 疑问部分的谓语动词用 may , 而且前后两个部分均用肯定式。例如:

I wish to go home now , may I ?

⑱陈述部分是主从复合句, 反意部分的主语一般要与主句的主语一致。例如:

You were in the factory when I last saw you , weren't you ?

There was a loud scream from the backstage immediately after the concert ended , wasn't there ?

⑲陈述部分是主从复合句, 但主句是 I (don't) think 等时, 反意部分应和宾语从句中的动词和主语保持一致。

I (don't) think I (don't) believe I (don't) suppose I (don't) expect I'm afraid	} + 宾语从句 +	{ 反意疑问句 (反意疑问句的构成： 要求和宾语从句中的 动词和主语保持一致， 并注意否定的转移)
---	------------	---

例如：

I don't think he can finish the work, can he?

I don't believe she knows it, does she?

I suppose he is serious, isn't he?

但 :You don't think he can finish the work, do you?

②有 and, but, yet, for, or, so 等连结的并列句, 反意疑问部分要和邻近的分句保持一致。例如：

He is over 70 years old, but he keeps doing physical exercise every day, doesn't he?

She isn't a diligent student, for it is the third time that she has been late for school, isn't it?

2) 第二类 陈述部分用肯定形式, 反意部分也用肯定形式。陈述部分用否定形式, 反意部分也用否定形式。常用于表示关心、讥讽、惊讶、感叹、怀疑、愤怒等感情(常用升调)。例如：

You are not feeling well, aren't you? (表示关心)

So that's your little trick, is it? (表示讥讽)

You don't like the film, don't you? (表示惊讶)

Your bike is outside, is it? (表示怀疑)

You want to fool me, do you? (表示愤怒)

3) 第三类 祈使句和感叹句的反意疑问句。

①祈使句的反意疑问句可用 "will/won't you? can/can't you? could/would you?" 等。这种反意疑问句仅表达一种委婉的语气。否定祈使句的反意疑问句一般用肯定式 "will you?" 例如：

Have a cup of tea, will/won't you?

Stop talking, can/can't you?

Pass me the salt, could/would you?

Don't open the window, will you?

②感叹句的反意疑问句一律用 be 的一般现在时否定式。主语指

人时反意部分主语用 he, you 等 ;主语是物 ,反意部分主语用 it。例如 :

What a funny man , isn't he ?

How cool the weather is , isn't it ?

③Let s (包括对方)的反意疑问句用 “ shall we ?” ;Let us (不包括对方)的反意疑问句用 “ will you ? /won't you ?”。例如 :

Let's take a rest , shall we ?

Let us/him/them do it , will/won't you ?

4. 选择疑问句

选择疑问句是用 or 连接询问的两部分 ,以供选择 ,答案必须是完整的句子或其省略式 ,不能用 Yes 或 No。例如 :

Do you go to work by bus or by bike ?

回答是 : I go to work by bus. 或 :By bus.

(三) 祈使句

1. 祈使句的肯定式和否定式

祈使句常省略主语。肯定式用动词原形开头 ;否定式用 “ Don't (Never) + 动词原形 ”或 “ No + -ing ”构成。例如 :

Get up !

Be careful !

Don't do that again !

Don't be afraid !

Never put off till tomorrow what can be done today.

No parking/spitting !

2. 祈使句的进行式和被动式

祈使句通常表示一种即时或将来的情况 ,但有时也可有进行式和被动式。例如 :

Be waiting till we are back.

Be loved rather than honored. 受人爱比受人尊敬好。

Get refreshed by sleep. 通过睡眠恢复精神。

Don't be made to look foolish !

3. 祈使句表条件和让步

Drink too much , and you will injure your health.

One more effort , and you will succeed.

Work hard , or you will fail.

Come what may , we must not lose courage.

Be it ever so humble , there is no place like home.

注意 :具体用法还可参阅第十一章复合句中的“条件状语从句”和第十三章倒装中的“用于几个特殊结构的让步状语从句。”

4. 祈使句中保留主语的情况

1) 祈使句的主语一般都是第二人称,但常省略。以下情况主语 you 可以保留:

①为了引起对方重视,或表示不耐烦,但主语 you 必须重读。例如:

You be quiet !

You come here , Tom !

Don't you be anxious ! 你不要担心。

Don't you say that again ! 你不要再那样说了。

②同时命令两个人时。例如:

You stay here and you see him as far as the station.

③主语 you 和称呼语合用时。例如:

You sit here beside me , John.

Peter , you read.

2) 祈使句也可使用第三人称做主语。例如:

Somebody open the door. 来人把门打开。

Nobody move. 谁也别动。

Men in the front row take one step forward.

注意 :第三人称的否定祈使句也可带主语。例如:

Don't anyone open the door. 谁也别开门。

(四) 感叹句

感叹句用以表达快乐、痛苦等强烈感情,有以 how 引导或以 what 引导两种形式。

1. 用 How 引导的感叹句

1) How + 形容词(副词) + 主语 + 谓语。例如:

How beautiful the flower is !

How fluently he speaks English !

2) how 修饰动词,句型是“ How + 主语 + 谓语”。例如:

How the wind blows !

3) “ How + 形容词(副词)”(省略主语和谓语)。例如:

How interesting (it is) !

2. 用 What 引导的感叹句

1) What (a) + 名词 ! 例如 :

What fun ! 多么有趣 !

2) What (a) + (形容词) 名词 + 主语 + 谓语。例如 :

What a beautiful picture it is !

第三部分 分类练习

1. It's the third time that John has been late , ____ ?
A. hasn't he B. isn't he C. isn't it D. hasn't it
2. " She isn't a dancing teacher , is she ? " " ____ . "
A. Yes , she isn't B. No , she is C. Yes , she wasn't D. No , but she was
3. He studies hard and he is the best student in his class , ____ ?
A. doesn't he B. isn't he C. does he D. is he
4. ____ trouble she is in when she needs help while there is no one to help her.
A. What a great B. How great C. What great D. How greatly
5. The workers can't have finished their work yet , ____ ?
A. can they B. are they C. have they D. do they
6. Those are little boys , ____ ?
A. aren't they B. are they C. aren't those D. are those
7. It was in the street that I saw her , ____ ?
A. was it B. didn't I C. did I D. wasn't it
8. Nobody wants to waste time watching boring plays , ____ ?
A. does it B. do they C. is he D. are they
9. She had a good time in the park , ____ ?
A. hadn't she B. didn't she C. hasn't she D. wouldn't she
10. Better late than never , ____ ?
A. will you B. won't you C. isn't it D. shall we
11. ____ to travel by boat on a hot summer night !
A. How pleasant is B. So pleasant
C. Such a pleasure D. How pleasant it is
12. ____ weather we are having today !
A. What a fine B. What fine C. How fine D. How fine a
13. You think he is a doctor , ____ ?
A. is he B. isn't he C. do you D. don't you

14. _____ he gave you !
A. What good advice B. How good advice
C. What a good advice D. How good advices
15. There s little time left , _____ ?
A. is there B. is it C. isn t there D. isn t it
16. Tom is a teacher. Jack is a worker. _____.
A. Both of them are not doctors B. Neither of them is a doctor
C. All of them are not doctors D. Neither Tom nor Jack are doctors
17. A. All that glitters(闪闪发亮) is not gold. B. All is not gold that glitters.
C. None is gold that glitters. D. Not all gold glitters.
- The correct statements are _____.
- A. A and C B. B and C C. C and D D. A and B
18. Five minutes earlier _____ we could have caught the early bus.
A. or B. and C. but D. so
19. Let us pass , _____ ?
A. shan t we B. shall we C. won t we D. will you
20. Milk bottles need cleaning thoroughly before they are used again , _____ they ?
A. needn t B. don t C. mustn t D. aren t
21. The suit s finished , _____ ?
A. doesn t it B. isn t it C. has it D. hasn t it
22. Be polite to your parents. _____ you say that again.
A. Do B. Didn t C. Don t D. Did
23. There are eight tips in Dr Roger s lecture on sleep , and one of them is : _____ to bed early unless you think it is necessary.
A. don t go B. not to go C. doesn t go D. not going
24. During the examination we were supposed to stay in our seats , keep our eyes on our work , _____ to anyone.
A. but could not talk B. rather than speak
C. and not speak D. instead of speaking
25. I wish to call on you tonight , _____ ?
A. do I B. will I C. must I D. may I
26. We don t think his sister will come tonight , _____ ?
A. won t she B. will she C. don t we D. do we
27. She has breakfast at six every day , _____ ?
A. has she B. hasn t she C. does she D. doesn t she
28. Nothing seems to please her , _____ ?
A. does it B. doesn t it C. is it D. isn t it

29. I've never seen anyone run so fast. — ____ David go.
 A. Just watch B. Just to watch C. Just watching D. Just having watch
30. ____ straight on and you'll see a church. You can't miss it.
 A. Go B. Going C. If you go D. When going
31. The man in blue must be your brother , ____ ?
 A. mustn't he B. needn't he C. isn't he D. is he
32. I don't think he will come to our party , ____ ?
 A. will he B. won't he C. does he D. do I
33. I suppose he's serious , ____ ?
 A. do I B. don't I C. is he D. isn't he
34. Mr Wang said you were not there then , ____ ?
 A. did he B. were you C. didn't he D. weren't you
35. You daren't say that to him , ____ ?
 A. dare you B. do you C. daren't you D. don't you
36. You must have read about Dickens long ago , ____ ?
 A. mustn't you B. haven't you C. wasn't it D. didn't you
37. You'd better not smoke here , ____ ?
 A. will you B. shall you C. have you D. had you
38. There has never been anybody like you , ____ ?
 A. has he B. has it C. has there D. is it ?
39. There used to be a church behind the cemetery , ____ ?
 A. didn't there B. used there C. usedn't it D. didn't it
40. What a lovely day , ____ ?
 A. doesn't it B. hasn't it C. won't it D. isn't it
41. You must have been there before , ____ ?
 A. have you B. did you C. haven't you D. didn't you
42. He isn't a diligent student , for it is the third time that he has been late for school , ____ .
 A. is he B. hasn't he C. has he D. isn't it
43. You must have been in Beijing last month , ____ ?
 A. aren't you B. did you C. weren't you D. didn't you
44. She dislikes this skirt , ____ ?
 A. doesn't she B. does she C. isn't she D. is she
45. Oh , so many letters ! You must have lots of friends , ____ ?
 A. mustn't you B. don't you C. didn't you D. have you
46. " You and Jack used to be unfriendly with each other , is it true ?"
 " ____ . But it's different now. "

- A. So we were B. So we did
C. Neither were we D. Nor did we
47. ____ blood if you can and many lives will be saved.
A. Giving B. Give C. Given D. To give
48. "Mary , you clean the classroom today , ____ ?"
"But I cleaned it yesterday. "
A. do you B. will you C. didn't you D. don't you
49. Chinese must have the largest number of speakers , ____ ?
A. mustn't that B. haven't they C. don't they D. doesn't it
50. If I knew the answer , I wouldn't be asking , ____ ?
A. don't I B. did I C. would I D. wouldn't I

第十一章 复 合 句

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Why do you want a new job ____ you ve got such a good one already ?
A. that B. where C. which D. when
- (99)2. " I m going to the post office. "
" ____ you re there , can you get me some stamps ?"
A. As B. While C. Because D. If
- (99)3. ____ you ve got a chance , you might as well make full use of it.
A. Now that B. After C. Although D. As soon as
- (99)4. " I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week. "
" Is that ____ you had a few days off ?"
A. why B. when C. what D. where
- (99)5. You should make it a rule to leave things ____ you can find them again.
A. when B. where C. then D. there
- (99)6. Carol said the work would be done by October , ____ personally I doubt very much.
A. it B. that C. when D. which
- (99)7. We ll have to finish the job , ____.
A. long it takes however B. it takes however long
C. long however it takes D. however long it takes
- (00)8. Someone called me up in the middle of the night , but they hung up ____ I could answer the phone.
A. as B. since C. until D. before
- (00)9. Dorothy was always speaking highly of her role in the play , ____ , of course , made the others unhappy.

- A. who B. which C. this D. what
- (00)10. The WTO cannot live up to its name ____ it does not include a country that is home to one fifth of mankind.
- A. as long as B. while C. if D. even though
- (01)11. The film brought the hours back to me ____ I was taken good care of in that far-away village.
- A. until B. that C. when D. where
- (01)12. The home improvements have taken what little there is ____ my spare time.
- A. from B. in C. of D. at
- (01)13. A computer can only do ____ you have instructed it to do.
- A. how B. after C. what D. when
- (01)14. ____ is known to everybody , the moon travels round the earth once every month.
- A. It B. As C. That D. What
- (02)15. John shut everybody out of the kitchen ____ he could prepare his grand surprise for the party.
- A. which B. when C. so that D. as if
- (03)16. Don't be afraid of asking for help ____ it is needed.
- A. unless B. since C. although D. when
- (03)17. We're going to the bookstore in John's car. You can come with us ____ you can meet us there later.
- A. but B. and C. or D. then
- (04)18. George Orwell , ____ was Eric Arthur , wrote many political novels and essays.
- A. the real name B. what his real name
- C. his real name D. whose real name
- (04)19. ____ is reported in the newspapers , talks between the two countries are making progress.
- A. It B. As C. That D. What
- (04)20. We cannot figure out ____ quite a number of insects , birds , and animals are dying out.
- A. that B. as C. why D. when

- (05)21. "Somebody wants you on the telephone. "
 " _____ no one knows I'm here. "
 A. For B. And C. But D. So
- (05)22. As soon as he comes back , I'll tell him when _____ and see him.
 A. you will come B. will you come
 C. you come D. do you come
- (05)23. I'd like to arrive 20 minutes early _____ I can have time for a cup of tea.
 A. as soon as B. as a result C. in case D. so that
- (05)24. "Why does she always ask you for help ?"
 "There is no one else _____ , is there ?"
 A. who to turn to B. she can turn to
 C. for whom to turn D. for her to turn
- (06)25. - Could you do me a favor ?
 - It depends on _____ it is.
 A. which B. whichever C. what D. whatever
- (06)26. Women _____ drink more than two cups of coffee a day have a greater chance of having heart disease than those _____ don't.
 A. who ; / B. / ; who C. who ; who D. / ; /
- (06)27. _____ you've tried it , you can't imagine how pleasant it is.
 A. Unless B. Because C. Although D. When
- (06)28. He found it increasingly difficult to read , _____ his eyesight was beginning to fail.
 A. and B. for C. but D. or
- (07)29. We shouldn't spend our money testing so many people most of _____ are healthy.
 A. that B. which C. what D. whom
- (07)30. - Where's that report ?
 - I brought to you _____ you were in Mr Black's office yesterday.
 A. if B. when C. because D. before
- (07)31. Leave your key with a neighbor _____ you lock yourself out one day.
 A. ever since B. even if C. soon after D. in case

答案 1. DBAAB 6. DDDBC 11. CCCBC 16. DCDBC
21. CADBC 26. CABDB 31. D

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. ____ caused the accident is still a complete mystery.
A. What B. That C. How D. Where
- (98)2. I thought her nice and honest ____ I met her.
A. first time B. for the first time
C. the first time D. by the first time
- (98)3. ____ journalism seems like a good profession , I would prefer to be a teacher.
A. Although B. Even C. No matter D. Now that
- (98)4. I had neither a raincoat nor an umbrella. ____ I got wet through.
A. It s the reason B. That s why
C. There s why D. It s how
- (98)5. He made another wonderful discovery , ____ of great importance to science.
A. which I think is B. which I think it is
C. which I think it D. I think is
- (98)6. He was very rude to the Customs officer , ____ of course made things even worse.
A. who B. whom C. what D. which
- (98)7. It was a matter of ____ would take the position.
A. who B. whoever C. whom D. whomever
- (98)8. Mrs. Brown was much disappointed to see the washing machine she had had ____ went wrong again.
A. it B. it repaired C. repaired D. to be repaired
- (99)9. ____ has helped to save the drowning girl is worth praising.
A. Who B. The one C. Anyone D. Whoever
- (99)10. ____ is mentioned above , the number of the students in senior high schools is increasing.
A. Which B. As C. That D. It
- (99)11. ____ your composition carefully , some spelling mistakes can be

avoided.

A. Having checked

B. Checked

C. If you check

D. To check

(99)12. _____ everybody knows about it , I don t want to talk any more.

A. For

B. Even

C. Since

D. However

(99)13. He _____ to the lab than he set out to do the experiment.

A. has no sooner got

B. no sooner got

C. will no sooner get

D. had no sooner got

(00)14. _____ she couldn t understand was _____ fewer and fewer students showed interest in her lessons.

A. What ; why

B. That ; what

C. What ; because

D. Why ; that

(00)15. Recently I bought an ancient Chinese vase , _____ was very reasonable.

A. which price

B. the price of which

C. its price

D. the price of whose

(00)16. Someone is ringing the doorbell. Go and see _____.

A. who is he

B. who he is

C. who is it

D. who it is

(00)17. She found her calculator _____ she lost it.

A. where

B. when

C. in which

D. that

(01)18. Information has been put forward _____ more middle school graduates will be admitted into universities.

A. while

B. that

C. when

D. as

(01)19. He s got himself into a dangerous situation _____ he is likely to lose control over the plane.

A. where

B. which

C. while

D. why

(02)20. Alec asked the policeman _____ he worked to contact him whenever there was an accident.

A. with him

B. who

C. with whom

D. whom

(02)21. There s a feeling in me _____ we ll never know what a UFO is — not ever.

A. that

B. which

C. of which

D. what

(02)22. He was about to tell me the secret _____ someone patted him on

the shoulder.

A. as B. until C. while D. when

(02)23. Perseverance is a kind of quality — and that's _____ it takes to do anything well.

A. what B. that C. which D. why

(03)24. "How far apart do they live?"

"_____ I know, they live in the same neighbourhood. "

A. As long as B. As far as
C. As well as D. As often as

(03)25. A good storyteller must be able to hold his listeners' curiosity _____ he reaches the end of the story.

A. when B. unless C. after D. until

(03)26. It is pretty well understood _____ controls the flow of carbon dioxide in and out the atmosphere today.

A. that B. when C. what D. how

(03)27. I can think of many cases _____ students obviously knew a lot of English words and expressions but couldn't write a good essay.

A. why B. which C. as D. where

(03)28. "Dad, I've finished my assignment. "

"Good, and _____ you play or watch TV, you mustn't disturb me. "

A. whenever B. whether C. whatever D. no matter

(03)29. There is a new problem involved in the popularity of private cars _____ road conditions need _____.

A. that ; to be improved B. which ; to be improved
C. where ; improving D. when ; improving

(04)30. American women usually identify their best friend as someone _____ they can talk frequently.

A. who B. as
C. about which D. with whom

(04)31. After Yang Liwei succeeded in circling the earth, _____ our astronauts desire to do is walk in space.

A. where B. what C. that D. how

- (04)32. Jasmine was holidaying with her family in a wildlife park ____ she was bitten on the leg by a lion.
A. when B. while C. since D. once
- (04)33. Parents should take seriously their children's requests for sunglasses ____ eye protection is necessary in sunny weather.
A. because B. though C. unless D. if
- (04)34. A story goes ____ Elizabeth I of England liked nothing more than being surrounded by clever and qualified noblemen at court.
A. when B. where C. what D. that
- (05)35. He transplanted the little tree to the garden ____ it was the best time for it.
A. where B. when C. that D. until
- (05)36. If a shop has chairs ____ women can park their men, women will spend more time in the shop.
A. that B. which C. when D. where
- (06)37. A dozen ideas were considered ____ the chief architect decided on the design of the building.
A. because B. before C. whether D. unless
- (06)38. One advantage of playing the guitar is ____ it can give you a great deal of pleasure.
A. how B. why C. that D. when
- (06)39. In an hour, we can travel to places ____ would have taken our ancestors days to reach.
A. where B. when C. which D. what
- (06)40. My parents were quarrelling about me ____ I could not quite tell why.
A. since B. though C. if D. until
- (06)41. He spoke proudly of his part in the game, without mentioning ____ his teammates had done.
A. what B. which C. why D. while
- (07)42. Pop music is such an important part of society ____ it has even influenced our language.
A. as B. that C. which D. where

- (07)43. His movie won several awards at the film festival , ____ was beyond his wildest dream.
A. which B. that C. where D. it
- (07)44. Small sailboats can easily turn over in the water ____ they are not managed carefully.
A. though B. before C. until D. if
- (07)45. ____ he referred to in his article was unknown to the general reader.
A. That B. What C. Whether D. Where
- (07)46. The traditional view is ____ we sleep because our brain is “ programmed ” to make us do so.
A. when B. why C. whether D. that

答案 1. ACABA 6. DACDB 11. CCDAB 16. DABAC
21. ADABD 26. CDBAD 31. BAADB 36. DBCCB
41. ABADB 46. D

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. The result of the experiment was very good , ____ we hadn't expected.
A. when B. that C. which D. what
- (00) 2. It was an exciting moment for these football fans this year , ____ for the first time in years their team won the World Cup.
A. that B. while C. which D. when
- (00) 3. John may phone tonight. I don't want to go out ____ he phones.
A. as long as B. in order that C. in case D. so that
- (00) 4. These wild flowers are so special I would do ____ I can to save them.
A. whatever B. that C. which D. whichever
- (01) 5. The men will have to wait all day ____ the doctor works faster.
A. if B. unless C. whether D. that
- (01) 6. John said he'd been working in the office for an hour , ____ was true.

- A. he B. this C. which D. who
- (01) 7. "Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her?"
 "Yes. I gave it to her ____ I saw her. "
- A. while B. the moment C. suddenly D. once
- (02) 8. The famous basketball star , ____ tried to make a comeback , attracted a lot of attention.
- A. where B. when C. which D. who
- (03) 9. "Are you still thinking about yesterday's game?"
 "Oh , that's ____."
- A. what makes me feel excited
 B. whatever I feel excited about
 C. how I feel about it
 D. when I feel excited
- (03) 10. "Was his father very strict with him when he was at school?"
 "Yes. He had never praised him ____ he became one of the top student in the grade. "
- A. after B. unless C. until D. when
- (03) 11. We are living in an age ____ many things are done on computer.
- A. which B. that C. whose D. when
- (04) 12. Luckily , we'd brought a road map without ____ we would have lost our way.
- A. it B. that C. this D. which
- (04) 13. We were swimming in the lake ____ suddenly the storm started.
- A. when B. while C. until D. before
- (04) 14. The shop doesn't open until 11 a. m. , ____ it loses a lot of business.
- A. for B. or C. but D. so
- (04) 15. ____ I can see , there is only one possible way to keep away from the danger.
- A. As long as B. As far as C. Just as D. Even if
- (05) 16. It is almost five years ____ we saw each other last time.
- A. before B. since C. after D. when
- (05) 17. Do you still remember the chicken farm ____ we visited three

months ago ?

A. where B. when C. that D. what

(05)18. Lost one hour in the morning ____ you will be looking for it the rest of the day.

A. but B. and C. or D. so

(05)19. Simon thought his computer was broken ____ his little brother pointed out that he had forgotten to turn it on.

A. until B. unless C. after D. because

答案 : 1. CDCAB 6. CBDAC 11. DDADB 16. BCBA

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

(00) 1. The suit fitted him well ____ the colour was a little brighter.

A. except for B. except that
C. except when D. besides

(00) 2. Eat ____ cake you like and leave the others for ____ comes in late.

A. any ; who B. every ; whoever
C. whichever ; whoever D. either ; whoever

(00) 3. The gentleman ____ you told me yesterday proved to be a thief.

A. who B. about whom C. whom D. with whom

(00) 4. I told him what I was surprised ____ his attitude towards his study.

A. is B. was C. at is D. at was

(00) 5. There was no news ; ____ , she did not give up hope.

A. moreover B. therefore C. but D. nevertheless

(00) 6. I shall stay in the hotel all day ____ there is news of the missing child.

A. in case B. no matter C. in any case D. ever since

(00) 7. These houses are sold at such a low price ____ people expected.

A. like B. as C. that D. which

(00) 8. You seem to show interest in cooking. What ? ____ , I m getting tired of it.

- A. On the contrary B. To the contrary
C. On the other hand D. To the other hand
- (01) 9. What the doctors really doubt is ____ my mother will recover from the serious disease soon.
A. when B. how C. whether D. why
- (01) 10. Have you seen the film "Titanic" , ____ leading actor is world famous ?
A. its B. it s C. whose D. which
- (01) 11. Little Tommy was reluctant to tell the schoolmaster ____ he had done the day before.
A. that B. how C. where D. what
- (01) 12. You will succeed in the end ____ you give up halfway.
A. even if B. as though C. as long as D. unless
- (02) 13. ____ fashion differs from country to country may reflect the cultural differences from one aspect.
A. What B. That C. This D. Which
- (02) 14. The famous scientist grew up ____ he was born and in 1930 he came to Shanghai.
A. when B. whenever C. where D. wherever
- (02) 15. Is this the reason ____ at the meeting for his carelessness in his work ?
A. he explained B. what he explained
C. how he explained D. why he explained
- (02) 16. When you answer questions in a job interview , please remember the golden rule : Always give the monkey exactly ____ he wants.
A. what B. which C. when D. that
- (03) 17. I would appreciate it ____ you call back this afternoon for the doctor s appointment.
A. until B. if C. when D. that
- (03) 18. ____ has been announced , we shall have our final exams next month.
A. That B. As C. It D. What
- (03) 19. ____ made the school proud was ____ more than 90% of the

students had been admitted to key universities.

A. What ; because

B. What ; that

C. That ; what

D. That ; because

(04)20. A fast food restaurant is the place _____ , just as the name suggests , eating is performed quickly.

A. which

B. where

C. there

D. what

(04)21. The other day , my brother drove his car down the street at _____ I thought was a dangerous speed.

A. as

B. which

C. what

D. that

(04)22. Along with the letter was his promise _____ he would visit me this coming Christmas.

A. which

B. that

C. what

D. whether

(04)23. _____ , I have to put it away and focus my attention on study this week.

A. However the story is amusing

B. No matter amusing the story is

C. However amusing the story is

D. No matter how the story is amusing

(05)24. I want to know _____ the thief was caught on the spot.

A. which

B. that

C. what

D. whether

(05)25. The United States is made up of fifty states , one of _____ is separated from the others by the Pacific Ocean.

A. them

B. those

C. which

D. whose

(05)26. Don't leave the sharp knife _____ our little Jane can get it.

A. in which

B. to which

C. that

D. where

(06)27. These shoes look very good. I wonder _____.

A. how much cost they are

B. how much do they cost

C. how much they cost

D. how much are they cost

(06)28. _____ most of the earth's surface is covered by water , fresh water is very rare and precious.

A. As

B. Once

C. If

D. Although

(06)29. Doris' success lies in the fact _____ she is co-operative and eager to learn from others.

- A. which B. that C. when D. why
- (06)30. You can find whatever you need at the shopping centre , ____ is always busy at the weekend.
- A. that B. where C. what D. which
- (07)31. The thought of going back home was ____ kept him happy while he was working abroad.
- A. that B. all that C. all what D. which
- (07)32. ____ there is a snowstorm or some other bad weather , the mail always comes on time.
- A. Because B. If C. When D. Unless
- (07)33. By improving reading skills , you can read faster and understand more of ____ you read.
- A. that B. what C. which D. whether
- (07)34. ____ tomorrow , our ship will set sail for Macao.
- A. However the weather is like
- B. However is the weather like
- C. Whatever is the weather like
- D. Whatever the weather is like

答案 : 1. BCBDD 6. ABACC 11. DDBCA 16. ABBBB
21. CBCDC 26. DCDBD 31. BDBD

第二部分 解题指导

复合句是由一个主句加一个或几个从句构成的句子。从句只用作句子的一个成分,不能独立。根据从句在句子中的作用,可分为名词性从句、形容词性从句(定语从句)和副词性从句(状语从句)三类。

(一) 名词性从句

名词性从句包括主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句、宾语从句。其关联词有连接词 that , if , whether ,连接代词 who , what , which ,连接副词 when , where , how , why 等。

1. 主语从句

1) 主语从句在句中做主语。它可以放在主句谓语动词之前,但

多数情况下由 it 作形式主语，而把主语从句放在主句之后。引导主语从句的词有连词 that, whether 连接代词 who, what, which 连接副词 when, where, how, why 等。例如：

That she was able to come made us very happy.

Whether she will come or not is still a question.

What we need is more time.

Who will go makes no difference.

Which team will win the match is still unknown.

When they will start is not known yet.

Where she has gone is a mystery.

How this happened is not clear.

Why he did that wasn't quite clear.

2) 主语从句常用 it 作形式主语，注意下列常用句型：

It is + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{名词} \\ \text{形容词} \\ \text{过去分词} \end{array} \right\}$ + 主语从句

It is still a question whether she will come or not.

It is strange that you should like him.

It is still unknown which team will win the match.

此外，以下结构也较多见：

It turned out that	结果是……
It has been found that	已经发现……
It has been proved that	已经证明……
It happened/occurred that	恰好……
It is well-known that	众所周知……
It is said/reported that	据说/报导……
It must be pointed out that	必须指出……
It doesn't matter whether	是否……都没关系
It makes no difference whether	是否……毫无区别

2. 表语从句

1) 表语从句位于系动词之后，由 that 引导，起连接作用的 that 有时可省略。引导表语从句的词还有 whether, as if; 代词 who, what, which 副词 when, where, how, why 等。如：

The fact is (that) she never liked him.

It could be this part of the ice sheet is not necessarily sensitive to global warming.

这可能是此处的冰层覆盖对全球变暖不那么敏感。

The question is who can complete the difficult task.

2) 用 because 引导的表语从句仅限于以下一个句型

This/That/It is because (that)

I think it's because you are doing too much.

It may be because I am no mathematician.

3) 主语是 reason 时, 表语从句不可用 why 或 because 引导, 只能用 that.

The reason why is that + 表语从句

One reason why Hamlet is such a successful play is that it appeals to many different people.

4) 表语从句不能用 if 引导, 但可用 as if 引导。例如:

He looked as if he was going to cry.

3. 同位语从句

1) 同位语从句跟在名词后面, 进一步说明该名词的具体内容, 或对该名词作进一步解释。可跟同位语从句的通常是一些具有一定内容含义的名词。常见的有 conclusion, evidence, fact, hope, idea, news, opinion, problem, promise, reason, truth 等。连接词用 that (不用 which)。有时可用连接副词 how, when, where, why, whether, 连接代词 what 引导同位语从句。例如:

His delay is due to the fact that the car went wrong halfway.

The news that our team has won the match is true.

She asked the reason why there was a delay.

The problem whether this material can be used in our factory has not been solved.

He has no idea what a remarkable woman Mary is.

2) 同位语从句有时不紧跟在它所说明的名词后面。例如:

An idea occurred to him that he might do the experiment in another way.

4. 同位语从句与定语从句的区别

1) 从意义上看,同位语从句是名词性从句,是对一个名词加以补充说明,而定语从句是形容词性的,是对一个名词加以修饰和限定。

2) 从结构上看,同位语从句是由连接词引导,连接词虽在从句中不充当任何成分,但不可省略。而定语从句中的关系代词代替先行词,并在从句中充当成分(主语或宾语),充当宾语时常可省略。例如:

The news (that) he told me is really encouraging. (定语从句)

The news that our team has won the game is really encouraging.
(同位语从句)

5. 宾语从句

1) 宾语从句在句中作及物动词或介词的宾语。引导宾语从句的连接词有连词 that, whether, if; 代词 who, whose, what, which 以及副词 when, where, how, why 等。

主语 + 谓语 + (连接词) + 宾语从句(用陈述句语序)

Through examination we can learn what we did not know.

Do you know who (whom) they are waiting for?

I wonder whether (if) daughters are valued as much as sons in the countryside.

如果主句的谓语动词是及物动词 consider, find, make, regard, see, take, think 等,后接复合宾语,而复合宾语中的宾语为从句,即:“宾语从句 + 宾语补足语”时,则把宾语从句置于补足语之后,用 it 作为形式宾语。

主语 + 谓语 + it + 宾语补足语 + that + 宾语从句

We find it necessary that we practise speaking English every day.

He always takes it for granted that he can pass the exam without hard work.

2) 如何将直接引语转换成间接引语。

①直接引语是陈述句:改为以 that 引导的宾语从句。例如:

He said, "I'm very glad."

He said that he was very glad.

②直接引语是一般疑问句:改为 if/whether 引导的宾语从句。例如:

He said, "Can you come this afternoon, John?"

He asked whether John could go that afternoon.

③直接引语是特殊疑问句 改为由 who , what , when 等疑问词引导的宾语从句。例如：

He said , “ Where is Mr Wang ?”

He asked where Mr Wang was.

④直接引语是祈使句 改为“ 主语 + ask /tell /order sb. (not) to do sth. ”。例如：

He said , “ Open the door please , John !”

He asked John to open the door.

He said , “ Don t talk in class !”

He ordered us not to talk in class.

注意转换过程中时态、人称代词、时间状语和地点状语的变化。

6. whether 与 if 的用法

1) whether 可用于引导下列从句

Whether it will do us harm or good remains to be seen. (主语从句)

Ask him whether he will come. (宾语从句)

The point is whether we ought to recommend him. (表语从句)

She had her doubts whether he would come. (同位语从句)

2) 只能用 whether 不能用 if 表示“ 是否 ”的情况如下：

①在表语从句中。例如：

The question is whether the film is worth seeing.

②在同位语从句中。例如：

The news whether our team has won the match is unknown.

Answer my question whether you are coming.

③在主语从句中。例如：

Whether we shall attend the meeting hasn t been decided yet.

注意 如果用 it 作形式主语 , 则 whether 和 if 都能引导主语从句。
例如：

It hasn t been decided whether /if we shall attend the meeting.

④在介词之后(介词往往可以省略)。例如：

It all depends (on) whether they will support us.

⑤后面直接跟动词不定式时。例如：

He doesn t know whether to stay or not.

⑥后面紧接 or not 时。例如：

We didn't know whether or not she was ready.

⑦用 if 会引起歧义时。例如：

Please let me know if you like it.

该句有两个意思：“请告诉我你是否喜欢。”或“如果你喜欢，请告诉我。”用了 whether 就可以避免歧义。

3) whether 或 if 均可表示“是否”的情况如下：

①引导宾语从句。例如：

I wonder whether/if the news is true or not.

②在“be + 形容词”之后。例如：

He was not sure whether/if it is right or wrong.

4) doubt“怀疑”后接宾语从句时 whether, if, that 的用法：

①主句为肯定句，whether 或 if 均可使用。例如：

I doubt whether/if he will come soon.

我怀疑他是否真的马上就会来。

②主句为否定句或疑问句，则应该用 that。例如：

I do not doubt that he will come soon. 我相信他会来。

Do you doubt that he will come soon?

你对他会来感到怀疑吗？

③主句为肯定句用 that 时，其意为“认为未必可能”。例如：

I doubt that he will come. 我认为他未必会来。

(二) 定语从句

在复合句中修饰名词或代词的从句叫定语从句。被修饰的名词或代词叫先行词。引导定语从句的关系代词有 who, whom, whose, which, that 等，具体用法见下表：

	主语	宾语	定语
指人	who/that	(whom)/(that)	whose
指物	which/that	(which)/(that)	whose/of which

引导定语从句的还有：

关系副词：where, when, why。

准关系代词 : as , but , than。

复合关系代词 : what , whatever , whoever , whichever。

1. 由 who , whom , whose 引导的定语从句

关系代词 who 用作主语 , 用于指人或家养宠物 , whom 用作宾语 , 也用于指人 , whose 用作定语 , 既可指人 , 也可指物。例如 :

This is the man who helped me.

Is Sheba the dog who was run over and nearly killed last year ?

The doctor whom you are looking for is in the room.

Do you know the man whose name is Wang Yu ?

Do you see the house whose windows are all broken ?

2. 由 which 引导的定语从句

关系代词 which 在从句中作主语、谓语动词或介词的宾语 , 用于指物或动物。例如 :

The building which stands near the river is our school.

All cows over 30 months which may have been exposed to BSE will be destroyed.

This is the book (which) you want.

The room in which there is a machine is a workshop.

3. 由 of which / whom 等引导的定语从句

1) 名词、不定代词或数量词 + of which / whom :

He's written a book the name of which I've forgotten.

An aircraft engine consists of thousands of parts , each of which has its importance.

The book contains 40 poems , most of which were written when he was at college.

We interviewed fourteen applicants for the post , none of whom we thought suitable.

The committee consists of 20 members , five of whom are women.

John often plays in a group of five children , three of whom he likes very much.

2) of which / whom 在从句中作主语时 , 有以下两种结构 :

Do you see the house {the windows of which
of which the windows} are all broken ?

The eighty passengers , {ten of whom
of whom ten} were British , all escaped
without serious injury.

注意：“名词 + of which”作主语常可用“whose + 名词”结构取代。
of which 所修饰的名词前应带定冠词。

3) in which case 等的用法

有时，用抽象名词(case, point, reason, situation, time 等)来总结主句的内容时，可以用“介词 + which + 抽象名词”构成从句，对所提的事进行补充说明。例如：

The plane may be several hours late , in which case there s no point in our waiting.

The speaker paused to examine his notes , at which point a loud crash was heard.

Ten years of hard work changed her greatly , for which reason he could hardly recognize her at first sight.

It rained all night , during which time the ship broke in pieces.

4) the way 后接定语从句的用法

在 the way 后接定语从句有三种形式

That s the way { (/) he spoke.
that he did it.
in which you answered the question.

注意 英语中，the way 后不能用 how 引导定语从句，因为 how 不能作关系副词，如不说“That is the way how he spoke. ”，但可以说“That is how he spoke. ”，这里，how 引导的名词性从句作表语。

4. 由 that 引导的定语从句

关系代词 that 在定语从句中可以指人或指物，在从句中作主语或宾语，但不能作介词宾语。例如：

This is the boy that broke the window. (作主语)

The letter that I received was from my father. (作宾语)

在下面几种情况下必须用 that 引导定语从句：

1) 先行词是不定代词 all, few, little, much, something, nothing, anything 等。例如：

All that we have to do is to practise every day.

Much that you have read is nonsense.

2) 先行词被序数词或形容词最高级修饰。例如：

The first lesson that I learned will never be forgotten.

This is the most interesting book that I have ever read.

3) 先行词被 all, any, every, each, few, little, no, some 等修饰。例如：

I have read all the books (that) you gave me.

Any paper that you read will give the same story.

No man that has common sense can believe it.

4) 先行词被 the only, the very, the same, the last 修饰。例如：

He is the only person that I want to talk to.

This is the very book that I want to buy.

5) 先行词既有人又有物时。例如：

They talked of things and persons that they remembered.

The train ran over to a boy and his dog that were just crossing the track.

6) 当句中已有 who 时(为避免重复)。例如：

Who is the man that is talking to John?

7) 用作关系副词, 修饰表示时间的名词如 day, time, moment 等, 代替 when。例如：

It happened on the day that/when I was born.

5. 关系代词作表语或宾语补语的情况

1) 关系代词 who 或 whom 不能用作表语。

2) 在传统语法中, 常用关系代词 which 作表语, 既可指人, 也可指物。指人时, 一般指从事某种职业或有某种特性, 品质或才能的人。which 引导的定语从句可以是限制性的, 也可以是非限制性的。例如：

This is not the type of modern house which my own is.

He is no longer the man which I thought him to be.

Anna is a vegetarian, which no one else is in our family.

The two policemen were completely trusted , which in fact , they were.

They think that fashion is just nonsense , which it is not.

3) 现代英语用关系代词 that 作表语指代人和物的现象越来越普遍,有些则认为一定要用 that,在非正式文体中可省略。that 的这一用法仅限于限制性定语从句。例如:

He is no longer the simple-minded man that he was five years ago.

She's not the brilliant dancer that she used to be.

He is not the liar that he appeared to be.

He is not the man (that) he was when I saw him first.

4) 复合关系代词 what 也常用作表语,可指人或指物。例如:

Things are not what they seem.

She isn't what she used to be.

6. 关系代词的省略

1) 在现代英语中,当关系代词在从句中作宾语时往往省略,即使在书面语中也是如此。当先行词为不定代词时,几乎总是不用关系代词。例如:

The girl (whom) you met yesterday lives next door.

That is one of the things (which/that) I'll never forget.

I'll tell you everything I know.

2) 关系代词在从句中作表语时,一般用 that,且往往省略。例如:

Harry Potter still talks like the man (that) he was five years ago.

Isabel's changed. She is no longer the girl (that) she was.

3) 当定语从句为 there be 结构时,通常不用关系代词。例如:

This is the fastest train there is to Michigan.

Please show me the latest reference book there is on the subject.

4) 主句为 there be 结构时,事实上的主语后若带有定语从句,作主语的关系代词有时可以省略。例如:

There's something (that) keeps worrying me.

7. 由关系副词 when, where, why 引导的定语从句

关系副词 when, where, why 是兼有连词作用的副词,通常用于表

示时间、地点、原因等名词后，引导定语从句。

1) when : (先行词是 time , day , occasion 等表时间的名词时在口语中可以省略 when。)

At the time when I saw him , he was quite strong.

Do you know the year (when) The Declaration of Independence was published ?

说明 先行词是表时间的名词时，用关系副词 when，还是用关系代词 that/which(或省略)引导定语从句，这要看它在从句中起副词作用作时间状语，还是起代词作用作宾语。例如：

Do you remember the day { when he came to see you.
(that) we spent in the woods.

2) where : (先行词是 place , room 等表地点的名词，或 case , point , position , situation , stage , state 等有地点含义的抽象名词，在口语中，当先行词是 place , room 等时，可以省略 where。)

This is the place (where) we lived for 5 years.

There s one point where I d like your advice.

We are in a position where we may lose a large sum of money.

说明 先行词是表示地点的名词时，用关系副词 where，还是用 that/which(或省略)引导定语从句。这要看它在从句中起副词作用作地点状语，还是起代词作用作宾语。例如：

This is the house { where he lived last year.
(which) he visited last year.

3) why : (先行词只有 reason，在口语中，可以省略 why。)

Can you tell me the reason why you are so unhappy.

That s the reason (why) I m checking it now.

说明 先行词是表原因的 reason 时，用关系副词 why，还是用关系代词 that/which(或省略)引导定语从句，这要看它在从句中起副词作用表原因，还是起代词作用作宾语。例如：

I know the reason { why he did so.
(that) he explained at the meeting.

注意 ①省略先行词 the time , the place , the reason 的情况：

在 this/that/it is 后可省略先行词 the time , the place , the reason , 直接跟 when , where , why。例如：

That was (the time) when he lived there.

It is (the place) where that rock festival is held every year.

That's (the reason) why he spoke.

注意 !②“that”或“介词 + which”取代 when, where, why 的情况 :

在现代英语中,尤其在口语中,先行词是 the day, the time, the moment 等时,可用 that 取代 when; the place that 可取代 the place where; the reason that 可取代 the reason why。恰当的“介词 + which”也可取代 when, where, why。例如 :

I remember the day $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{when/that} \\ \text{on which} \end{array} \right\}$ the heatwave started.

This is the place $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{where/that} \\ \text{in which} \end{array} \right\}$ we used to live.

High taxation is often the main reason $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{why/that} \\ \text{for which} \end{array} \right\}$ governments fall.

注意 !③from where 引导定语从句

After supper he usually stood near the window, from where he could see the tower.

I climbed to the top of the tower, from where I could see the whole city.

8. 准关系代词 as 的用法

1) 何为准关系代词

as, but, than 原为引导状语从句的连词,但有时可用于引导定语从句,这时 as, but, than 类似一个关系代词,因而被称作准关系代词。

2) as 引导限制性定语从句,用于以下 3 个结构中,作主语、宾语、表语或状语等 :

①such as

Such people as were mentioned by him were honest. (as 作主语)

I've never seen such a clever man as he is. (as 作表语)

②the same as

I like the same book as you do. (as 作宾语)

I shall do it in the same way as you did. (as 作状语)

③as as

As many children as came were given some cakes. 所有来的孩子都被给了蛋糕。(as 作主语)

He is as diligent a man as ever lived. (as 作主语)

注意 !①such as 与 such that 的区别 :

such as 引导定语从句 ,such that 引导结果状语从句 :

They talked in such simple English as children could understand. 他们用孩子们能听懂的简单的英语交谈。

They talked in such simple English that children could understand it. 他们用十分简单的英语交谈 ,连孩子们都能听懂。

I will provide you with such things as you may need.

我要供给你一些你可能用得着的东西。

He shut the window with such a force that the glass broke.

他如此用力地关门 ,结果玻璃碎了。

注意 !②the same as 与 the same that 的区别 :

the same as 指两物相似 ,the same that 描述的是同一物 :

This is the same bag as I lost yesterday.

这个书包和我昨天丢失的(书包)相似。(相似物)

This is the same bag that I lost yesterday.

这正是我昨天丢失的那个书包。(同一物)

3) as 引导非限制性定语从句 ,代表主句或主句的一部分所表达的意思(不能指代某个名词或代词) ,可以放在主句前、后或中间 ,在从句中作主语或宾语 ,例如 :

As is known to all ,he is the best student in our class. (as 指代整个句子 ,作主语 ,置于句首)

He opposed the idea ,as could be expected. (as 指代整个句子 ,作主语 ,置于句末)

As we all know ,he studies very hard. (as 指代整个句子 ,作宾语 ,置于句首)

Taiwan is ,as you know ,an inseparable part of China. (as 指代整个句子 ,作宾语 ,置于句中)

常用的这类句式有 :

as is said above

综上所述

as is known to all	众所周知
as is often the case	通常如此
as is reported in the newspaper	如报纸所报导的
as often happens	正如常发生的那样
as mentioned above	如上所述

注意：在非限制性定语从句中，当从句的谓语动词是 be 或相当于连系动词的 seem, become 等时，可用 as 或 which 作主语。但当从句的谓语是行为动词时，只能用 which 作主语。例如：

He married her, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as (对)} \\ \text{which (对)} \end{array} \right\}$ was/seemed natural.

He saw the girl, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as (错)} \\ \text{which (对)} \end{array} \right\}$ delighted him.

as often happens 是“as it often happens”省略 it 的特殊结构。

4) 主句具有否定意义，as 引导的定语从句位于主句之后时，as 指代的主句不包括否定意义，并可用 but 取代。例如：

Insects do not have bones, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as people have.} \\ \text{but people have bones.} \end{array} \right\}$

Whales are not fish, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as some people think.} \\ \text{but some people think they are.} \end{array} \right\}$

但 as 引导的定语从句位于主句前时，as 指代的主句仍包括否定意义。例如：

As has been said above, grammar is not a set of dead rules. (正如前面所说的，语法不是一套死条文。)

5) 关系代词 which 和 as 在定语从句中的区别：

① which 引导的从句不能放在主句前，而 as 引导的从句则既可以放在主句前，也可以放在主句后。例如：

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{As (对)} \\ \text{Which (错)} \end{array} \right\}$ is often the case, he is absent.

He saw the girl, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as (对)} \\ \text{which (对)} \end{array} \right\}$ he had hoped.

② 用作关系代词，as 和 which 都可以指代一个句子，但 as 有“正如”、“就像”之意，which 则没有此含义。

He is a foreigner , as I know from his accent. (as 指代一个句子 , 意为“正如”、“就像”)

He has to work on Sundays , which he doesn't like. (which 指代一个句子 , 没有“正如”、“就像”之义。)

③as 可用作连词, 引导状语从句, 构成省略形式“as + 过去分词”这一特殊结构, 译成汉语时其作用如定语。which 则无此结构。例如:

The bridge as shown in the picture is really wonderful. (as 是连词 , as shown = as it is shown 可译为“图中的(桥)”)

See the answers as given at the end of this book. (as 是连词 , as given = as they are given 可译为“(书后)给出的(答案)”)

English as spoken in Australia is slightly different from British English. (as 是连词 , as spoken = as it is spoken 可译为“(在澳大利亚)讲的(英语)”)

请看下列的“as + 过去分词”:

the study as described in the article 如文章中描述的那种学习

the program as conducted by 由……指挥的(指导的)节目

football and baseball as played in the United States

美国的足球和棒球

the art as applied to medicine 应用于医学的艺术

the products as seen on TV 电视上看到的产品

④在非限制性定语从句中, 当从句是由“as + be + 过去分词”构成时, 可省略“be”。which 则无此结构。例如:

The bridge is wonderful , $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{as is} \\ \text{as} \end{matrix} \right\}$ shown in the picture.

9. 准关系代词 but 的用法

用于引导结果状语从句的 but 用作关系代词时有 3 个特征: 一是它本身含有否定意义, 相当于 who/which/that not; 二是 but 的先行词往往是否定意义的代词或名词词组等, 通过双重否定达到强烈肯定的修饰效果; 三是 but 的这一用法常见于在从句中作主语, 谓语动词的数要与先行词一致, 时态与主句相呼应。例如:

There is no rule $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{but has} \\ \text{that has not} \end{matrix} \right\}$ exceptions.

没有任何规则是没有例外的。/所有规则都有例外。

There is no one $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but knows about} \\ \text{who doesn't know about} \end{array} \right\}$ this affair.

此事没有一个人不知道的。

There are few dictionaries $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but have} \\ \text{that don't have} \end{array} \right\}$ a misprint or two.

几乎每本词典都有一两个印刷错误。

说明：“but = that not”这一含义的用法也见于作连词引导状语从句。参见“结果状语从句”“but 等的用法。

I never go past my old school $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but I think of} \\ \text{that I don't think of} \end{array} \right\}$ my headmaster.

每次走过学校我总会想起我的校长。

10. 准关系代词 than 的用法

用于引导比较状语从句的 than 用作关系代词时可在从句中作主语，其后直接接谓语，谓语动词的数和时态须与前面保持一致或相呼应。例如：

Don't give him more money than is necessary ; Money burns a hole in his pocket. 别多给他钱 他是钱烧口袋漏，一有就不留。

He smoked fewer cigarettes than were normally available.

以上例句中的先行词被比较级修饰，用关系代词 than 连结。在 than 引导的从句中，谓语动词的数与先行词的数保持一致，时态与主句相呼应。

He did more than was required of him.

The question is more complicated than appears on the surface.

The room was much bigger than suited my purpose.

由于以上例句中找不到明确的先行词，有时在解释这类句子时，把 than 看作连词，其后省略了 it。但在实际应用中，than 后从来不补上“it”，这是因为关系代词 than 本身在从句中可用作主语，than 所指代的是整个主句。

11. 复合关系代词 what 的用法

1) 何为复合关系代词

在定语从句中 what 是个由名词(先行词)和关系代词组成的复合

词，也就是兼做先行词的关系代词，称作复合关系代词。what 既可用于指人，也可用于指物。用于指物时，what = the thing(s) which；用于指人时，what = the person that。例如：

Thank you for the gift. This is exactly what I wanted.

I like Jack. He never pretends to be what he isn't.

从以上例句可以看出，what 的涵义已包括了先行词。

因此不说：This is the book what I want.

应这样说：This is the book that I want. / This is what I want.

2) what 本身在从句中的作用：

① what 起名词作用，作主语、宾语、表语。例如：

What surprised me most was his way of speaking. (作主语)

I don't care what he thinks. (作宾语)

Is the city different from what it was ten years ago? (作表语)

② what 起形容词作用，修饰名词，意为“仅有的”，“全部的”。例如：

Don't worry. I will give you what help (= any help that 或 as much help as) I can. 别担心，我一定尽我所能帮你。

I gave him what money I had with me.

我把身边所有的钱都给了他。

what 在作定语时，常与 few, little 连用修饰名词，意为“尽管不多，但已是全部”。例如：

I will lend you what few reference books (= all the few reference books that) I can spare.

我愿把我用不着的虽然为数不多的参考书全部借给你。

We contributed what little money (= all the little money that) we had towards the earthquake-stricken area.

我们把为数不多的钱全部捐献给地震灾区。

What little he said on the subject was full of wisdom.

他对这问题的寥寥数语充满了智慧。

3) what 引导的名词性从句在句中的作用：

在此类名词从句中，what 没有疑问意义，可译为“所……的”：

① 从句作主语：

What I want is a quiet room away from the noise of traffic.

What is over is over.

②从句作表语：

Things are not what they seem.

I should like to be a teacher. That's what I want to be.

③从句作宾语：

Why don't you tell the police what you told me yesterday?

Never put off till tomorrow what can be done today.

④从句作介词的宾语：

Don't poke your nose into what doesn't concern you.

He gave me a practical illustration of what was to be done.

⑤从句作宾语补足语：

What has made China what she is today?

You can call me what you like.

4) what 可用于表示比喻的一个特殊结构

"A is to B what C is to D"

意为：“A 对于 B 犹如 C 对于 D 一样”。

A 和 B 是主体，C 和 D 是喻体。例如：

Parks are to the city what lungs are to the body.

公园对于都市犹如肺对于人的身体一样。

Virtue is to the soul what health is to the body.

美德对于心灵犹如健康对于身体。

5) what 组成的常用短语：

and what not 其他；等等 Guess what! 告诉你一个消息！

What of it? 那又怎么样？ What if? 如果……怎么办？

know what's what 内行，有判断力

12. 复合关系代词 whoever, whichever, whatever 的用法

引导名词性从句	引导让步状语从句
whoever = anybody who	whoever = no matter who
whichever = any that	whichever = no matter which
whatever = anything that	whatever = no matter what

1) whoever, whomever, whichever, whatever 具有名词功能,引导名词性从句,指未知的或不确定的人或物。在从句中作主语或宾语。例如:

Whoever comes first will get the prize.

Please give the book to whoever wants it in our class.

You can give the prize to whomever you meet first.

Here are two books. You may choose whichever you like.

Whichever of you comes first will receive a prize.

We will do whatever is needed to improve our English.

2) whatever, whichever 还兼有形容词功能,修饰从句中的名词,并引导名词性从句。whatever 意为“仅有的”、“全部的”。例如:

Whatever water was left was used for the children. 省下的水都给孩子们用了。

She applied whatever strength she had left to the task.

Whatever requests you make will be granted.

I used whichever tools were available.

You should wear whichever dress suits you best.

3) whoever, whichever, whatever 具有副词功能,引导让步状语从句。例如:

Whoever you are, you must obey the law.

Whichever you choose, the others will be offended.

Whatever you may think, I'm going ahead with my plans.

13. 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句

1) 限制性定语从句用于对主句先行词加于限制或分类,是句中不可缺少的组成部分,主句和从句之间不能用逗号分开。例如:

Is this the book that you were looking for?

Would all those who have booked dinner please go to the restaurant now?

2) 非限制性定语从句是对主句先行词的补充说明,没有它不影响主句意思的完整,常用逗号把主句和从句分开。非限制性定语从句中作宾语的关系代词不能省略。例如:

I have two sisters, who are both students.

I , who am blind , advise you to use your eyes well.

We were given a lovely double room , which had a sea view.

Last year s winner presented the cup , which each holder keeps for the year.

14. 插入语

1) 分句用作插入语。例如：

He is , I hear , a great scholar.

可用作插入语的分句有：

I believe I find I guess I hear
I imagine I remember I suppose I think 等。

2) 状语分句用作插入语。例如：

That is , as far as I know , not what he really wants.

可用作插入语的状语分句有：

as far as I know , as I told you before , if you like ,
有时可用其省略形式 if ever , if possible , if any 等。

3) 由 what 构成的惯用插入语。其句型是：

“ what is (was) + 比较级形容词 ”

此结构中的 what 泛指下文所讲的话，意为“而且，更……，尤有甚者”。例如：

Tom participated and , what is more surprising , won the prize.

He said nothing , and , what is worse , laughed at us.

由 what 构成的用作固定形式的惯用插入语有：

what is better what is worse
what is news to me what is more (important)
what is best of all what we call what is called

(三) 状语从句

状语从句在句中作状语，修饰主句中的动词、形容词或副词等。状语从句放在主句之前时，常用逗号分开；放在主句之后，一般不用逗号。状语从句按其意义和作用可分为时间、条件、原因、让步、目的、结果、方式、比较、地点等 9 种。

名 称	常 用 连 词
1. 时间状语从句	when, as, while, before, after, since, till, once, by the time as soon as, hardly when, no sooner than, the moment 等
2. 原因状语从句	because, since(既然), as, for, seeing that(鉴于), now that, considering that, in that(因为), not that but that 等
3. 地点状语从句	where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere 等
4. 条件状语从句	if, unless, on condition that, provided (that), as long as, suppose/supposing (that), in case, what if, granted that, given that 等
5. 让步状语从句	although, though, even though, even if, whether or, no matter + wh-疑问词, wh-疑问词 + ever, while(然而;虽 然), if(尽管,即使)等
6. 目的状语从句	so that, in order that, for fear that, in case(以防)等
7. 结果状语从句	so (that), so that, such that, but (that) = that not 等
8. 方式状语从句	as, just as, as if, as though, (in) the way (that) 等
9. 比较状语从句	as as, than, not so as, the more the more, as so 等

1. 时间状语从句

时间状语从句主要由 when(当……的时候), while(当……的时候), as(当……的时候), till (until)(一直到……;直到……才……)”, once(一旦), by the time(到……时), as soon as(一……就……), no sooner than 和 hardly when(刚……就……)及名词词组 the moment(一……就……)等引导。

1) when“当……的时候”, while“当……的时候”, as“当……的时候”

when 强调“特定时间”。例如:

When spring came, he felt like a trip.

When he was eating his breakfast, he heard the doorbell ring.

注意: when 的几个特殊用法:

I was just going to leave when Jack arrived. (突然)

Why do you walk when you have a car? (既然, 而)

We have only three books when we need five. (虽然)

She was a bank clerk till the war, when she trained as a nurse. (然后,那时)

while 表示的时间是一段,而不是一点。例如:

While he was eating his breakfast, he heard the doorbell ring. (强调吃饭的过程)

as 多用在口语中,强调“同一时间”或“一前一后”,有时还有“随着”的含义。如:

As he was eating his breakfast, he heard the doorbell ring. (强调同一时间)

As I was going out, it began to rain. (强调两个动作先后发生)

As spring warms the good earth, all flowers begin to bloom. (as 有“随着”的含义)

2) till (until) “一直到……”, “直到……才……”

表示“一直到……”时,主句和从句都用肯定式;表示“直到……才……”时,主句用否定式,从句用肯定式。例如:

He worked until it was dark. 他一直工作到天黑。

He did not get up till his mother came in. 母亲进来他才起床。

3) as soon as, instantly, immediately, directly, presently

表示从句动作一发生,主句动作随即发生,通常译为“一……就……”。as soon as 最普通, instantly 语气最强, presently 最弱。例如:

As soon as I finish the work, I'll go to see you.

Immediately (when) the button was pressed, the mine exploded.

Directly I had done it, I knew I had made a mistake.

4) no sooner than 和 hardly when, 意为“刚……就……”

表示“刚……就……”时,主句中的动词一般用过去完成时,从句用过去时。若把 no sooner, hardly 提到句首,主句须倒装。hardly 可换成 scarcely, 连词 when 可换成 before。例如:

The sun had no sooner started to shine than it was clouded over again.

I had hardly sat down when he stepped in.

Hardly had I entered the room when I heard a loud noise.

No sooner had she sat down than the phone rang.

The day had scarcely broken before he got up to work.

注意:此结构有时可换用成下列含有否定词的结构:

I hadn't been asleep long when the alarm went off.

I had been there little more than a week when I set to work in earnest.

5) 用下列名词词组引导表示某一特定时刻发生或存在的情况:

the first time, next time, the last time, every time,
each time, any time

I thought her nice and honest the first time I met her.

Every time I went to his house, he was out.

Next time I see you, I will show you my new dress.

6) 用下列名词词组转化成时间连词引导从句,表示两个动作紧接着发生,可译为“一……就……”:

the second, the minute, the moment, the instant, the day,
the month, the week, the year, the morning, the afternoon

She came to the scene the moment she heard the news.

I recognized her the instant I saw her.

The day her husband died, she gave birth to a son.

7) once(一旦), by the time(到……时为指)

Once you see her, you will find what I say is true.

Once (it is) printed, this dictionary will be very popular.

by the time + 现在时,主句用将来完成时。例如:

By the time he arrives, we will already have left California.

by the time + 一般过去时,主句用过去完成时。例如:

By the time he arrived, we had already left California.

2. 原因状语从句

原因状语从句主要由 because(因为), for(因为), since(既然), as(由于), seeing (that)(鉴于,既然), considering (that)(考虑到), ; now (that)(既然), in that(因为), not because(不是因为)等引导。

1) because(因为), for(因为), since(既然), as(由于)

because 表示直接的原因或理由, 着重点在从句, 用于回答 why, 语气最强, 常译为“因为”。例如:

He is absent today because he is ill.

当主句为否定句时, 从句 because 须用逗号与主句隔开, 否则容易引起歧义。例如:

I didn't visit him, because I wanted to borrow some books.

我没去拜访他, 因为我想借几本书。

I didn't visit him because I wanted to borrow some books.

我不是因为想借几本书才去拜访他。

for 引导的从句并不说明主句行为发生的直接原因, 只是提供一些补充说明, 且不可位于主句前。当 for 从句表示原因时, 有时可与 because 互相替换, 所不同的是 because 分句的位置可前可后, 而 for 从句只能后置, 这时, for 前往往须用逗号或分号与主句分开, 引起的从句对主句加以解释。例如:

I didn't go to see him, for a heavy snow was falling.

The days were short, for it was now December.

有时, for 引起的从句并不表示原因, 而是表示一种推断或解释, 而 because 则不能。例如:

Someone in the house must be ill, for a doctor has just come out.

The day breaks, for the birds are singing.

He couldn't have seen me, for I was not there.

since 一般表示对方已知的、无须加以说明的既成事实的理由, since = as it is the fact that 全句中心在主句, 语气比 because 弱, 常译为“既然”。如:

Since you are ill, I'll go alone.

如果从句表示的原因不是确定的事实, 就不能用 since, 通常用 because。

as 表示十分明显的原因, 一般说明因果关系, 着重点在主句, 语气较弱, 常译成“由于”。例如:

As it is snowing, we shall not go to the park.

注意 as 和 since 的差别不大, 它们通常位于主句之前, 有时也可

位于主句之后。由 as 表示的原因语势最弱，常用于口语。

2) 用下列短语引导：

seeing (that)(鉴于，既然)，considering (that)(考虑到)，
now (that)(既然)，in that(因为)，not because(不是因为)
not that but that (不是因为……而是因为)

seeing that 与 considering that 同义，含义近似 since。

Seeing that the weather is bad, we'll stay at home.

Considering that they are newcomers, they've accomplished a lot.

now that 有时可将 that 省去，含义也与 since 接近，区别在于：since 表示原先已存在的情况，而 now that 表示现在才发生的情况。

Now that it has stopped raining, let's start at once.

in that 作“因为”解时，由于介词 in 的含义是指“在……方面”，有限制作用，因此多指由于某一方面的原因或理由。

I like the city, but I like the country better in that I have more friends in the country.

not because 结构中的 not，根据含义，是否定 because 的。

She didn't marry you because you had money.

她不是因为你有钱才嫁给你。

The machine didn't stop because the fuel was used up.

机器不是因为燃料耗尽才停下来的。

not that but that 作“不是因为……而是因为”解。

Not that I don't like the film, but that I have no time for it.

3. 地点状语从句

地点状语从句主要由 where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere 等引导。

Put it where you can see it.

I'll find him, wherever he is.

You can't camp anywhere /where/ wherever you like.

注意：①不要把 where 引导的状语从句和 where 引导的定语从句相混淆。例如：

We shall go where working conditions are difficult. (状语从句)

We shall go to the place where working conditions are difficult. (定

语从句)

注意 !②where 有时可置于某些介词之后,此时 where 引导的是名词性从句。例如:

I couldn't see him from where I am.

4. 条件状语从句

条件状语从句主要由 if (如果)”, unless (if not) (除非,如果不), on (the) condition that (以为……条件), provided/providing (that), (如果……的话,只要), as/so long as (只要))等引导。

1) 条件状语从句用如下连接词引导:

①表示正面的条件: if (如果)

If your dog is depressed, he probably needs more exercise.

If the museum charges for entry, a lot of people won't be able to visit it.

说明 主句用现在时 表示此事任何时候都是可能的,尤其是现在。

主句用将来时 表示此事将来的可能性。例如:

If she's travelling abroad on business, she always phones me every evening.

Shall we go out if the weather's good?

②表示否定的条件: unless (if not) (除非,如果不)

I shall not go to the cinema unless I finish my homework before eight.

说明 在否定的虚拟条件句中或在疑问句中,不能用 unless 替代 if not。例如:

You'd be happier if you didn't have such high expectations.

What time shall we leave for the theatre if he doesn't turn up?

③表示使某事成为现实的必要的条件:

on (the) condition that (以为……条件),
provided/providing (that) (如果……的话,只要),
as/so long as (只要)

You may go swimming on condition that you don't swim too far away from the river bank.

As long as you keep on trying, you will surely succeed.

We'll visit Europe next year, provided we have the money.

说明:由于以上连词用于使某事成为现实的必要的条件,因此我们可以说:If you fail next time, you will be punished. 我们通常不说:As long as you fail next time, you will be punished. 以上连词也不用于表过去的虚拟结构中,我们不能说:We would have had the party so long as they had well prepared.

④表示假想的条件:

suppose (that), supposing (that), what if, in case (以防),
given (that)(在.....的情况下,假定), granted that(就算)

Suppose (that) I don't have a day off, what shall we do?

What if the money doesn't arrive on time?

She gave me the key to get in the house in case you were out.

Granted that he's not brilliant, he at least works hard.

2) 以下两个句型与条件状语从句形成同义结构:

① 祈使句/名词词组(,) + and/then/or + 简单句(常用将来时)

前半部分相当于 if 条件句,可用动词或名词开头;后半部分的简单句常用一般将来时,有时也用一般现在时。

Give me somewhere to stand, and I will move the earth.

= If you give me somewhere to stand, I will .

(如果)给我一个支点,我便能掀动地球。

Cease to struggle and you cease to live.

你若停止了奋斗,你就停止了生命。

One more word, and I'll turn you out of the door.

你再说一句,我就把你推出门外。

Use your head, then you'll find a way.

动动脑子你就能找到办法。

Work even harder, or you will never pass the exam.

如果不更加努力,你就永远无法通过考试。

Have an aim in your life, or your energies will be wasted.

人生若没有目标,你的一切努力都会徒劳。

注意:用 or 引导时,前半部分要译成反义或否定。

② can't and

“can't”可译作肯定意义的 if 条件句,“and”中的动词要译

成否定或反义。例如：

You can't study hard and fail in the exam.

= If you study hard, you can't fail in the exam.

如果你努力学习，就不会考不及格。

You can't sell the cow, and drink the milk.

如果你把这头奶牛卖了，你就再也喝不上它产的牛奶了。

5. 让步状语从句

让步状语从句主要由 although, though (虽然), while (然而, 但是 ;虽然), if (尽管, 即使), even though (尽管), even if (即便), whether (or not) “无论是……或是……”, 由 though 或 as (that) (虽然) 引导的倒装句 ;可用带-ever 的 wh-词, 和 no matter + wh-的词(无论)等引导。

1) although, though (虽然)

Although I didn't know anybody at the party, I had a very good time.

注意：“although (though) but”是个典型的错误，因为 but 是并列连词，不能与从属连词 although 连用。但是，although (though) 可与 yet, still, nevertheless 连用，因为 yet, still, nevertheless 是副词，它可使前后关系更明确。

2) while (然而, 但是 ;虽然), if (尽管, 即使)

①while 用于对照，说明两种情况相反，意为“然而，但是”。例如：

Tom is very outgoing, while Jane is shy and quiet. 汤姆性格外向，而玛丽却腼腆安静。

While I was reading, he was playing. 我在读书，而他在玩。

②while 意为“虽然，尽管”，同 although，此时从句的主语和主句的主语往往为同一人或物。例如：

While he liked cats, he never let them come into his room.

While forbidden fruit is said to taste sweeter, it usually spoils faster. 虽然有人说禁果的味道更甜，但它腐烂得也更快。

注意 while 的不同用法：

While I was reading , the light went out. (当.....时)

Some people waste food while others haven't enough. (而.....)

While I understand what you say , I can't agree with you. (尽管)

While there is life there is hope. (只要)

You'll never save any money while you're so extravagant. (既然)

③ if 意为“ 尽管 ”、“ 即使 ”。例如：

If a jewel falls into the mud , it remains as precious as before. 即使宝石落到泥里，它仍然和从前一样珍贵。

3) even though (尽管) , even if (即便)

even though 把引出的从句当成既成事实，与 although 同义，有时相当于汉语的“ 尽管 ”。例如：

I'm going to apply for the job , even though it pays very little.

He is an honest man , I say , even though I have opposed him.

even if 是把 even 的让步和 if 的条件含义结合起来，不把引出的从句当成既成事实，指某种可能的情况不会阻止另一种情况的发生，相当于汉语的“ 即便 ”，带有条件意味，因此从句要用现在时表将来。

I'm going to apply for the job , even if it pays very little. (I don't know what it pays)

They'll stay by you even if you don't succeed.

4) whether (or not) (无论是.....或是.....)

Whether it rains or not , I shall go out for an outing tomorrow.

Whether we win or lose , we are going to do our best.

注意① :以上例句中 whether 作“ 无论 ”解，用现在时表将来。但当 whether 作“ 是否 ”解时则不能用现在式表将来。例如：

Can you tell me whether it will rain or not tomorrow? (是否)

Whether it will do us more harm than good remains to be seen. (是否)

注意② :whether 从句中的动词为 be 时，可用动词原形 be，这种虚拟式为相当正式的表达形式。例如：

Whether she be right or wrong , she will have my support.

5) 由 though 或 as (that) (虽然) 引导的倒装句中

Patient though (as) he was , he was unwilling to wait three hours.

Hard as (though) he tried , she failed to pass the exam.

6) 可用带-ever 的 wh-词 , 和 no matter + wh-的词(无论)引导 :

whoever , whichever , whatever , whenever , wherever , however

no matter who , no matter which , no matter what ,
no matter when , no matter where , no matter how

Whoever (No matter who) you are , you must obey the law.

It has the same result whichever way you do it.

Whatever (No matter what) happens , we shall never lose hope.

Come and see me whenever (no matter when) you want to.

However cold it is , she often goes swimming.

6. 目的状语从句

目的状语从句主要由 in order that(目的是为了……) , so that(以便) , for fear that(生怕) , lest(以免,以防) , in case(以防)等引导。

1) in order that(目的是为了……) , so that(以便)

以 in order that , so that 引导的目的状语从句谓语通常用 may , might 加动词构成 , 也可用 can , could 或 will , would 加动词构成。例如 :

He works hard in order that he can serve his country well.

They started early so that they might arrive in time.

2) for fear that(生怕) , lest(以免,以防) , in case(以防)

在 for fear that , lest , in case 后面常用虚拟语气 , 也就是说 , 其引导的状语从句常用“(should) + 动词原形”。例如 :

He s working hard for fear (that) he should fail.

Take an umbrella with you in case it should rain.

I avoid mentioning the subject lest (or : for fear that) he be offended.

说明 ①“for + 动名词”不用于表目的, 但“for + 名词”可用于表目的。例如 :

Write it in simple English to make(不能用 for making) everybody understand.

为了能让大家都理解, 请用简单的英语写。

Better get up early for the early train. 为了赶上早班火车, 最好早些起床。

说明 :②下列介词短语加动名词可用于表目的 :

for the sake of(因为……的缘故), for the purpose of(为了……目的),
with the purpose of(怀着……目的), with a view to(为的是/着眼于……),
with the aim of(其目的是……), with the intention of(怀着……的意图)

7. 结果状语从句

结果状语从句主要由 so (that)(所以), so that(如此……以致于), such that(如此……以致于), but(而不), but that(而不), but what(而不)等引导。

- 1) so (that)(所以), so that(如此……以致于),
such that(如此……以致于)

The box is so heavy that nobody can move it.

He made a wrong decision, so that half of his property was lost.

It is such a heavy box that nobody can move it.

注意① so that 既可引导目的状语从句,又可引导结果状语从句,其区别在于:引导结果状语从句时通常用逗号同主句分开。

注意② 在 so that 结构中,so 后面常接形容词或副词,但在 so many, so much, so little 等后可接名词。

- 2) but(而不), but that(而不), but what(而不)

以上连词的含义为“= that not”。but 或 but that 前后都是完整的句子。当主句为否定含义时,用此连词可构成双重否定。例如:

I never see you but I think of my brother.

我每次见到你就会想起我的哥哥。

The children never played but that a quarrel followed.

孩子们每玩必起争吵。

He is not so old but that he can walk.

他并未老到不能走路。

It never rains but it pours.

不雨则已,一雨倾盆。不来则已,来则不止。(谚语)

There is no knowing but what you may see things different after a while.

谁也不知道过一会儿你对这事就可能有不同的看法。

说明 当主句为肯定句时, 从属连词 but that 就没有否定含义。例如:

He would have said no but that he was afraid.

He would have helped us but that he was short of money at the time.

8. 方式状语从句

方式状语从句主要由 as(就像), just as(正如, 按照), (in) the way (that)(以……的方式), as if/as though(就像, 仿佛)等引导。

- 1) as(就像), just as(正如),
(in) the way (that)(以……的方式)

He watched her as a cat watches a rat.

Just as some people are born artists, so some are born sportsmen.

She's doing her work the way I like it done.

- 2) as if(好像, 仿佛), as though(好像, 仿佛)

as if 和 as though 引导的从句一般用虚拟语气。但如果从句中所陈述的情况很可能是事实, 也可用陈述语气。例如:

The old man runs very fast as if he were a young man.

He acts as though she did not exist.

The milk smells as if it is sour.

It looks as if it's going to rain.

注意 as if 和 as though 从句可用省略形式, 后面接不定式、分词、形容词或介词短语。例如:

Some flowers shut up at night as if (they do this in order) to sleep.

She stood at the door as if (he was) waiting for someone.

The boy looked as if (he was) in search of something.

9. 比较状语从句

方式状语从句主要由 than(比), as as(像……一样地), not so as(不像……一样地), the the(越……越), as so (与……同时 就像……一样)等引导。

- 1) than(比), as as(像……一样地),
not so as(不像……一样地), the the(越……越)

I know you better than he does.

We walked as far as our legs could carry us.

The work is not so easy as you think.

Nothing is so precious as health.

The more we can do for you , the happier we will be.

2) as so (与.....同时 就像.....一样)

As the wind blew harder , so the sea grew rougher.

As bees love sweetness , so flies love rottenness.

注意以下 as 用于表示比较的结构：

A is to B as C is to D. = $\begin{cases} \text{A is to B what C is to D.} \\ \text{As C is to D , so A is to B.} \end{cases}$

Water is to fishes as air is to men.

= Water is to fishes what air is to men.

= As air is to men , so water is to fishes.

(or : Just as/As air is to men , so is water to fishes.)

10. 状语从句中省略主语的情况

省略形式的状语从句的构成：

从属连词 + $\begin{cases} \text{动词 : 不定式/现在分词/过去分词} \\ \text{非动词 : 名词/形容词/副词/介词短语} \end{cases}$

当状语从句的主语与主句的主语一致时，通常可省略主语。谓语动词是行为动词的省略见第八章动词的非谓语形式；谓语动词是系动词加名词、形容词，副词或介词短语等的直接由从属连词接名词，形容词，副词或介词短语。此类从属连词有 when , while , whenever , once , till , if , as if , unless , though , although , where , wherever 等。例如：

1) 从属连词 + 名词

Even as a girl she showed great promise as a pianist.

Though an ordinary worker , he has made some important inventions.

2) 从属连词 + 形容词

If necessary , ring me at once.

When young , I looked at such things quite differently.

3) 从属连词 + 副词

Things were beginning to improve , even if not quickly enough.

Once home , he took off his straw hat.

4) 从属连词 + 介词短语

He had an accident while on his way home.

He looked about as if in search of something.

Her eyes were restless as though from fear.

There are good people and bad people in our country , as in every country.

请看下列省略表达法：

when alone	even as a girl	when possible
where possible	if in doubt	though still young
though not large	as though for a reply	

此类复合句(谓语动词是系动词或行为动词)的模式有如下 3 种：

① 省略形式的状语从句 + 主语 + 谓语

Although the youngest of the class , he won all the prizes.

虽然他是全班年龄最小的，可是却囊括了全部奖品。

② 主语 + 谓语 + 省略形式的状语从句

A friend is never known till needed. 患难之中见真交。

I got to know him while on a visit to Beijing.

我是在北京旅游时才认识他的。

She opened her lips as if to say something.

她动了动嘴唇，好像要说什么似的。

③ 主语 + 省略形式的状语从句 + 谓语

His opinion , whether right or wrong , should be considered.

无论他的观点是对是错都应认真考虑。

第三部分 分类练习

1. Mum is coming. What present ____ for your birthday ?

A. do you expect she has got

B. you expect has she got

C. you expect she has got

D. do you expect has she got

- C. What it will do D. That it will do
14. Not that John doesn't want to help you , ____ it's beyond his power.
A. but that B. for that C. and that D. in that
15. "Do you have any idea what Hank does all day ?"
"I know he spends at least as much time watching TV as he ____ . "
A. does writing B. writes C. is writing D. does to write
16. What surprised me was not what he said but ____ he said it.
A. in the way that B. the way C. in the way D. the way which
17. The school ____ I visited last year was not the one ____ I once worked.
A. which ; where B. which ; which
C. where ; which D. where ; where
18. Do you know that girl ____ wearing a red dress ?
A. whose B. who C. whom D. who s
19. You may borrow any book ____ .
A. that you interest B. which you are interested
C. that interests you D. which interests you
20. The reason ____ I'm writing to you is to tell you about a party on Saturday.
A. because B. why C. for D. which
21. That is the reason ____ he gave us for carrying out the plan.
A. because B. why C. how D. which
22. The reason why he was late was ____ he had taken a wrong bus.
A. because B. whether C. when D. that
23. The film is set in the period ____ the divide between rich and poor was greater than it is now.
A. where B. when C. which D. why
24. Do you remember the day ____ I came to you to borrow a dictionary ?
A. in which B. which C. when D. where
25. She still remembers the days ____ she spent in the countryside.
A. while B. that C. when D. during which
26. Helen was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others , ____ , of course , made the others unhappy.
A. which B. that C. what D. who
27. When people talk about the cities of the U. S. , the first ____ comes into mind is New York.
A. city B. of them C. one D. that

28. But when I got to ____ the town ought to have been , all I found was a school and a petrol station.
A. where B. wherever C. there D. that
29. She spent a lot of time preparing for the interview , ____ was quite unnecessary.
A. which I thought B. which I thought it
C. and I thought she D. but which I thought
30. It was an agreement ____ could not be changed.
A. of which details B. whose the details
C. the details of which D. all whose details
31. The magazine ____ Betty paid one dollar was very good.
A. that B. with which C. for which D. to which
32. Government reports , examination compositions , legal documents and most business letters are the main situations ____ formal language is used.
A. in that B. on which C. in which D. at what
33. He was the man ____ Master of the Game was translated.
A. by whom B. by who C. by whose D. by him
34. The place ____ the bridge is supposed to be built should be ____ the cross-river traffic is the heaviest.
A. to which ; where B. at which ; where
C. by which ; in which D. for which ; which
35. Mark was a student at this university from 2000 to 2004 , ____ he studied very hard and was made Chairman of the Students Union.
A. during whose time B. during which time
C. for which time D. by that time
36. Thousands , ____ were from the surrounding towns , came to watch the performance.
A. of those many B. many of those
C. of them many D. many of whom
37. At the point in our game ____ I d have predicted the score to be about 9 to 1 in my favour , it was instead 7 to 9.
A. when B. where C. whom D. which
38. In the book , Newton is shown as a gifted scientist who stood at the point in history ____ magic ended and science began.
A. where B. when C. whom D. which
39. His technique has developed to the point ____ he can help kill the latest computer virus going round the city.

- A. that B. which C. when D. where
40. Teachers should create an environment ____ children are taught how to solve problems of learning by themselves.
- A. where B. why C. which D. whose
41. There are cases ____ speech has started late in a child who eventually turns out to be of high IQ.
- A. why B. which C. where D. as
42. I'd like to find a job ____ I can combine my qualification with my interest.
- A. when B. where C. what D. which
43. We have to consider what to do in situations ____ there are many people involved.
- A. that B. as C. when D. where
44. I have kept that portrait ____ I can see it every day , as it always reminds me of my university days in London.
- A. which B. where C. in which D. that
45. Is this museum ____ they visited last month ?
- A. that B. where C. which D. the one
46. Is this the museum ____ they visited last month ?
- A. when B. where C. which D. the one
47. In the evening school where I study computer ____ .
- A. is there B. has many people
C. is well taught D. is nice
48. Has all ____ can be done ____ ?
- A. what ; done B. that ; be done
C. what ; to be done D. that ; been done
49. Anyway , that evening , ____ I'll tell you more about later , I ended up staying at Richard's place.
- A. what B. which C. when D. where
50. The chief foods eaten in any country depend largely on ____ best in its climate and soil.
- A. it grows B. what grows C. does it grow D. what does it grow
51. A modern city has been set up in ____ was a wasteland ten years ago.
- A. that B. what C. which D. where
52. ____ has recently been done to provide more buses for the people , a shortage of public vehicles remains a serious problems.
- A. In spite of what B. Though what

66. Einstein's most famous theory is ____ we call the Theory of Relativity.
A. what B. that C. which D. how
67. When we first arrived in ____ New District twenty years ago , the area was covered with grass.
A. what is now B. now C. which now is D. now is
68. We contributed ____ little money we had to the flooded area.
A. much B. how C. such D. what
69. Reading is to the mind ____ food is to the body.
A. while B. what C. that D. as if
70. She must have gone out early , ____ she had not shown up at breakfast.
A. because B. since C. for D. therefore
71. "How long do you suppose it is ____ he arrived here ?"
"No more than half a week. "
A. when B. before C. after D. since
72. Doing your homework is a sure way to improve your test scores , and this is especially true ____ it comes to classroom tests.
A. when B. since C. while D. as
73. You'd better take the documents along ____ they want to see them.
A. if B. so that C. in case D. as long as
74. "What a terrible rain we are having !"
"Yes. We are asked to pay more attention to the information about the rain ____ flood. "
A. as well as B. so long as C. because of D. in case of
75. "Did you do the homework all day long yesterday ?"
"Except ____ Mabel dropped in on me. "
A. / B. for C. that D. when
76. I know nothing about his journey ____ he was likely to be away for three months.
A. if B. unless C. until D. except that
77. ____ you have a healthy diet , you can reduce its benefits by inappropriate eating habits.
A. Just as B. In case C. Since D. Even if
78. Liquids are like solids ____ they have a definite volume.
A. in that B. for that C. with that D. at that
79. I'll see to it ____ everything is ready in time.
A. whether B. if C. what D. that

80. ____ nobody was very interested in it , they decided to cancel the trip.
A. Even though B. As soon as C. While D. Seeing that
81. I don't think you'll be able to understand that ____ you are my age.
A. even B. only when C. as if D. even when
82. ____ I accept that he is not perfect , I do actually like the person.
A. While B. Since C. Before D. Unless
83. It is often said that an American starts a speech with a joke , ____ a Japanese has an apology to make.
A. which B. as C. while D. when
84. "Did you remember to give her the book she asked for ?"
"Yes. ____ I saw her , I remembered. "
A. While B. Suddenly C. Right D. The moment
85. You see the lightning ____ it happens , but you hear the thunder later.
A. the instant B. for an instant C. on the instant D. in the instant
86. ____ they visited the Science Museum , they showed great interest in everything they saw.
A. The first time B. For the first time
C. At first D. At the first time
87. He had to be called two or three times ____ he came out to have dinner.
A. as B. until C. after D. before
88. It was evening ____ we reached that little town.
A. that B. until C. since D. before
89. Scientists say it may be five or six years ____ it is possible to test this medicine on human patients.
A. before B. since C. after D. when
90. They decided to drive the cow away ____ it had done more damage.
A. unless B. until C. before D. although
91. Time passed quickly and three weeks went by ____ we knew it.
A. before B. after C. when D. till
92. It won't be long ____ you regret what you've done.
A. after B. before C. since D. when
93. Eat less food ____ you want to become fatter.
A. if B. unless C. until D. as soon as
94. The men will have to wait all day ____ the doctor works faster.
A. if B. unless C. whether D. that

95. I'll take no steps ____ you arrive.
A. while B. at which C. until D. since
96. ____ last week , she lived a quiet and happy life in that area.
A. Not until the earth-moving machines came
B. The earth-moving machines came
C. Until the earth-moving machines came
D. Then came the earth-moving machines
97. We have plenty of books here. You may take ____ you like most.
A. which B. whatever C. whichever D. that
98. College students are free to study ____ them.
A. whatever which interest B. whatever interests
C. whatever that interests D. whatever interesting
99. I went to the library and read ____ I could find about Robert Owen.
A. whoever B. whichever C. whatever D. whomever
100. Use ____ phone you want - they all have outside lines.
A. what B. which C. whatever D. whichever
101. However much ____ , it will be worth it.
A. the watch costs B. costs the watch
C. the watch will be cost D. does the watch cost
102. ____ comes back first is supposed to win the prize.
A. Those who B. Anyone C. No matter who D. Whoever
103. You may give the film ticket to ____ you think needs it.
A. no matter who B. whomever C. whoever D. no matter whom
104. You can put the photo ____ you think it looks best.
A. that B. which C. whichever D. wherever
105. "They are ready to come to our rescue. "
" ____ they don't come ?"
A. What if B. What for C. What of D. How come
106. Shh ! I'd be grateful ____ comments during the concert.
A. unless you made B. if you didn't make
C. provided you made D. so long as you made
107. Their tent , ____ light as a feather , remained firm in the storm last night.
A. as if B. even C. though D. if
108. The place , ____ , has been transformed into a modern capital city.
A. as a small town B. once a small town

- C. being a small town D. though being a small town
109. ____ is often the case , we have worked out the production plan.
A. As B. Which C. What D. When
110. ____ the wind blew harder , so the sea grew rougher.
A. When B. Where C. If D. As
111. Delia s going to join us , ____ was agreed on the day before yesterday.
A. it B. that C. what D. as
112. ____ that the compass was first invented in China.
A. It is known B. All is known
C. As is known D. What is known
113. I never go past my old school ____ I think of Mr Smith , the headmaster.
A. that B. which C. when D. but
114. There are few dictionaries ____ a misprint or two.
A. but hasn t B. but has C. but haven t D. but have
115. The next exam will be more difficult ____ can be imagined.
A. that B. than it C. which D. than
116. It wasn t such a good dinner ____ she had promised us.
A. what B. which C. that D. as
117. The expense of imported car is likely to be ____ not enough people will be able to afford it.
A. such that B. so that C. in that D. such as
118. We had hoped to give you a chance ____ nobody else ever had.
A. as B. such C. as such D. such as
119. Suddenly it began to rain heavily , ____ it was almost impossible to carry on driving.
A. now that B. so that C. even if D. just as
120. Computers are ____ much part of everyone s lives now that it s difficult to imagine what people would do without them.
A. such B. so C. very D. as

第十二章 it 的用法

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. I hate ____ when people talk with their mouths full.
A. it B. that C. these D. them
- (98)2. It was only when I reread his poems recently ____ I began to appreciate their beauty.
A. until B. that C. then D. so
- (00)3. It is the ability to do the job ____ matters not where you come from or what you are.
A. one B. that C. what D. this
- (01)4. The Parkers bought a new house but ____ will need a lot of work before they can move in.
A. they B. it C. one D. which
- (04)5. The Foreign Minister said , “ ____ our hope that the two sides will work towards peace. ”
A. This is B. There is C. That is D. It is

答案 1. ABBBD

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. ____ was in 1979 ____ I graduated from the university.
A. That ,that B. It ,that C. That ,when D. It ,when
- (99)2. What a pity my new computer doesn't work. ____ must be something wrong with it.
A. It B. There C. This D. That

- (01)3. In fact ____ is a hard job for the police to keep order in an important football match.
A. this B. that C. there D. it
- (03)4. It is these poisonous products ____ can cause the symptoms of the flu , such as headache and aching muscles.
A. who B. that C. how D. what
- (04)5. Why ! I have nothing to confess. ____ you want me to say ?
A. What is it that B. What it is that
C. How is it that D. How it is that
- (05)6. ____ in the regulations that you should not tell other people the password of your e-mail account.
A. What is required B. What requires
C. It is required D. It requires

答案 1. BBDBA 6. C

三、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. It was how the young man had learned five foreign languages ____ attracted the audience s interest.
A. so that B. that C. what D. in which
- (01) 2. It was for this reason ____ her uncle moved out of New York and settled down in a small village.
A. which B. why C. that D. how
- (01) 3. ____ is no possibility ____ Bob can win the first prize in the match.
A. There ; that B. It ; that
C. There ; whether D. It ; whether
- (02) 4. Since you have repaired my TV set , ____ is no need for me to buy a new one.
A. it B. there C. this D. that
- (02) 5. It ____ long before we ____ the result of the experiment.

- A. will not be ; will know B. is ; will know
C. will not be ; know D. is ; know
- (03) 6. It was because of bad weather ____ the football match had to be put off.
A. so B. so that C. why D. that
- (04) 7. It was only with the help of the local guide _____.
A. was the mountain climber rescued
B. that the mountain climber was rescued
C. when the mountain climber was rescued
D. then the mountain climber was rescued
- (05) 8. Our club is open to adults only. ____ your children have entered without permission.
A. There seems that B. It seems to be
C. There seems to be D. It seems that
- (05) 9. It was after the invention of printing ____ to publish large numbers of books and pictures.
A. were people able B. that people were able
C. when were people able D. people were able
- (06) 10. David said that it was because of his strong interest in literature ____ he chose the course.
A. that B. what C. why D. how
- (07) 11. It is imagination ____ makes the world colourful , full of vigour and vitality.
A. where B. what C. that D. when

答案 : 1. BCABC 6. DBDBA 11. C

第二部分 解题指导

it 可用作实词(代词)和虚词(助词)。实词 it 指用于人称和前指(指代刚提到的人或事),用于无人称时,作主语,表示时间、距离、天气等。虚词 it 可用作形式主语或形式宾语,也用于构成的强调句型。

(一) 实词(代词)

1. 用作人称和前指

1) 指人。例如：

Who is it ? Is it you , Andrew ?

Who is making such a noise ? It must be the children.

2) 代替前文提到过人或事物。例如：

What a beautiful baby - is it a boy ?

She was a rich woman and she looked it.

"Where is my book ?" "It s on the table. "

You have saved my life ; I shall never forget it.

3) 代替指示代词 this , that。例如：

"What s this ?" "It s a flag. "

"Whose exercise-book is that ?" "It s hers. "

4) 代替一个彼此都知其所指的东西。例如：

Where does it hurt ?

How s it going with you ?

2. 用作无人称

常用作没有具体意义的主语，表示气候、天气、温度、时间、地点、距离等。例如：

1) 指天气

It s damp and cold. I think it s going to rain.

2) 指时间、季节等。例如：

"What time is it ?" "It is eight o'clock. "

I hope it is spring all the year round.

3) 指距离。例如：

It is five kilometers from the office to my home.

4) 指环境、情况等。例如：

It was very quiet (noisy) at the moment.

It s awful — I ve got so much work that I don t know where to start.

5) “无人称 it”也用于如下结构：

It looks as if the college is very small.

It seems as though our plan will be perfect.

6) “无人称 it”还用于下列词组中：

catch it 受处罚 have it 倒霉

That's it! 这就对了! make it 按时到达, 成功

(二)虚词(助词)

1. 作形式主语

当动词不定式、动名词或从句作主语时,通常把它们放在谓语之后,而用 it 作句子的形式主语。例如:

It is not a good habit to stay up late. (代表不定式)

It is no use crying over spilt milk. (代表动名词)

It's a waste of time your talking to him. (代表动名词,动名词前可跟一个逻辑主语)

It is a pity that you didn't read the book. (代表 that 引起的从句)

It is uncertain whether he has passed the examination. (代表 whether 引起的从句)

It is strange that he should ask you about it. (代表 that 引起的从句,有时谓语需用虚拟语气)

2. 作形式宾语

当复合宾语中的宾语是不定式、动名词或宾语从句时,往往把宾语放在它的补足语后面,而用 it 作形式宾语,放在宾语补足语之前。句型结构:

主语 +	{	believe, consider	} + it + 宾语补足语 +	{	不定式	
		count, feel, find				} that + 从句
		imagine, make				
		regard, suppose				
		take, think				

You must find it exciting working here. (代表动名词)

I made it my business to settle the matter. (代表不定式)

I owe it to you that I can achieve so much. (代表 that 引起的从句)

Something put it into his head that she was a spy. (代表 that 引起的从句)

用 it 充当形式宾语,还用于以下几种动词构成的句子中。

- 1) 主语 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{would appreciate} \\ \text{can make} \end{array} \right\} + \text{it} + \text{if 从句}$

(表示礼貌的请求和建议)

I would appreciate it if you could come to my birthday party.

You can make it(按时到达) if you hurry.

- 2) 主语 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like, love} \\ \text{hate, dislike} \end{array} \right\} + \text{it} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{when} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right\} + \text{从句}$

(表示喜欢和不喜欢)

I hate it when people stare at me.

We love it when the grandchildren come over.

- 3) 主语 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have(声称), take(认为)} \\ \text{hide(隐瞒), publish(公布)} \\ \text{put(表达, 写出来)} \end{array} \right\} + \text{it} + \text{that} + \text{从句}$

Legend has it that there is a dragon in the lake.

I take it that you will be leaving Shanghai soon.

We published it that we had finished the project ahead of time.

- 4) 主语 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{count on(期待), see to(确保)} \\ \text{depend on(依靠), insist on(坚持)} \\ \text{answer for(担保), rely on(指望)} \end{array} \right\} + \text{it} + \text{that} + \text{从句}$

I am counting on it that you will come.

She'll see to it that he goes ahead.

You may rely on it that everything will be ready by Monday.

3. 用于构成强调句型, 强调主语、宾语或状语

把 it 用于强调句型。其结构是:

It + be + 被强调部分 + that + 句子的其余部分

1) 强调主语

It is Prof. Lin who teaches us English.

It was I that/who met Prof. Lin in the street yesterday.

It is the times that produce their heroes. 时势造英雄。

It is his tiny nerve which feels any pain.

注意: 强调主语时, that 后的动词要与被强调的名词或代词的人称和数一致。例如:

It is I that am wrong.

2) 强调宾语

It is English that Prof. Lin teaches us.

It was Prof. Lin that/whom I met in the street yesterday.

3) 强调状语

It was in Shanghai that I saw the film. (地点介词短语, 用 that)

It was in 1975 that I worked in a factory. (时间介词短语, 用 that)

It was yesterday that/when he bought an English book in town. (时间副词, 也可用 when)

It was because it raised so many difficult questions that the book took a long time to come out. (强调状语从句)

说明: • be 的时态可以是现在时 is, 可以是过去时 was, 也可以是将来时 will be。

• 句型中的 that 可以用 who(指人, 作主语), whom(指人, 作宾语), which(指物), when(指时间), where(指地点)。但强调的时间状语或地点状语是介词短语时, 则必须用 that, 不能用 when 或 where。

4. 用于强调特殊疑问句

如果强调的是特殊疑问句, 表示“究竟……”、“到底……”等语气时, 就用如下结构:

特殊疑问词 + is(was) + it + that + 句子

Where was it that you met him?

What is it that he wants to see?

What was it that made you so sad?

When was it that you saw him?

Why is it that you want to change your idea?

这类强调结构也可用作表语或宾语。例如:

The question is which book it is that you want to buy.

He found out who it was that saved the drowning boy.

5. It is that 用于让步句

用于让步句的句型是:

It is a + 形容词 + 单数可数名词 + that + 谓语动词

It is a good horse that never stumbles.

再好的马也会失蹄。

It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.

再恶的风也不会吹得人人不舒服。/天下无绝对的坏事。

It is a long lane that has no turning.

路必有弯，事必有变。/车到山前必有路。/否极泰来。

It s a wise man that never makes mistakes.

智者千虑，必有一失。

翻译时应注意以下三点：

①句中的形容词设定为让步条件，可译为“再……也……”。

②that 句子的含义是肯定要译为否定，反之要译为肯定。

③此类句子常用于谚语中，表示一定的哲理，句中的动词一般为现在时，有时也用将来时或完成时。

第三部分 分类练习

- His father kept telling her that she should work harder , but ____ didn't help.
A. it B. he C. which D. she
- He felt ____ duty to work for human rights and progress.
A. it his B. his C. that is a D. it is his
- People in the west make ____ a rule to buy Christmas presents for their relatives and friends.
A. that B. it C. this D. as
- ____ needs further discussion whether we'll build a library or not.
A. That B. This C. It D. The thing
- ____ no small wonder that they had so much trouble.
A. This is B. That is C. There is D. It is
- "Where did you meet him?"
"It was in the hotel ____ I was staying. "
A. that B. when C. where D. which
- ____ is no good ____ without doing anything.
A. This ; talking B. It ; to talk C. It ; talking D. That ; to talk
- I like ____ in the autumn when the weather is clear and bright.
A. it B. this C. that D. one

9. How long ____ to finish the work ?
 A. you'll take B. will take you C. you'll take it D. will it take you
10. ____ sometimes appear that children are crying when they are laughing.
 A. They may B. It may C. He may D. There may
11. It was ____ I reached there ____ I began to know something about the matter.
 A. until ; when B. until ; that C. not until ; that D. not when ; that
12. Why don't you bring ____ to his attention that you are too busy to do it.
 A. me B. that C. yourself D. it
13. ____ will take you a lot of time to find him in the crowd.
 A. It B. I C. We D. They
14. Let's get through the work quickly. ____ seems to be little time left now.
 A. It B. That C. There D. We
15. You can count on ____ that he will help you when you are in trouble.
 A. him B. me C. it D. there
16. The death of her husband and the suffering ____ caused affected the young lady greatly.
 A. it B. that C. what D. which
17. ____ will be years ____ we meet again.
 A. There ; since B. There ; after C. It ; that D. It ; before
18. John dislikes ____ that Lily is so lazy.
 A. them B. these C. it D. those
19. You may depend on ____ that all the goods will be shipped abroad in time.
 A. which B. it C. whom D. these
20. I'll see to ____ that all the lights are turned off.
 A. it B. this C. / D. them
21. ____ seemed that John hadn't forgotten his promise.
 A. There B. This C. That D. It
22. I hadn't the slightest idea ____ he was talking about.
 A. what it was B. what it was that
 C. what was it D. what he was that
23. Quite a number of parents would spend unreasonable amount of money when ____ to education.
 A. there comes B. they come C. it comes D. here comes
24. ____ you were born ?
 A. Was it where that B. It was where that

第十三章 倒 装

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (03)1. The old couple have been married for 40 years and never once _____ with each other.
A. they had quarreled B. they have quarreled
C. have they quarreled D. had they quarreled

答案 1. C

二、上海高考题(1997 - 2007)

- (97)1. "David has made great progress recently. "
" _____ , and _____ . "
A. So he has ,so you have B. So he has ,so have you
C. So has he ,so have you D. So has he ,so you have
- (00)2. Not a single song _____ at yesterday's party.
A. she sang B. sang she C. did she sing D. she did sing
- (01)3. _____ , I have never seen anyone who's as capable as John.
A. As long as I have traveled
B. Now that I have traveled so much
C. Much as I have traveled
D. As I have traveled so much
- (01)4. So difficult _____ it to live in an English-speaking country that I determined to learn English well.
A. I have felt B. have I felt C. I did feel D. did I feel
- (02)5. "You forgot your purse when you went out. "

“ Good heavens , _____. ”

A. so did I B. so I did C. I did so D. I so did

(03) 6. Only when your identity has been checked , _____.

A. you are allowed in B. you will be allowed in

C. will you allow in D. will you be allowed in

(04) 7. _____ snacks and drinks , but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.

A. Not only they brought B. Not only did they bring

C. Not only brought they D. Not only they did bring

(05) 8. Never before _____ in greater need of modern public transport than it is today.

A. has this city been B. this city has been

C. was this city D. this city was

(07) 9. - How was the televised debate last night ?

- Super ! Rarely _____ so much media attention.

A. a debate attracted B. did a debate attract

C. a debate did attract D. attracted a debate

答案 :1. BCCDB 6. DBAB

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

(00) 1. I finally got the job I dreamed about. Never in all my life _____ so happy !

A. did I feel B. I felt C. I had felt D. had I felt

(01) 2. _____ can you expect to get a pay rise.

A. With hard work B. Although work hard

C. Only with hard work D. Now that he works hard

答案 :1. DC

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (01) 1. Only when the war was over ____ to his hometown.
A. did the young soldier return
B. the young soldier returned
C. returned the young soldier
D. the young soldier did return
- (02) 2. Not only ____ interested in football but ____ beginning to show an interest in it.
A. the teacher himself is ; all his students are
B. the teacher himself is ; are all his students
C. is the teacher himself ; are all his students
D. is the teacher himself ; all his students are
- (03) 3. Only in this way ____ to make improvement in the operating system.
A. you can hope
B. you did hope
C. can you hope
D. did you hope
- (05) 4. So little ____ with each other that the neighbouring countries could not settle their differences.
A. they agreed
B. agreed they
C. did they agree
D. they did agree
- (06) 5. Just in front of our house ____ with a history of 1 ,000 years.
A. does a tall tree stand
B. stands a tall tree
C. a tall tree is standing
D. a tall tree stands
- (07) 6. - Did you see who the driver was ?
- No , so quickly ____ that I couldn't get a good look at his face.
A. did the car speed by
B. the car sped by.
C. does the car speed by
D. the car speeds by

答案 :1. ADCCB 6. A

第二部分 解题指导

英语句子的自然语序是主语在前，谓语在后，但为了强调句中的某一部分可以把原来的语序重新调整。通常的方法是将要强调的部分放在主语之前，这就叫倒装结构。地点状语、时间状语等放在主语之前叫完全倒装；只把某些功能词，如否定词或半否定词置于句首叫部分倒装。

（一）完全倒装

1. 地点副词或时间副词位于句首时

表地点的副词有 *there, here*，表时间的副词有 *then, now, next, finally* 等。例如：

Here are my replies to your questions.

Here comes the bus.

There goes the bell.

There remained only ten dollars in his pocket.

Then came the time to part.

Now comes your turn.

注意：①代词作主语时，主谓语序不变。例如：

Here it is. There you are.

注意：②此结构不用于进行时态。常用的谓语动词有 *be, come, go, lie, live, lay, seem, remain, stand*，等。

2. 方位副词位于句首时

常见的方位副词有 *in, out, up, down, away, off, back* 等。

In comes Mr Smith.

Out went the children.

Down flew the eagle to seize the chicken.

Away ran the terrified boy.

注意：代词作主语时，主谓语序不变。例如：

In he comes.

Up they climbed, almost out of breath.

3. 表地点的介词短语位于句首时

From the valley came a frightening sound.

At the top of the hill stands the old church.

In this chapter will be found a satisfactory answer.

4. 某些表语位于句首时

1) 表语为介词短语

Among the goods are Christmas trees , flowers , candles and toys.

Inside the pyramids are the burial rooms for the kings and queens and long passages to these rooms.

2) 表语为形容词

Present at the meeting were Professor White , Professor Smith and many other guests.

Happy is he who has a sound mind in a sound body.

Higher up are the temples built in ancient China.

3) 表语为过去分词

Gone are the days when they could do what they liked to the Chinese people.

Seated on the ground are a group of young people.

4) 表语为进行时态中的现在分词

Lying on the floor was a boy aged about seventeen.

Standing beside the table was an interpreter.

5. 用于 so , nor , neither 开头的句子

此类倒装用于重复前句部分内容,前句是肯定句用 so,前句是否定句用 neither,或 nor,所指的往往是另一人或另一物。倒装结构中的谓语应与前句谓语的时态、形式相一致。例如:

肯定句 + **so + 倒装结构(倒装句所指的为另一人或另一物)**

He has been to Beijing. So have I.

否定句 + **neither/nor + 倒装结构(倒装句所指的为另一人或另一物)**

Li Wei can't answer the question. Neither can I.

在重复前句为肯定句的内容时,若所指的是同一人或同一物,仅将 so 提前,后接的句子不倒装。例如:

肯定句 + **so + 陈述句(陈述句所指的为同一人或同一物)**

He said he would call on her. So he did.

Zhang Ping is a top student in our class. So he is.

6. 为了保持句子平衡,或为了使上下文紧密衔接时

They arrived at a farmhouse, in front of which sat a small boy.

(二) 部分倒装

1. 用于三个表示强调的句型中

1) 意为“一……就……,刚……就……”,指某事发生得过早。

Hardly	}	{ 倒装句式 (过去完成时)	+ when +	{ 陈述句形式 (过去时态)
Barely				
Scarcely				
No sooner	+ { 倒装句式 (过去完成时)	+ than +	{ 陈述句形式 (过去时态)	

Hardly/Barely/Scarcely had he arrived at the station when the train began to leave.

No sooner had she gone out than the telephone rang.

说明:有时还可利用别的含有否定意义的词构成此含义。例如:

I hadn't been asleep long when the alarm went off. 我刚睡下没多久闹钟就响了。

I hadn't been reading for half an hour when I heard steps outside. 我刚读了不到半个小时就听到外面有脚步声。

2) 意为“不但……而且……”

Not only + 倒装句式 + but (also) + 陈述句形式

Not only did he work faster, he worked better also.

Not only did I know her, but I was her best friend.

3) 意为“直到……才……”

Not until + 句子(陈述句式)/时间状语 + 倒装句式

Not until the teacher came did he finish his homework.

Not until yesterday did I learn anything about it.

注意下面句子不倒装:

It was not until the teacher came that he finished his homework.

2. 用于 only 开头的句子

Only + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{时间副词} \\ \text{介词短语} \\ \text{状语从句} \end{array} \right\}$ + 倒装句式

例如：

Only this afternoon did I finish the novel.

Only once was he beaten for his dishonesty.

Only by working hard can we succeed in everything.

Only with a great deal of effort was he able to escape.

Only in this way can you master English.

Only when he told me did I realize what trouble he was in.

如果 only 后面的词组不是状语，则不用倒装。例如：

Only Wang Ling knows this.

3. 某些否定词位于句首时

Hardly , Scarcely , Not a bit , Not once Seldom , Never ; Barely , Rarely ; Little In no time , In no way , In no case At no time , By no means , On no account Nowhere , No longer , Under no circumstances	} + 倒装句式
--	----------

例如：

Never shall I do this again.

Little did he know who the woman was.

Hardly did he know that the police were after him.

Nowhere could I find him.

Not once has he failed to fulfil his task.

Not a single stone was left unturned in the search.

Under no circumstances could we agree to such a principle.

4. so , such 等表程度的副词位于句首时

此类副词有：so , such , often , well , bitterly , gladly 等。

So frightened was she in the darkness that she didn't dare to move.

So many questions did they ask me that I got confused.

So much does he worry about his position that he cannot sleep at night.

Such a fierce dog did he have that we had to wait before we could get in.

Such was the force of the explosion that all the windows were broken.

Often does he warn us not to touch the poisonous chemical.

Well do I remember the days when we were at school together.

Gladly would I give my life to save the child !

如果 so/such 位于句首修饰主语时，则不用倒装。例如：

So few people came to his birthday party that he felt disappointed.

5. 带 To such 表程度的词组位于句首时

To such an extent 到如此程度

To what/such a degree 到什么/如此程度

To such extremes 到如此(极端的)程度

To such length(s) 到这种(详细的)地步

} + 倒装句式

To such a degree was he excited that he couldn't go to sleep that night.

To such lengths did he speak that everyone got bored.

6. 用于省略 if 的虚拟条件状语从句

1) Were/Should/Had + 主语 + (not) 其他成份

= If + 主语 + were/had/should + (not) 其他成份

Were he my friend, I would expect his help.

Should it rain tomorrow, I should stay indoors.

Had you not told me about the matter, I should never have known the whole thing.

2) Were it not for/Had it not been for + 名词

= If it were not for/hadn't been for + 名词

Were it not for their help, we would be in serious trouble.

Had it not been for their support, we couldn't have won the election.

7. 用于让步状语从句和原因状语从句

在让步状语从句或原因状语从句中用倒装形式，其句型是：

形容词 名词(不加冠词) 分词 动词 副词	}	+ { as though }	+ 主语 +	系动词
				情态动词
				助动词
				谓语动词

例如：

Strange though it may seem , the tallest boy is the youngest. (形容词，表让步)

= Although it may seem strange , the tallest boy is the youngest.

Tired that/as he was , he went to bed early. (形容词，表原因)

= Because he was tired , he went to bed early.

Woman as she is , she is courageous. (名词，表让步)

= Although she is a woman , she is courageous.

Coward as he was , he ran away as soon as the enemy attacked. (名词，表原因)

= Because he was a coward , he ran away as soon as the enemy attacked.

Surrounded as he was by the enemy , he was not afraid. (分词，表让步)

= Although he was surrounded by the enemy , he was not afraid.

Absorbed as he was in the book , he did not notice my entering the room. (分词，表原因)

= Because he was absorbed in the book , he did not notice my entering the room.

Try as he would , he might fail again. (动词)

= Although he would try , he might fail again.

Hard as he studies , he cannot pass the exam. (副词)

= Although he studies hard , he cannot pass the exam.

Much as I like you , I will not marry you. (副词)

注意 ①通常用 as 或 though 引导表让步的状语从句。

注意 ②通常用 as 或 that 引导表原因的状语从句。

注意 :③从句中的主语较长,也可用全部倒装。例如:

Difficult as was the chemistry homework, it was finished in time.

8. 用于 as 和 than 引导的状语从句

在 as 引导的方式状语从句和 than 引导的比较状语从句中,如果从句的主语较长或带有长的修饰语时,可用倒装形式。例如:

He travelled a great deal as did most of his friends.

Harry is unusually tall, as are his brothers.

I spend less than do nine out of ten people in my position.

9. 用于 the the 结构的主句中

在表达“越……越”时,通常用 the the 这一结构,若此结构中主句的主语太长,也可用倒装句型。例如:

The more grain we produce, the greater will be our achievement.

The more famous he became, the higher (were) the prices his pictures fetched.

10. 宾语置于句首的倒装

This they do partly for ornament and partly to keep the flies off.

What will become of him, no one can tell.

11. 宾语补足语提前的倒装

宾语补足语是说明宾语的,通常接在宾语后面。宾语较长时,也可将宾语补足语提前。但宾语是人称代词时则不能倒置。例如:

We broke $\begin{cases} \text{the door open.} \\ \text{open the door.} \end{cases}$ We broke $\begin{cases} \text{it open.} \\ \text{open it. (错误)} \end{cases}$

He made clear his strong objection to the proposals.

He considers impossible what is really possible.

They saw repairing the machine two workers who designed it.

12. 主语修饰语后置的倒装

为使主语和动词接近,把主语修饰语移至动词之后。例如:

The time had come to decorate the house for Christmas.

He is a fool who cannot be angry, but he is a wise man who will not.

13. 用于几个特殊结构的让步状语从句

在下列三个特殊结构的让步状语从句中,意为“无论”。

- 1) “Be + 主语 + ever so 形容词”意为“无论怎样……”

Be a man ever so clever, he knows nothing if he doesn't learn.

无论一个人有多聪明,不学习就什么都不知道。

Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.

家境虽然颇贫寒,天涯无处胜家园。

- 2) “Be + 主语 + A or B”意为“无论是 A 或 B”

Be he friend or enemy, the law regards him as a criminal.

无论他是敌是友,法律认为他是罪犯。

All magnets behave the same, be they small or large.

所有磁铁,无论大小,作用都相同。

- 3) “动词 + wh-词 + will/may”意为“无论”

Come what may, we must remain cheerful.

无论发生什么事,我们必须保持愉快的心情。

Go where you will, you cannot succeed without perseverance.

无论在何处,没有坚忍不拔的意志都不会成功。

14. 宾语从句为直接引语的句子位于句首时

如果直接引语后注明引语是什么人说的,而且主语是名词时,用倒装结构;主语是代词时,一般不用倒装。例如:

“Let's go,” said the man/he said.

15. 用于某些表示祝愿的句子

May you succeed! 祝你成功!

May he live to regret this decision!

但愿他终究会后悔他作的这一决定!

第三部分 分类练习

1. Look, ____.

A. here the bus comes

B. here is the bus coming

C. here comes the bus

D. here the bus is coming

2. If you don't go to the library tomorrow, ____.

A. neither shall I

B. nor I do

C. so do I

D. neither do I

3. The bus hit against a tree in the fog and ____ to the deep valley, with ten passengers killed and twenty more wounded.

- A. down did it roll B. down rolled it
C. it down rolled D. down it rolled
4. Out _____, with a stick in his hand.
A. did he rush B. rushed he C. he rushed D. he did rush
5. So fast _____ that it is difficult for us to imagine its speed.
A. light travels B. travels light
C. does light travel D. has light travelled
6. _____, he knows a lot of things.
A. A child as he is B. Child as he is
C. A child as is he D. Child as is he
7. _____, you can't lift the heavy box up.
A. Even you're strong B. Strong as you are
C. How strong you are D. As you're strong
8. _____ about wild plants that they decided to make a trip to Madagascar for further research.
A. How curious the couple were B. So curious the couple was
C. The couple was such curious D. So curious were the couple
9. Early in the day _____ the enemy were gone.
A. the news that came B. came the news that
C. did the news come that D. came the news which
10. Only when you realize the importance of foreign languages _____ them well.
A. you can learn B. can you learn
C. that you can learn D. and you can learn
11. Only after liberation _____ to be treated as human beings.
A. did they begin B. they began
C. that they began D. had they begun
12. Not only _____ to stay at home, but he was also forbidden to see his friends.
A. that he was forced B. he was forced
C. had he been forced D. was he forced
13. Not until his father was out of prison _____ to school.
A. that John could go B. John couldn't go
C. could John go D. John could go
14. Never before _____ such a stupid man.
A. I have seen B. I saw C. have I seen D. did I see
15. Rarely _____ such a silly thing.

- A. important though it is B. so important it is
C. important if it is D. it is important though
29. Nowhere else along the coast ____ such shallow water so far from land.
A. is there B. there is C. it is D. is it
30. On no account ____ such a silly decision.
A. will we agree to B. we will agree to
C. will we agree with D. we will agree with
31. So involved with their computers ____ that leaders at summer computer camps often have to force them to break for sports and games.
A. the children become B. become the children
C. the children do become D. do the children become
32. ____, I couldn't lift the box.
A. As I might try B. Try although I might
C. As try I might D. Try as I might
33. So ____ that no fish can live in it.
A. the river is polluted B. polluted the river is
C. polluted is the river D. is the river polluted
34. She never laughed, ____ lose her temper.
A. or she ever did B. so did she ever
C. nor did she ever D. nor she ever did
35. We don't need air conditioning, ____.
A. nor can we afford it B. and nor we can afford it
C. neither can afford it D. and we can neither afford it
36. ____ from the tenth floor when the policeman pointed his pistol at him.
A. Jumped down the burglar B. Down the burglar jumped
C. Down jumped the burglar D. Down did the burglar jump
37. ____ will China be the first to use nuclear weapons.
A. At the same time B. At no time
C. At a time D. At that time
38. Only then ____ what "revolution" meant.
A. I realized B. I do realize C. did I realize D. I did realize
39. We have been told that under no circumstances ____ the telephone in the office for personal affairs.
A. may we use B. we may use C. we could use D. did we use
40. ____ the door than somebody started knocking on it.

- A. I had closed no sooner B. I had no sooner closed
 C. No sooner have I closed D. No sooner I closed
41. He is not under arrest , ____ any restriction on him.
 A. or the police placed B. or have the police placed
 C. nor the police have placed D. nor have the police placed
42. After the war ____.
 A. was followed by a long period of political confusion
 B. a long period of political confusion followed
 C. did a long period of political confusion follow
 D. followed a long period of political confusion
43. At the back of the book ____ of the works available for further research.
 A. listed are the titles B. are listed the titles
 C. are the titles listed D. the titles are listed
44. Flying demands a much greater supply of energy than ____ most other forms of transportation.
 A. is B. has C. that D. do
45. Man may disappear ____ other creatures who became too specialized to survive their environment.
 A. as B. just as C. as if D. as have

第十四章 词的用法

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Nobody noticed the thief slip into the house because the lights happened to _____.
A. be put up B. give in C. be turned on D. go out
- (98)2. They _____ the train until it disappeared in the distance.
A. saw B. watched C. noticed D. observed
- (98)3. You'll find this map of great _____ in helping you to get round London.
A. price B. cost C. value D. usefulness
- (99)4. _____ him and then try to copy what he does.
A. Mind B. Glance at C. Stare at D. Watch
- (99)5. "Do you think the Stars will beat the Bulls?"
"Yes. They have better players, so I _____ them to win."
A. hope B. prefer C. expect D. want
- (99)6. Your performance in the driving test didn't reach the required standard — _____, you failed.
A. in the end B. after all
C. in other words D. at the same time
- (00)7. I don't think I'll need any money, but I'll bring some _____.
A. at last B. in case C. once again D. in time
- (00)8. It's always difficult being in a foreign country, _____ if you don't speak the language.
A. extremely B. naturally C. basically D. especially
- (00)9. Let Harry play with your toys as well, Claire — you must learn to _____.
_____.

- A. support B. care C. spare D. share
- (01)10. As we joined the big crowd I got ____ from my friends.
A. separated B. spared C. lost D. missed
- (01)11. We didn't plan our art exhibition like that but it ____ very well.
A. worked out B. tried out C. went on D. carried on
- (02)12. The mother didn't know ____ to blame for the broken glass as it happened while she was out.
A. who B. when C. how D. what
- (02)13. The taxi driver often reminds passengers to ____ their belongings when they leave the car.
A. keep B. catch C. hold D. take
- (02)14. We thought of selling this old furniture, but we've decided to ____ it. It might be valuable.
A. hold on to B. keep up with C. turn to D. look after
- (03)15. If anybody calls, tell them I'm out, and ask them to ____ their name and address.
A. pass B. write C. take. D. leave
- (03)16. News reports say peace talks between the two countries ____ with no agreement reached.
A. have broken down B. have broken out
C. have broken in D. have broken up
- (04)17. I don't ____ rock n roll. It's much too noisy for my taste.
A. go after B. go away with C. go into D. go in for
- (05)18. It's the present situation in poor areas that ____ much higher spending on education and training.
A. answers for B. provides for C. calls for D. plans for

答案 1. DBCDC 6. CBDDA 11. AADAD 16. ADC

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. Don't ____ that all those who get good grades in the entrance ex-

amination will prove to be most successful.

A. take as granted B. take this for granted

C. take that for granted D. take it for granted

(98)2. You can take as many as you like because they are free of ____.

A. fare B. charge C. money D. pay

(98)3. You look nice in green. Green ____ you.

A. suits B. fits C. matches D. satisfies

(98)4. The new research team was led by the ____ engineer.

A. main B. major C. chief D. primary

(98)5. A ____ will be offered for information leading to the arrest of the bank robber.

A. price B. fund C. reward D. profit

(98)6. Being a sailor ____ long periods away from home.

A. includes B. involves C. contains D. expects

(98)7. The tourist industry has ____ a variety of jobs.

A. invented B. developed C. discovered D. created

(98)8. Do you know the ____ of the saying I just quoted ?

A. source B. resource C. course D. cause

(98)9. Don't be too ____ about things you are not supposed to know.

A. strange B. amusing C. curious D. conscious

(98)10. The best method to ____ this goal is to unite as many people as possible.

A. undertake B. conduct C. perform D. accomplish

(98)11. Some of the houses on the hillside are ____ to cars.

A. inaccessible B. impossible

C. inconvenient D. inadequate

(99)12. " May I speak to Mr. Thomas , please ?"

" I'm afraid he isn't in. Would you like to ____ a message ?"

A. take B. write C. leave D. tell

(99)13. The manager has ____ to improve the working conditions in the company.

A. accepted B. allowed C. permitted D. agreed

- (99)14. Those T-shirts are usually \$35 each , but today they have a ____ price of \$19 in the Shopping Center.
A. regular B. special C. cheap D. particular
- (99)15. We all know that ____ speak louder than words.
A. movements B. performance C. operation D. actions
- (99)16. My parents always let me have my own ____ of living.
A. way B. method C. manner D. fashion
- (99)17. ____ with foreign countries can bring us much information about the world.
A. Contrast B. Competition C. Contact D. Combination
- (99)18. Mother told Jim to ____ the milk until it boiled and then turn off the gas.
A. observe B. watch C. notice D. glance
- (99)19. It is a good way for us to memorize new words by seeing them ____.
A. properly B. repeatedly C. clearly D. usually
- (99)20. The new law will come into ____ on the day it is passed.
A. effect B. use C. service D. existence
- (99)21. Washington , a state in the United States , was named ____ one of the greatest American presidents.
A. in honour of B. instead of
C. in favour of D. by means of
- (00)22. The lion is considered the king of the forest as it is a(n) ____ of courage and power.
A. example B. sign C. mark D. symbol
- (00)23. We volunteered to collect money to help the ____ of the earthquake.
A. victims B. folks C. fellows D. villagers
- (00)24. If you don't take away all your things from the desk , there won't be enough ____ for my stationery.
A. area B. place C. room D. surface
- (00)25. It is widely accepted that young babies learn to do things because

- certain acts lead to ____.
- A. rewards B. prizes C. awards D. results
- (00)26. I wrote him a letter to show my ____ of his thoughtfulness.
- A. achievement B. agreement C. attention D. appreciation
- (00)27. One of the advantages of living on the top floor of a highrise is that you can get a good ____.
- A. sight B. scene C. view D. look
- (00)28. "Excuse me , may I ask you some questions ?"
- "Sorry , I m too busy and haven t even a minute to ____ . "
- A. spend B. spare C. share D. stop
- (00)29. Although the working mother is very busy , she still ____ a lot of time to her children.
- A. devotes B. spends C. offers D. provides
- (00)30. When I opened the door , a parcel on the floor ____ my eye.
- A. met B. caught C. drew D. attracted
- (00)31. After the president made an official announcement , she expressed her ____ opinion.
- A. personal B. private C. single D. individual
- (00)32. Alice laid her baby on the sofa ____ and wrapped it with a blanket.
- A. silently B. tenderly C. friendly D. comfortably
- (00)33. Fred is second to none in maths in our class , but believe it or not , he ____ passed the last exam.
- A. easily B. hardly C. actually D. successfully
- (00)34. Our bodies are strengthened by taking exercise. ____ our minds developed by learning.
- A. Probably B. Likely C. Similarly D. Generally
- (00)35. He holds an important position in the company ; ____ , I don t quite trust him.
- A. thus B. furthermore C. otherwise D. nevertheless
- (00)36. If you had ____ your test paper carefully before handing it in , you would have made fewer mistakes.

- (02)48. Mary finally ____ Bruce as her life-long companion.
A. received B. accepted C. made D. honoured
- (02)49. The secret of his success is that he does everything ____.
A. efficiently B. curiously C. anxiously D. sufficiently
- (02)50. Go and join in the party. ____ it to me to do the washing-up.
A. Get B. Remain C. Leave D. Send
- (02)51. To regain their ____ after an exhausting game , the players lay in the grass.
A. force B. energy C. power D. health
- (02)52. According to the recent research , heavy coffee drinking and heart attack is not necessarily ____ and effect.
A. reason B. impact C. fact D. cause
- (02)53. Every new ____ has the possibility of making or losing money.
A. event B. venture C. adventure D. expectation
- (02)54. Whatever rank you may be in , it would be wrong to ____ the law into your own hands.
A. bring B. hold C. take D. seize
- (02)55. The shopkeeper gave us ____ weight : we got 9 kilos instead of 10 kilos.
A. scarce B. short C. light D. slight
- (02)56. Can you make a sentence to ____ the meaning of the phrase ?
A. show off B. turn out C. bring out D. take in
- (03)57. Some passengers complain that it usually ____ so long to fill in travel insurance documents.
A. costs B. takes C. spends D. spares
- (03)58. " I don t think it s my ____ that the TV blew up. I just turned it on , that s all , " said the boy.
A. error B. mistake C. fault D. duty
- (03)59. My grandfather is as ____ as a young man and hates sitting around doing nothing all day.
A. enthusiastic B. energetic
C. talkative D. sensitive

- (03)60. Broadly speaking , I would agree with Shirley , though not _____.
A. widely B. thoroughly C. entirely D. extensively
- (03)61. Tony is _____ the guidebook , looking for information about Japan , where he will travel soon.
A. tracing B. skipping C. inspecting D. scanning
- (03)62. One of the consequences of our planet s being warming up is a(n) _____ in the number of natural disasters.
A. result B. account C. reason D. increase
- (03)63. Those who change mobile phones frequently will pay a heavy price for being _____.
A. graceful B. fashionable C. particular D. feasible
- (03)64. Life is tough in the city. In order to lose their _____ , some people drink alcohol.
A. temper B. mood
C. consciousness D. pressures
- (03)65. Her talent and experience _____ her to the respect of her colleagues.
A. permitted B. qualified C. deserved D. entitled
- (03)66. The engine of the ship was out of order and the bad weather _____ the helplessness of the crew at sea.
A. added to B. resulted from
C. turned out D. made up
- (04)67. The environmentalists said wild goats _____ on the vast grasslands was a good indication of the better environment.
A. escape B. absence C. attendance D. appearance
- (04)68. Hospital staff burst into cheers after doctors completed a 20-hour operation to have _____ one-year-old twins at the head.
A. isolated B. separated C. divided D. removed
- (04)69. After the trainer was sure that the whale could look after itself , he _____ it into the sea.
A. transported B. unloaded C. released D. handled
- (04)70. In _____ Chinese culture , marriage decisions were often made by

- parents for their children.
- A. traditional B. historic C. remote D. initial
- (04)71. Some people like drinking coffee , for it has ____ effects.
A. promoting B. stimulating C. enhancing D. encouraging
- (04)72. The teacher wrote an example on the blackboard to ____ the point.
A. illustrate B. suggest C. express D. recognize
- (04)73. Most people on this island are recreational fishers , and ____ , fishing forms an actual part of their leisure time.
A. accidentally B. purposefully C. obviously D. formally
- (04)74. In dealing with public relations , we should make every effort to prevent the ____ in personality.
A. contact B. contrast C. connection D. conflict
- (04)75. Chinese arts have won the ____ of a lot of people outside China.
A. enjoyment B. appreciation
C. entertainment D. reputation
- (04)76. To keep healthy , Professor Johnson ____ cycling as a regular form of exercise after he retired.
A. took up B. caught on C. carried out D. made for
- (05)77. There was such a long queue for coffee at the interval that we ____ gave up.
A. eventually B. unfortunately
C. generously D. purposefully
- (05)78. The company is starting a new advertising campaign to ____ new customers to its stores.
A. join B. attract C. stick D. transfer
- (05)79. He proved himself a true gentleman and the beauty of his ____ was seen at its best when he worked with others.
A. temper B. appearance C. talent D. character
- (05)80. At times , worrying is a normal , ____ response to a difficult event or situation — a loved one being injured in an accident , for example.

- A. effective B. individual C. inevitable D. unfavorable
- (06)81. You can see the stars on a clear night , but in the daytime they are ____.
- A. unavoidable B. invisible C. inaccessible D. unavailable
- (06)82. When Jane began to take swimming lessons , her main ____ was the fear of water.
- A. evidence B. crisis C. obstacle D. danger
- (06)83. Try not to start every sentence with “ the ”. ____ the beginnings of your sentences.
- A. Vary B. Decorate C. Form D. Describe
- (06)84. I hope I will not be called on in class as I m not yet ____ prepared.
- A. attentively B. readily C. actively D. adequately
- (07)85. At minus 130 , a living cell can be ____ for a thousand years.
- A. spared B. protected C. preserved D. developed
- (07)86. Since Tom ____ downloaded a virus into his computer , he can not open the file now.
- A. readily B. horribly C. accidentally D. irregularly
- (07)87. My morning ____ includes jogging in the park and reading newspapers over breakfast.
- A. drill B. action C. regulation D. routine
- (07)88. John was dismissed last week because of his ____ attitude towards his job.
- A. informal B. casual C. determined D. earnest

答案 1. DBACC 6. BDACD 11. ACDBD 16. ACBBA
 21. ADACA 26. DCBAB 31. ABBCD 36. CDBDB
 41. CBCAA 46. BBBAC 51. BDBCB 56. CBCBC
 61. DDBDD 66. ADBCA 71. BACDB 76. AABDC
 81. BCADC 85. CDB

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

- (00) 1. "It's a good idea. But who's going to ____ the plan?"
"I think Tom and Greg will. "
A. set aside B. carry out C. take in D. get through
- (00) 2. Nick is looking for another job because he feels that nothing he does ____ his boss.
A. serves B. satisfies C. promises D. supports
- (01) 3. Would you slow down a bit, please? I can't ____ you.
A. keep up with B. put up with
C. make up to D. hold on to
- (01) 4. "Why haven't you bought any butter?"
"I ____ to but I forgot about it. "
A. liked B. wished C. meant D. expected
- (01) 5. Have a good rest, you need to ____ your energy for the tennis match this afternoon.
A. leave B. save C. hold D. get
- (01) 6. In that case, there is nothing you can do ____ than wait.
A. more B. other C. better D. any
- (01) 7. I am surprised that you should have been fooled by such a(n) ____ trick.
A. ordinary B. easy C. smart D. simple
- (02) 8. "I'm very ____ with my own cooking. It looks nice and smells delicious. "
"Mm, it does have a ____ smell. "
A. pleasant; pleased B. pleased; pleased
C. pleasant; pleasant D. pleased; pleasant
- (02) 9. "I think it's going to be a big problem. "
"Yes, it could be. "
"I wonder ____ we can do about it. "
A. if B. how C. what D. that
- (02) 10. "Smoking is bad for your health. "

- “ Yes. I know. But I simply can't _____. ”
- A. give it up B. give it in C. give it out D. give it away
- (02)11. Two middle-aged passengers fell into the sea. _____, neither of them could swim.
- A. In fact B. Luckily
C. Unfortunately D. naturally
- (03)12. The manager has got a good business _____ so the company is doing well.
- A. idea B. sense C. thought D. thinking
- (03)13. The idea puzzled me so much that I stopped for a few seconds to try to _____.
- A. make it out B. make it off
C. make it up D. make it over
- (03)14. “ You don't look very _____. Are you ill ? ”
- “ No , I m just a bit tired. ”
- A. good B. well C. strong D. healthy
- (04)15. We're going to _____ with some friends for a picnic. Would you like to join us ?
- A. get in B. get over C. get along D. get together
- (04)16. “ Do you think I should get a good guidebook ? ”
- “ Yes , of course. _____ , you also need a good camera and comfortable shoes. ”
- A. What's more B. In other words
C. By the way D. All in all
- (04)17. He was in hospital for six months. He felt as if he was _____ from the outside world.
- A. cut out B. cut off C. cut up D. cut through
- (05)18. The Internet has brought _____ big changes in the way we work.
- A. about B. out C. back D. up

答案 : 1. BBACB 6. BDDCA 11. CBABD 16. ABA

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

- (00) 1. A person's _____ body temperature is about 37 .
A. ordinary B. normal C. common D. usual
- (00) 2. Some of the passengers told the reporters about their _____ in the burning train.
A. details B. trips C. events D. experiences
- (00) 3. "Will Miss Wang attend our meeting tomorrow?"
"It will not be _____ so. "
A. commonly B. necessarily C. usually D. extremely
- (00) 4. What you said just now _____ me of that American professor.
A. mentioned B. informed C. reminded D. memorized
- (00) 5. Everybody believes he will be the winner of the 100-metre _____.
A. match B. competition C. contest D. race
- (00) 6. The rescue team made every _____ to find the missing mountain climber.
A. force B. energy C. effort D. possibility
- (00) 7. Our English teacher _____ our buying a good English-Chinese dictionary.
A. asked B. ordered C. suggested D. required
- (00) 8. Every classroom in this modern school is _____ with a new TV set.
A. equipped B. installed C. fixed D. placed
- (00) 9. His laziness at work made him _____ with his workmates.
A. distrusted B. disliked C. unpopular D. unwelcome
- (00) 10. Happily for John's mother, he is working harder to _____ his lost time.
A. make up for B. keep up with
C. catch up with D. make use of
- (01) 11. I would be very _____ if you could give me an early reply.
A. pleasant B. grateful C. satisfied D. helpful
- (01) 12. This is not a match. We're playing chess just for _____.
A. habit B. hobby C. fun D. game
- (01) 13. No matter what you do, you should put your _____ into it.

- A. mind B. heart C. brain D. thought
- (01)14. The lessons given by Mr. Smith are always ____ and interesting.
A. lovingly B. lovely C. lively D. vividly
- (01)15. He left in such a hurry that I ____ had time to thank him.
A. almost B. even C. hardly D. nearly
- (01)16. While a person is asleep , a part of his brain is still ____.
A. active B. alive C. awake D. aware
- (01)17. When you turn on the TV set , clear pictures will ____ appear on the screen.
A. rapidly B. hurriedly C. lately D. immediately
- (01)18. There are usually at least two ____ of looking at every question.
A. means B. directions C. views D. ways
- (01)19. My chest ____ when I make a deep breath , doctor.
A. harms B. wounds C. hurts D. injures
- (01)20. He came to my class every week , but his attitude ____ he was not really interested in the subject.
A. expressed B. described C. explained D. suggested
- (01)21. The rubber plantation ____ as far as the river.
A. advances B. extends C. lies D. develops
- (01)22. Tom , ____ yourself. Did you forget the school rules ?
A. behave B. believe C. perform D. conduct
- (01)23. Time will ____ whether I made the right choice or not.
A. see B. say C. know D. tell
- (01)24. You d better ____ some money for special use.
A. pick up B. set aside C. put off D. give away
- (01)25. In order to ____ with the advanced countries , we must keep learning.
A. catch up B. get along C. put up D. go on
- (02)26. The magazine is a(n) ____ number. You can take it out of the reading room.
A. back B. past C. old D. former
- (02)27. It seems difficult to ____ “ hurt ” from “ injure ” in meaning.

- A. judge B. tell C. divide D. separate
- (02)28. For the sake of her daughter's health, she decided to move to a warm ____.
- A. weather B. temperature C. season D. climate
- (02)29. Please follow your supervisor's instructions, or you'll ____ him.
- A. discourage B. offend C. disturb D. bother
- (02)30. I saw Bob play the piano at John's party and on that ____ he was simply brilliant.
- A. scene B. circumstance C. occasion D. situation
- (02)31. It can't be a(n) ____ that four jewelry stores were robbed in one night.
- A. coincidence B. accident
C. incident D. chance
- (02)32. After much ____ the shop owner agreed to cut down the price by 25%.
- A. debating B. talking C. discussing D. bargaining
- (02)33. Although he has taken a lot of medicine, his health ____ poor.
- A. proves B. remains C. maintains D. continues
- (02)34. It is good for elderly people to be ____ involved in community service.
- A. honestly B. patiently C. eagerly D. actively
- (02)35. If you ____ any problems when you arrive at the airport, give me a ring.
- A. come up with B. set about
C. run into D. put aside
- (03)36. Papermaking began in China and from here it ____ to North Africa and Europe.
- A. spread B. grew C. carried D. developed
- (03)37. The collapse of the World Trade Centre has put US economy in a difficult ____.
- A. occasion B. case C. situation D. background
- (03)38. More and more people choose to shop in a supermarket as it offers

- a great ____ of goods.
 A. variety B. mixture C. extension D. combination
- (03)39. Project Hope aims at helping the poor children in remote areas to ____ education.
 A. accept B. keep C. assist D. receive
- (03)40. In ____, the northerners are keen on dumplings while the southerners are fond of rice.
 A. common B. total C. general D. particular
- (03)41. According to the recent survey, cancer is the leading cause of death among young adults in this area, ____ women.
 A. apparently B. especially C. exactly D. probably
- (03)42. My brother worked all summer vacation, saving money to ____ his hobby of photography.
 A. seek B. search C. hunt D. pursue
- (03)43. The university claims that a(n) ____ international student requires \$12,000 to cover the cost of living in one academic year.
 A. single B. only
 C. independent D. unique
- (03)44. By 1909, Picasso had ____ himself as a painter of great talent in Paris.
 A. made B. recognize C. admitted D. established
- (03)45. He ____ some French while he was away on a business trip in Paris.
 A. made out B. picked up C. gave up D. took in
- (04)46. Although I can walk about, there is still a ____ pain in my leg.
 A. weak B. slight C. tender D. soft
- (04)47. The three sisters decided to hold a family party to ____ their parents' silver wedding.
 A. celebrate B. memorize
 C. congratulate D. welcome
- (04)48. Finnish President said Finland-China relations had progressed

- _____ with fruitful co-operation in new and high-tech fields.
 A. peacefully B. highly C. quietly D. smoothly
- (04)49. I have read the material several times but it doesn't make any _____ to me.
 A. meaning B. importance C. sense D. significance
- (04)50. The elderly need special care in winter, as they are _____ to the sudden change of weather.
 A. sensitive B. sensible C. flexible D. positive
- (04)51. Usually a child's behaviour is a _____ of his family environment.
 A. recognition B. reflection C. return D. record
- (04)52. Joe Jones, the eldest of the eight children, had to _____ out of high school at the age of 16 to help his father on the farm.
 A. leave B. drop C. fall D. go
- (04)53. We need to consider what _____ we will be using for language training.
 A. abilities B. appliances C. facilities D. qualities
- (04)54. Words _____ me when I wanted to express my thanks to him for having saved my son from the burning house.
 A. failed B. left
 C. discouraged D. disappointed
- (04)55. It was foolish of him to _____ his notes during that important test, and as a result, he got punished.
 A. stick to B. refer to C. keep to D. point to
- (05)56. You will find this map of great _____ in helping you to get around the city.
 A. source B. sense C. favour D. value
- (05)57. Do you have any _____ of what life would be like if we lived on other planets?
 A. plan B. idea C. impression D. imagination
- (05)58. That his only son was killed in the air crash was a _____ blow to the old man.
 A. heavy B. broad C. plain D. main

- (05)59. Beginners are expected to be familiar with the ____ of the reading material before they come to the class.
A. condition B. concept C. contest D. content
- (05)60. I don't care about the good salary offered by the company. What I need is a(n) ____ post.
A. creating B. awarding
C. challenging D. competing
- (05)61. Studies show that many diseases such as SARS and AIDS are ____ from wildlife.
A. specially B. originally C. magically D. visibly
- (05)62. The way Einstein answered the question ____ his talent and sense of humour.
A. relieved B. released C. revealed D. recovered
- (05)63. Doctors are doing research to find out what happens physically when people ____ smoking.
A. quit B. decline C. depart D. reserve
- (05)64. The more frequently farmers use insecticides, the more ____ the insects will become to the chemicals.
A. resistant B. available C. sensitive D. agreeable
- (05)65. The photographer needs to charge up the digital camera every day as the battery ____ quickly.
A. shuts up B. ends up C. runs out D. turns out
- (06)66. Put the ____ of your tongue against your upper teeth when you produce the sound.
A. tip B. top C. peak D. pole
- (06)67. Small cars are ____ of fuel, so they have more appeal for consumers.
A. free B. short C. typical D. economical
- (06)68. Sean's strong love for his country is ____ in his recently published poems.
A. relieved B. reflected C. responded D. recovered
- (06)69. The performer was waving his stick in the street and it ____

missed the child standing nearby.

A. narrowly B. nearly C. hardly D. closely

(07)70. AIDS control and prevention is a ____ to China as well as the whole world.

A. surprise B. challenge C. reaction D. threat

(07)71. If your race car isn't insured, you may ____ losing everything when it hits something solid.

A. delay B. deny C. avoid D. risk

(07)72. Although the country has had political independence for over a century, ____ it needs the support of its neighbours.

A. naturally B. economically C. especially D. luckily

(07)73. The study surveyed 500 families and found the main ____ problem people suffered was tiredness, followed by loneliness and anxiety.

A. domestic B. public C. psychological D. biological

答案: 1. BDBCD 6. CCACA 11. BCBCC 16. ADDCD

21. BADBA 26. ABDBC 31. ADBDC 36. ACADC

41. BDADB 46. BADCA 51. BBCAB 56. DBADC

61. BCAAC 66. ADBAB 71. DBC

第二部分 解题指导

在词汇运用方面,应着重培养如下几种能力:正确判断某些词在特定语言环境中的词义,仔细辨别形似义异的词汇和意义相近或相同的词汇在特定的语言环境中的细微差别(different shades of meaning)。同时还应掌握各类词组的正确搭配,所谓“地道的英语”和“不地道的英语”,很大程度上取决于其词的搭配是否合乎英语惯用法。

(一) 注意下列几组词语的正确用法

1. likely, probable, possible

1) likely 意为“很可能的”, probable 一般指有“较大的可能”, possible 仅指“有可能”, 不管可能性大小。例如:

His election is possible, but not probable.

他有可能当选, 但是可能性不大。

The police concluded that the probable (not possible) cause of the fire had been a cigarette end. 警察得出结论, 火灾很可能是由烟蒂引起的。

She is likely to succeed. (她很可能成功。)

2) likely 作表语时, 主语可以是人, 后接 to do sth.。It is likely 后可接从句, 但不接 for sb. to do sth.。

probable 作表语时, 一般不用人作主语。It is probable 后通常接从句, 不接不定式。

possible 作表语时, 主语常用 it, 或 something, 一般也不用人作主语。

注意以下句型:

It is likely/probable + that + 从句 sb. /sth. + be + likely + 不定式
--

3) likely, probably, possibly 作副词时, 含义和用法略有不同, likely 多和 most 或 very 连用; probably = most likely, 意为“很可能”。而 possibly, 特别是 may possibly, 有“不太可能”的意思。如: He may possibly succeed. (他或许会成功。) 含“不会成功”的意味较多。

2. lost, missing, gone

1) lost 用于修饰物时是“丢失了的”之意。如: a lost pen, one's lost youth; lost 一般不以被动形式表示“某东西被丢失”, 如通常不说: My money was lost. 正确的说法应是: I lost my money. 或: My money is missing. 用于修饰人时是“迷途的”之意, 如: a lost child. 又例如:

They were lost in the woods.

2) missing 有“失踪的, 行踪不明的”之意, 因此, “小孩失踪”应用 missing. 修饰物时, 意为“缺少的, 不在的”。例如:

There is a page missing from this book.

3) gone 意为“离去的”, 也可作“丧失的, 用光的”解。例如:

He is gone.

His hair was nearly all gone.

All his money is gone.

3. illness , sickness , disease

1) illness 指患病的状态。例如：

She died after a long illness.

2) disease 指具体的某一疾病。例如：

Many diseases are caused by bacteria.

They were more likely to die from childhood diseases.

3) sickness 通常指“身体不适”，或者“呕吐、恶心”等。例如：

Does the doctor know what his sickness is ?

He felt a wave of sickness come over him.

4. calm , quiet , silent , still

1) calm 指天气、海洋等时，表示一种无风无浪的“平静”；指人时，表示镇静平和的心情。例如：

He remained calm.

After the storm the sea was calm again.

2) quiet 指无动静，无噪音，尤指没有骚动的安宁状态。例如：

Everything was quiet.

Keep quiet.

3) silent 用于事物时，侧重没有声响；用于指人时，强调少言寡语。例如：

That's a silent film.

Why do you keep silent ?

4) still 侧重于“不动”、“静止”时，与 calm , quiet , silent 不能替换；侧重于“无声”时，可与 quiet 替换。例如：

Please keep still while I take your photo.

How still (quiet) everything is !

5. wound , injure , hurt , harm , damage , destroy , ruin

1) wound 指用枪弹或刀剑等锐器故意施加的伤害。在事故或天灾中受伤用 injure 或 hurt。例如：

Last night a terrible storm hit the area and many people were injured.

He was seriously injured/hurt in a traffic accident.

wound 与 injure 在肉体受伤的程度上往往比 hurt 严重。

2) hurt 一词除指肉体的伤害外,也可指感情上的伤害,如 hurt one's feeling, hurt one's pride. hurt 的过去分词作表语时有“使苦恼,使伤心”的含义。例如:

He was hurt to learn that she had made up her mind never to answer his letter.

My feelings were hurt when he didn't invite me to the party.

作不及物动词用时,有“疼痛”的含义。例如:

My stomach hurts because I have eaten too many apples.

3) injured 和 wounded 可作表语,也可作定语,而 hurt 的过去分词只能作表语,不能作定语。如 a wounded soldier, an injured man.

4) harm 和 damage 均指伤害或损坏某人或某物。harm 主要用于有生命的东西,偶尔也用于无生命的事物。常指伤及一个人或其健康、权利、事业等。例如:

Doctors say smoking harms our health.

There was a fire in our street, but our house wasn't harmed at all.

5) damage 主要指对价值和功能的损坏,虽然也可用于有生命的东西,但多用于无生命的东西。例如:

Her heart was slightly damaged as a result of her long illness.

The strong wind damaged several houses.

6) destroy “毁坏”、“消灭”,指通过某种有力的或粗暴的手段使之毁灭或无用。例如:

Don't destroy that box, it may be useful.

All his hopes were destroyed.

7) ruin “毁掉”、“弄糟”,强调毁坏的彻底性。这种毁坏也许没有多大力量。例如:

The fire ruined the house.

She poured water all over my painting and ruined it.

名词 ruins 意为“废墟”, be in ruins 是“一片废墟”、“落空”。

6. pleased, pleasant, pleasing, pleasure

1) pleased 指外物作用于人的感官,使人感到“高兴、满意、喜

欢”。常见的结构为 be pleased + 不定式或从句, be pleased with, be pleased at (about)。例如:

I'm very pleased with the performance.

We're pleased about (at) your success.

I'm quite pleased that she has got such a good chance.

2) pleasant 意为“令人愉快的, 舒畅的, 非常好的, 讨人喜欢的, 风趣的”。例如:

They spent a very pleasant afternoon in the hills.

Spring weather is pleasant.

He talked in a pleasant way.

3) pleasing 指某物或某人“使他人高兴, 招人喜爱”。例如:

These flowers are very pleasing.

The girl has pleasing manners.

4) pleasure 是名词, 指“快乐, 愉快的事, 乐趣”。例如:

It's a pleasure to meet you.

May I have the pleasure of dancing with you?

7. call, call on, call at, call in, call up, call for

1) call 除了作“称呼、说……是”解外, 还有“呼唤(vt, vi)”、“访问(vi)”、“(给某人)打电话(vt)”等含义。例如:

“Good night,” she called to her uncle who was still downstairs.

Did anyone call when I was out?

He called to take her to the theatre.

I called him this morning but he was out.

2) call on 意为“访问(某人)”, 后接表示人的宾语。例如:

I called on an old friend last week.

call on sb. to do sth 意为“请求(指派, 呼吁)某人做某事”。例如:

I called on him to keep the matter secret.

3) call at 表示“访问(某地)”, 后接表示某一地方的宾语。例如:

I called at his house yesterday morning.

call at 也可以表示车、船等“停靠”车站或码头。例如:

The ship will call at Nanjing Harbour at midnight.

4) call in 有“找来、请来”、“召来”、“召集”的意思, 还有“顺路到

某处或某人家”的含义。例如：

The man called in his friend to drink the health of his new-born son.

I formed the habit of calling in on him in the evening.

You must call in and see us sometime.

5) call up 意为“给……打电话”(主要是美国用法,英国用 ring up),还有“唤醒,使想起,征召入役”的意思。例如:

Who called Tom up (called up Tom) just now?

The sound of seagulls (海鸥) called up happy memories of his childhood holidays.

He was called up at the beginning of the war.

6) call for 意为“找(某人),取(某物)”,“要求”。例如:

I'll call for you at nine.

The workers are calling for a strike.

8. beach, coast, shore, bank

1) beach 和 shore 均可指“海滨”。比较而言,beach 指较为平坦、覆盖着沙子或碎石、适宜于游泳与日光浴的“沙滩”、“海滩”。shore 则是笼统的说法,指毗邻大片水的陆地,既可以包括 beach,也可以指岩石突兀或陡峭的岸边。另外,shore 也可以表示“湖边”。例如:

Early in the morning we went to the beach to see the sunrise.

Many people were lying on the beach, bathing in the sun.

The hotel lies on the shore of the West Lake.

2) coast 指海洋与陆地的分界线,意为“海岸”、“海岸线”,是一个地理术语。例如:

She lived ten miles from the coast.

China has a long coast from north to south.

3) bank 表示毗邻河流的任何陆地、河流或运河的“河岸”。例如:

Trees are planted along the banks of the canal.

9. at first, first of all, first

1) at first = at the beginning, 表示“当初,起初(但后来……)”,与后来发生的事相对照。如:

At first I didn't want to go, but I soon changed my mind.

2) first of all (或 first) 表示“首先”、“最重要的”,说明顺序,是时间上或一系列行动的开始,后面往往接 next, then 等。例如:

First of all, open the windows. Then turn off the gas and, if necessary, call an ambulance(救护车).

I'll have to finish my homework first.

first 还有“第一的”、“最先的”的意思。例如:

January is the first month of the year.

Who was the first man to fly across the Atlantic?

10. most, mostly, almost, at most

1) most 或 most of 是“大多数的,大部分的,几乎全部的”之意,相当于 nearly all, most 是形容词,修饰名词时前面不加冠词;most of 中的 most 是名词,of 后的名词前必须加冠词。例如:

Most people think as I do about the matter.

Most of the students had left when he came.

2) mostly (副词)“主要地,多半地”,相当于 mainly,用于修饰动词。例如:

He uses his bike mostly for going to school.

The students are mostly young people between the ages of sixteen and twenty.

3) almost 意为“几乎”,相当于 very nearly。例如:

He spent almost the whole day reading English.

4) at most 意为“最多”,相当于 not more than,与 at least 相对。例如:

I can pay only twenty dollars at (the) most.

11. game, sport, match, contest, competition

1) game “游戏”、“运动”、“比赛”,或球赛等的“一场”、“一局”。例如:

He watches every game that the team plays.

He won the first two games but lost the third.

复数形式可表示“运动会”,尤指国际性的综合运动会。如:the Olympic Games, the Asian Games, the Pan American Games

另外,球、棋类运动属于 game,所以能和 a game of 搭配,如 a

game of basketball. 也能用 a match 来表示, 如 a football match.

2) sport 复数形式指“运动会”, 一般指较小规模的运动会, 如学校举行的运动会。例如:

Are you going to run in the school sports?

下列运动属于 SPORT: boxing, skiing, swimming, skating, fishing, diving, climbing, shooting, surfing, horse-riding, hunting, running, car-racing, rowing, jumping.

因此, 我们应说: Boxing and car-racing are considered by some as very dangerous sports.

3) match “比赛”, 常指队与队之间的“比赛”, 尤用于球类比赛。例如:

He went to the football match.

4) contest “比赛”, 常用于由一组裁判给评分的“比赛、竞赛”。如 a composition contest, beauty contest, a speaking contest, a recitation contest

5) competition “竞争”, “比赛”, 尤指针对力量、技巧、体能等方面进行的较量, 其动词形式为 compete.

12. be familiar with, be familiar to

1) be familiar with 的结构为:

某人 + be familiar with + 某人或某物

后接 with sb, 表示“主语与某人有交情”, 后接 with sth, 表示“主语熟悉、精通某物”。例如:

I'm not familiar with my cousin.

Before you leave for England, you should be familiar with the English language.

2) be familiar to 的结构为:

某人或某物 + be familiar to + 某人

后接 to sb, 表示“主语所提到的人或物为某人所熟悉”。例如:

Your brother is quite familiar to me.

My father's handwriting is familiar to our teacher.

13. view, scene, sight, scenery

1) view “风景”、“景色”，通常指从某个特定(或许较高的)位置所见到的景物。例如：

The house has a fine view of the hills.

The view from the front of the mountain hotel is even more beautiful.

To get a better view of the valley, we climbed to the top of the hill.

此外，view 还有“看法”、“观点”的意思，如 one's political view, a point of view. 短语 a bird's-eye view 意为“鸟瞰”。

2) scene “(指戏剧、电影等的)一场”；“场景”；“布景”，如 the trial scene in the Merchant of Venice. 指“风景”时着重指展现于眼前的景色的特征。例如：

I enjoyed the breath-taking scene of the moon rising over the sea.

The sunrise was a beautiful scene.

Taxis and buses were part of the street scene.

We have a fine view of the mountain scene.

此外，scene 还有“出事地点”的意思，如 the scene of a traffic accident.

3) sight 指所见到的“景象”、“情景”。例如：

What a sad sight it was!

The fire was a frightening sight.

The sight of all the blood on the ground made her feel sick.

注意这些短语：

at first sight(初见)

at the sight of(一看到)

in sight(看得见)

out of sight(看不见)

lose sight of(看不见，遗漏) catch sight of(发现)

sight 作“目光”、“视力”解时是不可数名词。例如：

She lost her sight in an accident.

4) scenery “风景”，指某地的自然风景，是不可数的集体名词，不能与不定冠词连用。例如：

Hangzhou is world-famous for its beautiful scenery.

She enjoyed mountain scenery very much.

14. rather than, more than, other than, instead of

1) rather than

①表示主观愿望，后接动词用原形，此时的 rather than 相当一个从属连词。主句表示喜欢做的事，且常含 would, prefer, like 等词，从句表示不喜欢做的事。意为“宁可……而不”。例如：

He insisted on staying rather than go.

He prefers to write rather than telephone.

He paid the fine rather than appeal to a higher court.

He would rather beg in the streets than get money in such a dishonest way.

Rather than allow the vegetables to go bad, he sold them at half price.

②表示客观事实，后接的词性与前面所接词性一致，此时的 rather than 相当一个并列连词。意为“是……而不是”(= and not)。例如：

The colour seems green rather than blue.

It was what he meant rather than what he said.

He was engaged in studying rather than reading the newspaper.

He called rather than said to me "Thank you."

他对我叫喊道(而不是说)：“谢谢”。

He is to be pitied rather than to be disliked.

He killed himself rather than got caught by the enemy.

③后接动名词形式，此时的 rather than 相当一个介词(= instead of)。意为“而不是”。例如：

We ought to check up, rather than just accepting what he says.

2) more than

①后接数词、名词或句子，意为“超过”，“不仅仅是”。例如：

By then he was more than fifty years of age.

Science is more than an accumulation of collected facts. It is also a method of solving problems.

The cold was more than the children could bear.

②后接形容词或副词，意为“非常”，“岂止”。例如：

If you tell your father what you've done, he'll be more than a little angry.

We were more than happy to hear of your escape.

③后接动词，意为“岂止是”，“不仅仅”。例如：

He more than smiled, he laughed outright.

I am sure conditions over there will more than satisfy your requirements.

④用于 like/love A more than B 这一平行结构中，意为“比起 B 来，更喜欢 A”，其中 A 和 B 的词性应相同。例如：

They liked hunting wild animals for fun more than going sightseeing.

⑤more A than B 意为“与其说 B，不如说 A”。其中的 A 和 B 可以是形容词、名词、代词、动词、介词短语等。例如：

Your son is more shy than unfriendly.

与其说你的儿子是不友好，倒不如说他是害羞。

It is more a poem than a picture.

与其说这是一幅画，不如说是一首诗。

3) other than

①意为“除……外”。常与否定词 no, not, never, nothing, hardly 等连用。后接名词，代词，副词，介词短语或动词不定式。接动词不定式时，若 other than 前的动词为 do, other than 后的不定式不带 to，否则要带 to。例如：

They were given nothing other than bread and water for evening meal.

除了面包和水作晚餐外，他们什么也没得到。

I have never known him behave other than selfishly.

他一向自私自利。

He never speaks to me other than to ask for something.

There was no choice other than to walk on against the wind.

There was nothing they could do other than spend the night in the temple.

②can't (can hardly) other than 意为“只能”。例如：

You cannot get there other than by swimming.

She can hardly be other than grateful.

I could not feel other than surprised.

③有时表示“与……不同”。例如：

The result was quite other than what I expected.

结果与我预料的完全不同。

4) instead of 意为“代替”，“而不”。后面可以接名词(或代词)、动名词。例如：

I have come instead of my brother.

We walked down the stairs instead of taking the elevator.

有时，instead of 被看作并列连词，因此也可接动词原形、不定式、形容词、副词、介词短语等，以保持前后的平行关系。例如：

A word of encouragement might have made me respect instead of hate him. 若是说上一句鼓励的话，或许能使我尊敬他，而不是仇恨他。

He asked us to do some work instead of to watch television. 他要我们做点事，而不是看电视。

The play acts better, instead of worse, than it reads.

这个剧本演出的效果比阅读的效果好，而不是坏。

He studies in the evening instead of during the day.

他晚上学习，而不是白天。

15. value, worth, worthwhile, worthy

1) value 意为“值得”，指某物所具有的有用性，当与其它物质相比，尤其与该物的价钱相比时其本身所具有的经济价值。可以后接介词 for，介词宾语指物、金钱、精力等。例如：

He got good value for his money. 他的钱花得值得。

Your coat is certainly poor value for the price.

你的外套显然不值那个价。

用于 be of value 句型中，意为“有价值”、“有益”。例如：

Will this be of value to you?

The book will be of great value to students of history.

2) worth 可用作形容词或名词，但不能用作动词。意为“值……”、“相当于……的价值”。

A) worth 作形容词，意为“值得的，有……价值的”。

①后接名词或数词

The watch is worth its price/200 yuan.

A bird in hand is worth two in the bush.

②后接动名词(不接不定式),主动形式表被动含义。例如:

Such a thing is not worth talking about.

Whatever is worth doing at all is worth doing well.

③作后置定语

That is a piece of land worth 45000. (作后置定语)

B) worth 作名词,意为“(货币、精神、物质的)价值”、“值一定的金额”。例如:

He bought ten dollars' worth of oranges.

他买了10元钱的桔子。

The worth of the discovery was not realized until a hundred years after his death.

这一发现的价值在他死了一百年后才被认识到。

A friend is a gift, whose worth cannot be measured except by heart.

朋友是一份厚礼,它的价值只有用心灵才能深深地感知。

C) 修饰 worth 用 well,不用 very。例如:

It is well worth doing.

D) 表示“价值”时,worth 侧重事物本身的价值,value 主要指使用的价值,侧重人、物或事所具有的用途、重要性或优秀品质等。

What is the worth of this picture?

Health is of more value than money.

3) worthwhile 是形容词,意为“值得干的”、“有价值的”。常作表语,后接不定式,也可接动名词。例如:

She has a worthwhile job.

I wouldn't think it worthwhile to ask him to join the club — he'll only refuse.

Is it worthwhile visiting that city?

worthwhile 与 worth while,写法不同,用法一致。

worth one's while 意为“值得某人去做”,后可接不定式,也可接动名词。例如:

You would find it worth your while to come to the meeting.

It's not worth your while losing your temper.

4) worthy 一词没有“值多少钱”的含义，可用作定语或表语，其用法应注意以下几点：

A) 作定语，意为“有价值的”、“可尊敬的”。

①作定语的 worthy 常前置。例如：

When we die for the people, it is a worthy death.

He is indeed a worthy winner.

②作后置定语时用 worthy of。例如：

The scientist is a man worthy of the honour.

B) 作表语，意为“值得，配得上”。其结构为：

主语 + be worthy	{ of + 名词/动名词 不定式(to do/to be done)
----------------	--

例如：

He is worthy of praise/trust. (接名词)

She was not worthy of the honour given to her. (接名词)

她不配得到所给予的表扬。

He is worthy of taking his place. (接动名词主动形式)

(= He is worthy to take his place.)

他配得上担任的职务。

The book is worthy of being studied carefully. (接动名词被动式)

(= The book is worthy to be studied carefully.)

(= The book is worth studying)

此书值得仔细阅读。

He is worthy to take his place. (接不定式主动式)

The action is worthy to be taken. (接不定式被动式)

第三部分 分类练习

1. Bill was doing a lot physical exercise to build up his ____.

A. force

B. strength

C. mind

D. ability

2. Such people shouldn't be ____ into the Party.

- A. allowed B. admitted C. permitted D. agreed
3. Though Tom was not _____, he felt _____.
- A. alone ; lonely B. alone ; alone C. lonely ; alone D. lonely ; lonely
4. I _____ him to go with me , but he wouldn't.
- A. suggested B. advised C. hoped D. persuaded
5. When we finally _____ to get home after the tiring journey , we could hardly move a step further.
- A. tried B. succeeded C. completed D. managed
6. The price of this kind of computer is very _____.
- A. expensive B. cheap C. dear D. low
7. The angry father _____ the boy that he would give him a good beating if he made trouble again.
- A. promised B. blamed C. threatened D. accused
8. You have _____ all her life and all her hope.
- A. hurt B. damaged C. harmed D. destroyed
9. Why does he always come to me at the worst _____ moment ?
- A. probable B. possible C. likely D. like
10. It must have rained last night , _____ the ground is wet this morning.
- A. because B. as C. since D. for
11. It is absolutely _____ that our team will win the game.
- A. exact B. right C. sure D. certain
12. Our soldier caught the enemy general _____ in the battle.
- A. alive B. live C. living D. lively
13. In choosing employment she always set a high _____ on the interest of the work rather than on the pay offered.
- A. position B. cost C. value D. price
14. Jack was the only person in the room who had been drinking _____.
- A. strongly B. heavily C. seriously D. deeply
15. She was _____ about her daughter still being out late at night.
- A. curious B. afraid C. anxious D. eager
16. During the past year the _____ of traffic accidents in that city has increased.
- A. number B. quantity C. amount D. degree
17. His father is very busy , he is _____ out on Sundays.
- A. most B. mostly C. almost D. at most
18. " I'd like to go to the cinema with you , Dad. "

“ Sorry , my darling , but the film is ____ for adults only. ”

A. admitted B. promised C. permitted D. intended

19. If the police had ____ their duty , the traffic accident wouldn't have occurred so frequently in this district.

A. performed B. noticed C. observed D. known

20. I will think the matter over and give you a ____ answer.

A. right B. final C. direct D. fixed

21. It is no ____ that a man of his ability is so successful.

A. surprise B. wonder C. fun D. interest

22. When he was asked to go out for a walk , he said he was very busy and had not a minute to ____.

A. spend B. share C. save D. spare

23. No one could exactly ____ what was going to happen.

A. tell B. say C. speak D. talk

24. He ____ spends his holiday in the mountains though sometimes he goes to the sea-side instead.

A. always B. usually C. used to D. seldom

25. We can rely on William to carry out this mission , for his judgement is always ____.

A. doubtless B. subtle C. sound D. healthy

26. He wrote his name ____ and carefully at the top of the paper.

A. seriously B. attentively C. obviously D. clearly

27. My parents were ____ asleep when I reached home.

A. soundly B. completely C. fastly D. sound

28. Our boss ordered a ____ to learn how many people read the local newspaper.

A. project B. program C. review D. survey

29. These football players had no strict ____ until they joined our club.

A. practice B. education C. exercise D. training

30. The best ____ for teachers' work is students' progress.

A. reward B. pay C. price D. value

31. I'll look into the matter as soon as possible. Just have a little ____.

A. wait B. time C. patience D. rest

32. It doesn't ____ if you can't answer my question.

A. care B. mind C. matter D. trouble

33. It is an ____ of kindness to help blind men cross the street.

A. activity B. attention C. act D. affair

34. Not a ____ has been found so far that can help the police find the criminal.
A. fact B. clue C. symbol D. sign
35. Plain living and hard working are the fine ____ of the Chinese people .
A. habits B. customs C. qualities D. quantity
36. The young teacher is ____ in teaching English.
A. keen B. competent C. good D. capable
37. I m always ____ when I have to make a speech.
A. anxious B. upset C. amused D. nervous
38. He slept very ____ , the humming of a mosquito woke him up.
A. thinly B. weakly C. lightly D. faintly
39. Please ____ the milk until it boils and then turn off the gas.
A. observe B. watch C. notice D. look
40. When do the new driving laws come into ____ ?
A. effect B. use C. service D. existence
41. I don't know what anyone else thinks , but my ____ opinion is that the student should do more work outside the classroom.
A. human B. personal C. private D. individual
42. She stood by the entrance to ____ her guests as they passed.
A. accept B. receive C. serve D. agree
43. We had a long wait , but it was ____ because we got the tickets.
A. worth B. worthy C. worthwhile D. deserve
44. Mary has a bad cold and a ____ throat.
A. ache B. acid C. pain D. sore
45. I have \$20 , but that isn't ____ enough for my journey. I shall need much more.
A. almost B. nearly C. hardly D. scarcely
46. The girl ____ her fear and picked up the enormous spider.
A. swallowed B. oppressed C. conquered D. dissolved
47. They still remembered him after a ____ of twenty years.
A. start B. stretch C. time D. spread
48. You have been working all morning , and you ____ a rest.
A. reward B. inquire C. qualify D. deserve
49. I tried ____ the shoes , but still my feet did not fit into them.
A. stretching B. stressing C. spreading D. extending
50. No ____ of special education can make a genius out of a child with low intelligence.
A. quality B. quantity C. amount D. number

51. So many silly questions did they ask me that I got _____.
A. wondered B. doubted C. confused D. regretted
52. Hearing the shot , the bears ran away in all _____.
A. ways B. roads C. directions D. paths
53. I was _____ to see how skillfully the old craftsman worked.
A. interested B. encouraged C. appreciated D. fascinated
54. After they had finished building the wall the head _____ it to make sure they had done it properly.
A. conclude B. expressed C. regarded D. inspected
55. Eye _____ is sometimes the key to communication.
A. touch B. sight C. sign D. contact
56. No matter how I tried to read it , the sentence did not make any _____ to me.
A. sense B. idea C. viewpoint D. imagination
57. He has a strong interest in _____ affairs.
A. current B. late C. present D. sudden
58. There will be a small _____ for admission to the museum.
A. cost B. charge C. value D. price
59. When it comes to politics , my mother and I are on _____ ground.
A. ordinary B. normal C. common D. usual
60. Your teachers will take your recent illness into _____ when they mark your exam.
A. consideration B. mind
C. memory D. thinking
61. Several cars are available within this price _____.
A. area B. field C. land D. range
62. She was so _____ in her job that she didn't hear anybody knocking at the door.
A. attracted B. absorbed C. drawn D. concerned
63. Arizona is said to be a state where one can find any type of climate which he thinks _____ his health.
A. suits B. fits C. enjoys D. favours
64. Louis was asked to _____ the man who stole her purse.
A. confirm B. recognize C. claim D. identify
65. Advertisements create a _____ for goods that are not really needed.
A. demand B. requirement C. possibility D. supply
66. There was a sudden power failure , so many people got _____ in lifts.
A. struck B. sunk C. shut D. stuck

67. I guess Jones didn't have a chance to win the election. Almost all of the people in the city voted for his ____.
- A. candidate B. opponent C. alternative D. participant
68. The waiter politely handed me a menu which ____ Beijing roast duck.
- A. contained B. included C. involved D. composed
69. Don't ____ this news to the public until we give you the go-ahead.
- A. release B. relieve C. relate D. retell
70. How did he imagine that things like that could ____ detection?
- A. conduct B. launch C. reject D. escape
71. "That's a very good ____ you've just put forward," said Professor Fu.
- A. advice B. description C. suggestion D. information
72. I'm not sure whether I can gain any profit from the investment, so I can't make a (n) ____ promise to help you.
- A. exact B. defined C. definite D. sure
73. Of all the soldiers they had the ____ of being the fiercest, the most patriotic, the toughest.
- A. recognition B. reservation C. recreation D. reputation
74. The managing director took the ____ for the accident, although it was not really his fault.
- A. guilt B. charge C. blame D. accusation
75. The strong wind with sand comes from the ____ hill in front of their house.
- A. empty B. bare C. isolated D. remote
76. The ____ way Tom worked out the maths problem impressed the professor deeply.
- A. special B. particular C. unique D. strange
77. The astronauts soon got used to the ____ of weightlessness.
- A. condition B. place C. problem D. environment
78. The young actor ____ the audience's attention from the very beginning.
- A. snatched B. caught C. paid D. devoted
79. ____ are that he's already heard the news.
- A. Chances B. Opportunities C. Occasions D. Accidents
80. He had tried everything but it made little ____.
- A. effect B. outcome C. difference D. result
81. Old Americans are extremely reluctant to buy on ____ and likely to save as much money as possible.
- A. debt B. deposit C. credit D. sale

82. One of his eyes was injured in an accident , but after a ____ operation , he quickly recovered his sight.
A. precise B. delicate C. considerate D. sensitive
83. In one scene of Modern Times Charlie Chaplin was shown trying ____ to keep in time with a rapid assembly line.
A. aimlessly B. hardly C. violently D. desperately
84. I knew I should not accept anything from such a person but I found it hard to turn down his ____.
A. plan B. request C. suggestion D. offer
85. He is difficult to deal with and is always finding ____ with his fellow workers.
A. blame B. failure C. short D. fault
86. There was a ____ note of annoyance in her reply.
A. distinct B. distant C. extinct D. instinct
87. Before he started the work , I asked the builder to give me an ____ of the cost of repairing the roof.
A. assignment B. announcement C. estimate D. evaluation
88. History has ____ us abundant proof that tyranny never lasts long.
A. afforded B. equip C. provided D. supplied
89. We must ____ that the experiment is controlled as rigidly as possible.
A. assure B. ensure C. secure D. issue
90. It is rather ____ that we still do not know how many species there are in the world today.
A. misleading B. boring C. embarrassing D. demanding
91. The doctor was asked to go back to the hospital because of a(n) ____ case.
A. operation B. treatment C. emergency D. incident
92. If a person commits murder in China , he will be sentenced to death ; it is a usual ____.
A. habit B. practice C. tradition D. custom
93. Brown s ____ title is " Professor " , but he prefers to be called " Mr " .
A. career B. awarded C. factual D. formal
94. A child s character is greatly influenced by his home ____.
A. surroundings B. circumstance C. environment D. setting
95. Human behavior is mostly a product of learning , whereas the behavior of an animal depends mainly on ____.
A. consciousness B. instinct C. impression D. response

96. When parting , we ____ each other to work hard and be worthy of the title of League member.
A. respected B. recalled C. issued D. urged
97. In many cultures people who were thought to have the ability to ____ dreams were likely to be highly respected.
A. interpret B. interrupt C. intend D. invent
98. Her throat is so sore that she has ____ her voice.
A. lost B. broken C. missed D. failed
99. The service operates 36 libraries throughout the country , while six ____ libraries specially serve the countryside.
A. mobile B. shifting C. drifting D. spreading
100. He made a ____ of his life by drinking too much.
A. mess B. permission C. mass D. message
101. These national parks are very important for preserving many animals , who would ____ run the risk of becoming extinct.
A. instead B. therefore C. then D. otherwise
102. Whatever the situation is , we should ____ in doing what is right and correcting what is wrong.
A. persist B. assist C. insist D. keep
103. From the way her sitting-room is decorated , you can tell she has a wonderful ____ in arts.
A. sense B. touch C. taste D. style
104. The rice and cotton are growing well and it ____ to be a good harvest.
A. expects B. supposes C. promises D. proposes
105. We hadn't realized that there would be a power cut , so we were astonished when the whole house was ____ into darkness.
A. dropped B. drowned C. dived D. plunged
106. In American universities , classes are often arranged in more flexible ____ and many jobs on campus are reserved for students.
A. scales B. grades C. ranks D. patterns
107. In the past , most foresters have been men , but today , the number of women ____ this field is climbing.
A. engaging B. registering C. devoting D. pursuing
108. The shy girl felt ____ and uncomfortable when she could not answer her teacher's question.

- A. amazed B. awkward C. curious D. amused
109. People in other parts of the world have been ____ Christmas for many centuries.
A. observing B. attending C. spending D. enjoying
110. A neat letter improves your chances of a favorable ____.
A. condition B. reception C. request D. response
111. Draper completely ____ all these facts as though they never existed.
A. denies B. ignores C. refuses D. rejects
112. In the ____ of the president , the vice president occupied the chair.
A. shortage B. absence C. lack D. want
113. She sat down at the piano and began to play a patriotic ____.
A. music B. tune C. sound D. note
114. Yesterday the pound fell to a ____ low level against the dollar , according to this morning's news.
A. final B. last C. remote D. record
115. We cannot judge a person simply on the ____ of his education.
A. condition B. basis C. principle D. theory
116. The runner was able to ____ the same pace for hours.
A. support B. contain C. nourish D. endure
117. The couple claimed that they had been ____ their chance to have a child.
A. ignored B. denied C. neglected D. refused
118. There is an increasing ____ nowadays to make films describing violence.
A. trend B. stream C. direction D. tradition
119. The house is too small for a family of four , and ____ it is in a bad location.
A. otherwise B. however C. therefore D. furthermore
120. As a world-famous scholar , Alvin Toffler is ____ to receive such an honor.
A. worth B. worthy C. worthwhile D. worthless
121. Most people ____ on rice in the south , although there is also an easy access to wheat today.
A. grow B. raise C. develop D. feed
122. The United States ____ second in the export of rice in the world after Thailand.
A. classifies B. ranks C. arranges D. occupies
123. Although she was very well-paid , she had clearly no ____ of doing any work.
A. tendency B. intention C. ambition D. willingness
124. The little boy climbed all the ____ to the top of the hill without his parents' help.
A. road B. way C. journey D. trip

125. The newly adopted regulation will take ____ from the beginning of next month.
A. action B. place C. effect D. affect
126. The researchers were ____ after working for twenty-four hours without any rest.
A. exclaimed B. exhausted C. relaxed D. released
127. Does brain power ____ as we age? Scientists now have some surprising answers.
A. decay B. decline C. deceive D. delete
128. Having worked in the institute for 3 years , he was appointed to a permanent ____ there.
A. work B. post C. career D. seat
129. After three months , the student finally got used to the ____ of life in a big city.
A. pace B. rate C. speed D. frequency
130. Though ____ in a big city , the writer had always preferred to live in a small quiet village.
A. grown B. developed C. raised D. cultivated
131. When the machine would not start , the mechanic inspected all the parts to find what was at ____.
A. fault B. error C. trouble D. wrong
132. The invention of many electrical ____ has released housewives from heavy house-work.
A. piece B. appliances C. equipment D. instruments
133. Many students find school fun when it ____ to dances , sports events , and parties.
A. involves B. occurs C. comes D. concerns
134. The manager ____ the sales department of the lowered market share of their products.
A. charged B. accused C. blamed D. scolded
135. " Is this sweater made of ____ wool ?"
" No , it is 60 per cent wool and 40 per cent acrylic. "
- A. real B. pure C. right D. exact
136. He thought he could prevent himself from being influenced by the opinion that ____ him.
A. escaped B. occurred to C. surrounded D. approached
137. Don t worry. The medicine will ____ you a good night s sleep.
A. assure B. ensure C. guarantee D. secure
138. Some of the traditional industries have lost their ____ with the rise of new ones.
A. energy B. strength C. vigour D. power

139. He has not the slightest ____ of hurting the old gentleman.
A. intention B. idea C. wish D. desire
140. Though he did not say so directly , the manager ____ the man was a thief.
A. declared B. implied C. disclosed D. revealed
141. I hate people who ____ the end of a film before you have seen it.
A. revise B. review C. reveal D. retell
142. His ____ came to an end when he learned the good news.
A. expression B. depression C. impression D. oppression
143. Many experiments have shown that boys are usually more ____ than girls.
A. sensitive B. careful C. aggressive D. delicate
144. Nowadays , most Chinese parents take great ____ to educate their children.
A. efforts B. attempts C. care D. pains
145. Desert plants have special ____ that allow them to remain alive in the hard conditions of the desert.
A. symbols B. features C. elements D. points
146. He felt ____ of having committed such a silly mistake.
A. ashamed B. shameful C. delighted D. miserable
147. I wandered through the cool ____ of the forest trees.
A. shadow B. darkness C. freshness D. shade
148. More help in the office would ____ me of some of this responsibility.
A. relieve B. release C. retreat D. reveal
149. He passed all the examinations , which is ____ his wildest dreams.
A. above B. beneath C. beyond D. within
150. Evidence shows that children s ____ to violence on television has long-lasting effects on their behaviors.
A. action B. extension C. explosion D. exposure
151. Cathy is not in the ____ for going to the dinner party tonight.
A. temper B. condition C. mood D. motion
152. I have omitted many things which ____ a place in the book.
A. deserve B. desire C. dismiss D. distress
153. She keeps a supply of candles in the house in case of a power ____.
A. shortage B. lack C. absence D. failure
154. Undergraduate students can have ____ to several books at a time in the school library.
A. access B. entrance C. way D. admission

155. The first prize was ____ to the best competitor of the annual sports meeting.
A. assigned B. ordered C. rewarded D. awarded
156. The man is so easy-going that people like to take too much ____ of his generosity.
A. advantage B. profit C. use D. benefit
157. The ____ cause of his failure to pass the examination was illness , but the real cause was lack of knowledge.
A. apparent B. actual C. clear D. obvious
158. Your job is not to make decisions but to ____ the decisions we make.
A. complete B. accomplish C. implement D. affect
159. He said he would accept the job , so we asked him to ____ his acceptance in writing.
A. confess B. confirm C. confuse D. conduct
160. Many experts in education believe that children learn ____ through play rather than schoolwork.
A. likely B. perfectly C. extremely D. chiefly
161. Our holiday was ____ by the continuous rain.
A. damaged B. hurt C. spoilt D. destroyed
162. Some companies have introduced ____ working time with less emphasis on pressure and more on efficiency.
A. lively B. limited C. flexible D. strict
163. The author had been qualified as a doctor but later gave up the ____ of medicine for full time writing.
A. practice B. treatment C. procedure D. process
164. With production going up steadily , the factory needs an ever-increasing supply of the ____ materials.
A. raw B. coarse C. rough D. unripe
165. English is becoming the world's first truly ____ language.
A. available B. impersonal C. universal D. national
166. What happens in the entrance exam is what ____ , not the rest of the three years.
A. counts B. occurs C. causes D. affects
167. Not surprisingly the big record companies were ____ to sign with these third-rate bands.
A. reluctant B. reliable C. anxious D. regular
168. The U. S. is known for jazz , which has gained world-wide ____.
A. belief B. experience C. respect D. popularity

169. The noise was so ____ that you had to strain your ears to hear it.
A. dim B. gentle C. faint D. subtle
170. Cash shortage often means that the only way of getting along is to wait until things improve ____.
A. usually B. surprisingly C. financially D. naturally

第十五章 日常交际用语

第一部分 十年高考真题

一、全国高考题(1998 - 2007)

- (98)1. "Can I get you a cup of tea ?" " _____. "
- A. That s very nice of you B. With pleasure
C. You can , please D. Thank you for the tea
- (99)2. "I had a really good weekend at my uncle s. "
- " _____. "
- A. Oh , that s very nice of you B. Congratulations
C. It s a pleasure D. Oh , I m glad to hear that
- (00)3. "What about having a drink ?"
- " _____ "
- A. Good idea. B. Help yourself.
C. Go ahead , please. D. Me , too.
- (00)4. "Waiter !"
- " _____ "
- "I can t eat this. It s too salty. "
- A. Yes , sir ? B. What ?
C. All right ? D. Pardon ?
- (01)5. "Good morning , Grand Hotel. "
- "Hello , I d like to book a room for the nights of the 18th and 19th. "
- " _____ "
- A. What can I do for you ? B. Just a minute , please.
C. What s the matter ? D. At your service.
- (02)6. "I m taking my driving test tomorrow. "
- " _____ . "

- | | |
|------------|--------------------|
| A. Cheers | B. Good luck |
| C. Come on | D. Congratulations |

(03)7. "I think you should phone Jenny and say sorry to her. "

" _____. It was her fault. "

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| A. No way | B. Not possible |
| C. No chance | D. Not at all |

答案 1. ADAAB 6. BA

二、上海高考题(1998 - 2007)

(98)1. "Does your brother intend to study German ?"

"Yes , he intends _____. "

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|---------|
| A. / | B. to | C. so | D. that |
|------|-------|-------|---------|

(98)2. "Hello. May I speak to Bill , please ?"

" _____. "

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| A. Bill speaking | B. I m Bill |
| C. You re speaking to Bill | D. I m speaking |

(98)3. "How did you enjoy the concert last night ?"

" ____ ! My favorite singer lost her voice and didn t even make an appearance. "

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| A. What a failure | B. What a disappointment |
| C. Awful | D. Very dissatisfactory |

(98)4. " ____ ?"

"No , thanks. I m just looking around. I ll let you know if I want anything. "

- | |
|---|
| A. Have you made up your mind what you want |
| B. What can I do |
| C. Can I help you |
| D. Do you like it |

(98)5. "I was so sure that our experiment was going to succeed , but something went wrong at the last minute. "

" ____ , but don t give it up. "

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| A. You don t mean that | B. Find out the reason |
|------------------------|------------------------|

- C. Never mind D. I'm sorry to hear that
- (98)6. "I think you look very nice in the red jacket. " " _____. "
- A. Oh , no , I don't look at all
B. I don't like red color but my mom made me wear it
C. I'm glad you think so
D. You are very kind
- (98)7. "I'm so tired , working all morning on the farm. "
"Why not take a rest , then ?"
" _____. "
- A. Because I can't afford it B. Maybe I should
C. I don't know D. Sorry , I can't tell you
- (98)8. "Have you heard that Susan has been appointed Director of the Engineering Department ?"
"After working so hard for so many years , _____. "
- A. she surely welcomes it B. she certainly deserves it
C. she is welcome to it D. it's good news
- (98)9. "Can you post these letters for us on your way home ?"
" _____. "
- A. No problem B. It's all right
C. Fine D. I hope so
- (98)10. "Do you happen to have twenty dollars with you ?"
" ____ ?"
"I want to buy a reference book. "
- A. Do you want the money B. What will you want to do
C. How much D. What for
- (98)11. "How's everything going ?"
" _____. "
- A. Everything is finished B. Everything has been done
C. Not so bad , you know D. Not doing wrong , you know
- (99)12. "My daughter has passed the exam. "
"Congratulations ! She's really intelligent. "
" _____ "

- A. No , no , she is nothing. B. Oh , thank you !
 C. Sometimes she is intelligent. D. You are right.
- (99)13. " Would you rather come on Friday or Saturday ?"
 " _____ "
 A. Yes , of course. B. The other is better.
 C. What s the matter ? D. Either would suit me.
- (99)14. " _____ "
 " It s nothing to worry about. I never liked it anyway. "
 A. I lost my Walkman this morning.
 B. I feel awful. I ve got a cold.
 C. I feel terrible , but I ve left your tape somewhere.
 D. I m sorry , but we don t have that medicine.
- (99)15. " You forgot to feed the cat again !"
 " _____ "
 A. I can t remember. B. I don t mind feeding her again.
 C. I ll do it now. D. Yes , I did. What about you ?
- (99)16. " Would you like to go to the Great Theatre with me tonight ?"
 " _____ "
 A. Yes , I would like to go to the Great Theatre with you tonight.
 B. I d love to , but I have an exam tomorrow.
 C. No , I wouldn t. D. That s all right.
- (99)17. Jane : Tom , let me introduce you to Lucy.
 Tom : _____
 Lucy : Hi , I m Lucy Lee.
 A. What s your name ? B. Hello.
 C. Nice to see you. D. Sorry , not right now.
- (99)18. " Mum , I ve cut my finger. It s bleeding !"
 " _____ "
 A. Let me see. B. Don t worry.
 C. Be careful. D. Let me have a look.
- (99)19. " What s happened to my library books ?"
 " _____ "

- A. I've no idea.
 B. You borrowed them from the library.
 C. You bought them yesterday.
 D. They're about long life.
- (99)20. "My children are always arguing."
 "_____"
 A. Just ignore them. B. That's right.
 C. Are you sure? D. How old is the boy?
- (99)21. "Where is Tom this morning?"
 "He's got a cold."
 "_____"
 A. Just tell him to take it easy.
 B. What's the matter with him?
 C. He is absent. D. What? Where is he?
- (00)22. "Shall I help you with that suitcase?"
 "_____"
 A. It's all right, thanks B. Yes, go ahead please
 C. I don't want to trouble you too much
 D. No, please don't do it
- (00)23. "You've given us a wonderful Chinese dinner, Mrs. Wang."
 "_____"
 A. Oh, I'm afraid I didn't cook very well
 B. I'm glad you enjoyed it
 C. Come again when you are free
 D. It's not necessary for you to say so
- (00)24. "Do you mind if I keep pets in this building?"
 "_____"
 A. I'd rather you didn't, actually
 B. Of course not, it's not allowed here
 C. Great! I love pets D. No, you can't
- (00)25. "I don't have any change with me. Will you pay the fare for me?"
 "_____"

- (00)26. "I didn't know this was a one-way street, officer."
"_____"
- A. That's all right.
B. I don't believe you.
C. How dare you say that?
D. Sorry, but that's no excuse.

三、北京春季高考题(2000 - 2005)

C. I don't guess so

D. I guess not

答案 : 1. CAAD

四、上海春季高考题(2000 - 2007)

(00) 1. "I'm so sorry for stepping on your foot. "

" _____. "

A. That's all right

B. No, it's my fault

C. You didn't hurt me at all

D. Yes, don't worry about it

(00) 2. "You've won the football game, congratulations!"

" _____. "

A. It's nice of you to say so

B. We are really lucky

C. No one else could do it

D. Oh, not really

(00) 3. "Do you feel like taking a walk in the park?"

" _____. "

A. You may ask your brother to go, too

B. Yes, but I can't afford the time

C. No, I'm really not in the mood for it this evening

D. No, thank you

(00) 4. "I wonder what the weather will be like tomorrow. "

" _____. "

A. I don't like the weather at this time of the year.

B. I don't mind if it is going to rain tomorrow.

C. Why don't you read the newspaper yourself?

D. Let's listen to the weather report on the radio at ten.

(00) 5. "Hello, John here. Can I speak to Mary, please?"

" _____. "

A. Of course, but she's out

B. She will be back in a moment

C. You may leave a message

D. Hold on, please

- (00) 6. "I'll meet you outside the cinema in an hour , OK ?"
 " _____. "
 A. No , 2 hours later B. Yes , that s a good idea
 C. OK , but I can manage D. No , I don t think so
- (00) 7. " Your tie goes very well with your shirt. "
 " _____. "
 A. Oh , I got it on sale. B. I bought it at half price.
 C. Does it really look OK ? D. No , not so nice.
- (00) 8. " Have you any oranges and apples ?"
 " _____. "
 A. Yes , madam , on the second shelf over there.
 B. The oranges are very cheap.
 C. You like apples , don t you ?
 D. Of course , we have some fruits.
- (00) 9. " Excuse me , you left this bag in the shop. "
 " _____. "
 A. It s not my fault. B. Oh , thank you.
 C. I m sorry. I m busy. D. It s mine !
- (00)10. " _____. "
 " Drop in if you have time. "
 " Sure. Bye !"
 A. Well. I really must be going now.
 B. I wonder if you could let me go now.
 C. Do you mind if I leave ?
 D. What a shame that I want to go now.
- (01)11. " Let s go swimming , shall we ?"
 " _____. "
 A. It s my pleasure B. It doesn t matter
 C. Yes , let s go D. I agree with you
- (01)12. " I enjoyed the food very much. "
 " I m glad you like it. Please drop in any time you like. "

- A. Is it all right ? B. I m afraid I won t be free.
C. Yes , I will. D. That s great.
- (01)13. “ I m afraid I can t finish the book within this week. ”
“ _____. ”
A. Please go ahead B. That s right
C. Not at all D. Take your time
- (01)14. “ Hello , may I have an appointment with the doctor ? ”
“ _____. ”
A. Sorry , he is busy at the moment.
B. Why didn t you call earlier ?
C. Certainly. May I know your name ?
D. Sorry , he doesn t want to see you.
- (01)15. “ Do you think our basketballers played very well yesterday ? ”
“ _____. ”
A. They were not nervous at all
B. They were still young
C. They played naturally
D. They couldn t have done better

答案 1. AACDD 6. BCABA 11. CCD CD

第二部分 解题指导

(一) 日常交际用语用法举例

1. 问好(GREETINGS)

对方说：“How do you do?”或：“Glad to meet you.”回答可以重复对方的招呼用语。对方说：“How are you?”在一般情况下，不管实际情况如何，总是用“Fine, thanks.”之类的话来应答，并用“ How about you ? ” “ And you ? ”来问候对方。但对非常熟悉的好友也可根据实际情况回答。

2. 道歉(APOLOGIZING)

在打扰人、纠正别人的错误时，可用“Excuse me.”。如：“Ex-

cuse me, but can you explain it again ?” ; “Excuse me, but you are wrong. ” 走路时不小心踩了别人, 可说: “I m sorry. ” 或: “I beg your pardon. ”

与人交谈, 没听清楚对方的话, 也用 “I beg your pardon. ” 或 “Pardon. ” 表示请人原谅, 并要求重复一遍。但这时用 “Excuse me. ” 就不合适。

对方道歉说 “I am sorry ”, 接受道歉可以有如下几种: “That s all right. /O. K. ” ; “Never mind. ” ; “It doesn t matter. ” ; “It s nothing. ” ; “Don t worry about it. ” ; “Don t bother. ” ; “Don t think any more about it. ” ; “It s a pleasure. ”。有时也用非常正式的形式: “Don t mention it. ”

向对方求助, 而对方爱莫能助说 “I am sorry. ” 时, 可用 “Thank you just the same. ” 回答。

3. 感谢(EXPRESSING GRATITUDE)

表示感谢可说: “Thank you very much. ” ; “Thanks a lot. / Many thanks. ” ; “It s very kind of you !” ; “I m really grateful to you. ” ; “I really don t know how I can thank you enough. ” ; “I m much obliged to you for your kindness. ” 等。

对方称赞你的新衣、手艺等时, 你的回答往往可用 “Thank you. ”。

对方向你表示感谢时, 你的回答可以有如下几种:

“That s all right. ” ; “That s OK. ” ; “You re welcome. ” ; “Don t mention it. ” ; “Not at all. ” ; “It s a pleasure. ” ; “My pleasure. ” 等。

4. 求助(ASKING FOR HELP)

对方要求你做某件事, 或征求你的意见, 十分客气地说: “Do(Would) you mind if I do (did) ?” ; “Would you mind (my) doing something ?” ; “May/ Can/ Could I do ?”

根据问话, 回答往往可用 “No. Go ahead. ” ; “Not at all. ” ; “No, of course not. ” ; “Sure. /Of course. ” 等, 表示十分乐意。

若表示无法效劳或介意, 可回答说: “I m sorry, but I do/it s not allowed. ” 等。

对方向你求助或征求你的意见说: “Would you do me a fa-

your ?” ; “ Could I ask you to (do something) for me ?” ; “ Will you (do something) for me ?” ; “ May I ask you to ?”

表示乐意从命的回答可以有以下几种 :

“ Certainly !” ; “ I d be glad to. ” ; “ I d love to. ” ; “ Why , of course. ” ; “ With (great) pleasure. ” 等。

表示无法从命的回答有 :

“ I m sorry I can t. ” ; “ No , I m afraid I can t. ” 等。

5. 祝愿(GOOD WISHES AND CONGRATULATIONS)

表示祝贺可说 : “ Congratulations !” ; “ Congratulations on your !” ; 表示祝愿可说 : “ Best wishes for you !” ; “ Wish you happiness/success/good luck/joy !” ; “ Have a nice trip/weekend/holiday/meal !” ; “ Happy birthday !” ; “ Many happy returns of the day !” 等。

回答可以根据情况用 “ Thanks. ” 或 “ Thank you. The same to you. ” 等。

6. 同情(EXPRESSING SYMPATHY)

表示同情、安慰等往往可说 : “ Bad luck. ” ; “ What a pity !” ; “ How awful !” ; “ How terrible !” ; “ Cheer up !” ; “ Everything will be all right. Don t worry !” ; “ Never mind. ” ; “ Better luck next time. ” ; “ I m very sorry to hear that. ” 等。

7. 问路 (ASKING THE WAY)

问路时可用 “ Excuse me. ” ; “ Sorry to trouble you. ” 表示请对方原谅 , 接着就可以说 : “ but could you tell me the way to ?” ; “ could you show me the way to ?” ; “ How can I get to ?”

给人指路 , 注意以下表达法 : “ Go down the ” ; “ Go along until you come to ” ; “ Go straight on until you come to ” ; “ Take the first/second turning on your right/left. ” ; “ Turn right/left at the first/second crossing. ”

8. 问天气(ASKING ABOUT THE WEATHER)

问天气可以说 : “ What s the weather like today ?” ; “ What will the weather be like today (tomorrow) ?” ; “ How is the weather ?” ; “ What s the weather forecast for today ?” ; “ What about the temperature ?” ; “ Fine weather/Nice weather , isn t it ?” 等。

回答可说：“It's fair/fair to cloudy/cloudy/windy.”；“The weatherman says it'll be ”；“The high/low will be (ten degrees centigrade).”；“Yes, it is.”“Yes, it is, isn't it?”等。

9. 介绍(INTRODUCING PEOPLE)

自我介绍可用“Hello, I'm (full name, if formal).”或“Hello, I'm ”；“Hi, my name is (first name, if informal).”或“Let me (Allow me to) introduce myself. I'm (full name).”等。

介绍别人时可用“This is ”或“I'd like you to meet ”；“May I introduce (name) to you?”；“Allow me to introduce (name) to you.”

回答往往可以用“How do you do?”；“Glad/Nice/Very pleased to meet you.”；“It's a pleasure to meet you.”等。

10. 邀请(INVITATION)

邀请的表达法有：“Do you feel like + noun/V-ing?”；“Would you like (me) to ?”；“How about ?”；“Why not ?”；“Why don't we ?”；“Would you care to ?”；“Is there anything else I can do for you?”等。

接受邀请可用：“Thank you. I'd love to. /I'd very much like to. /I'd be glad to.”；“Thanks. /Yes, please.”；“That's very nice/kind of you.”等。

拒绝邀请可用：“I'm sorry, but I ”；“I'd like to, but I'm afraid I ”；“I'd love to, but I ”；“If you don't mind, I'd rather ”；“I hate to refuse you, but I ”；“It's all right, thank you.”；“No, thanks. I can manage it myself.”等。

11. 看病(SEEING A DOCTOR)

看病时医生往往向病人询问：“What's the matter with you?”；“What's wrong with you?”；“What's your problem?”；“What's the trouble?”；“How are you feeling today?”；“How long have you been like this?”等。

回答可用“I have a headache/a running nose/a cough.”；“I have a pain in the throat/ear/chest/eye/stomach.”；“I feel sick/tired/weak/terrible.”；“I have been like this since ”等。

而后医生通常说：“Take this medicine three times a day.”；“Drink plenty of water and have a good rest.”；“It's nothing serious.”；“You'll be all right soon.”；“Take it easy.”等。

12. 告别(SAYING GOODBYE)

“再见”用语有：“Goodbye.”(formal)和“Bye.”；“Bye-bye.”；“So long.”；“See you (+time).”；“See you later.”(informal)等。

“告别”用语有“I'm afraid I must be off/going now.”；“I hope you'll excuse me, but I really think I must be going.”；“Have a pleasant journey home!”等。

13. 购物(SHOPPING)

购物时售货员向顾客提供服务时说：“Can/May I help you?”；“What can I do for you?”；“Is there something/anything I can do for you?”等。

你的回答可以是：“I'd like to buy/see”；“Will you show me?”；“May I have a look at/see?”；“Have you got any?”；“I wonder if you sell?”等。

询问价格有如下几种表达法：“How much is/are?”；“What's the price of?”；“How much does cost?”；“What's the cost of?”等。是否买下可说：“That's fine. I'll take it.”或：“That's too expensive, I'm afraid.”

14. 打电话(MAKING TELEPHONE CALLS)

英语打电话与汉语打电话在习惯表达方式上有明显的不同。

- 1) 汉语打电话一般不自报电话号码。英语打电话时，若接通后，接电话者常常自报机构名称，如系私人住宅，则报电话号码。
- 2) 汉语电话中说“我是……”，英语自报姓名不用“I am”，而用“This is speaking.”这一句型或其他省略形式。如：“This is Mr John Smith speaking.”；“It's Smith speaking.”；“Speaking.”；“This is Mr John Smith.”；“Mr John Smith speaking.”；“It's Mr Smith here.”；“John's here.”；“John speaking.”
- 3) 汉语打电话问“你是谁？”，英语打电话时不说“Who are you?”。如果想知道对方的姓名，可以用如下的句型：“Who is calling, please?”；“Who is speaking, please?”；“Who's that speaking?”

(calling) ?” ; “ Who is it ?” ; “ Is that ?” ; “ May I have your name , please ?”

4) 汉语打电话结束时一般不说“ 谢谢来电 ” , 英语打电话一般都有“ Thanks for calling ” 之类的客套话。

5) 打电话想留言 , 可以用如下句型 :

“ Could you take a message ?” ; “ May I leave a message ?” ; “ Do you think I could leave a message ?”

6) 电话中请人留言 , 可以用如下句型 :

“ Would you like to leave a message ?” ; “ Can I take a message ?”

7) 请别挂断电话可说 :

“ Hold the line , please. ” ; “ Just a moment , please. ” ; “ Hang on. ” ; “ Hold on. ” 等。

(二) 口语中替代词 do , so , do so , not 和 to 的使用情况

1. 替代词 do 的用法

1) 用于避免重复前面的动词 , 常用于比较级的句中。例如 :

She doesn't know any more than I do.

He doesn't help as much as she does.

2) 可替代动词词组或动词词组中心词。例如 :

{ - I hate it when people talk with their mouths full.

{ - Everybody does.

{ Have they moved their furniture ?

{ They have done the desks , but that's all so far.

Jane looks very happy. She seems happier now than she did last time we met.

She plays the piano better than she does the guitar.

2. 替代词 so 的用法

替代词 so 一般同表示个人看法或想法的动词连用。

1) 代替被省略的某个词或词组。例如 :

He often behaved proudly but he did not always behave so. (替代副词).

Prices at present are reasonably stable , and will probably remain so

(替代形容词短语).

Neither of them was in love. Indeed, they did not allow themselves to be so. (替代介词短语).

2) 与下列表达意见、信念或打算等的动词连用, 代替 that 从句。

appear, become, believe, do, expect, fear, get, guess,
hope, imagine, presume, remain, say, seem, suppose,
suspect, tell, think, wish, be afraid

He is likely to win the race. All my friends say so.

{ - Will he be back ?	{ - Is he very ill ?
{ - I don't expect so.	{ - I'm afraid so.
{ - How do you know that he's leaving soon ?	
{ - He told me so.	

3) 用 why so, why not 和 if so, if not 替代完整的从句。

Have you got a free evening next week? If so, let's have dinner together.

"He puzzles me. " "Why so?"

4) 在 ask, be sure, doubt, forget, know, look, promise, remember 后不能用 so, 只能用替代词 it 或 that, 或接从句。例如:

She is over forty, but she doesn't look it.

I doubt it. (正) I doubt so. (误)

Why do you ask that? (正) Why do you ask so? (误)

3. 替代词 do so 的用法

1) do so 替代“动词 + 宾语”或“动词 + 宾语 + 状语”结构。例如:

He asked me to stop the car, and I did so. (do so = stop the car)

She hoped that he would search the room carefully and he did so.

(do so = search the room carefully)

do so 与 do it, do that 含义相近。例如:

{ - John abandoned his car during the last snowstorm.
{ - I wonder why he did so/it/that.
{ - Bob kicked the door several times.
{ - He always does so/it/that when he wants to attract
attention.

注意 do so, do it, do that 虽含义相近,但 do so 比较正式,do that 更加强调,do it 所指代的行为比较具体。

2) do it, do that 与 do so 的区别:

①替代同一主语做的已提到的动作,用 do so。当两个句子不是同一个主语时,用 do it 或 do that,通常不用 do so。例如:

He seemed somewhat reluctant to explain, but finally did so.

I promised to get the tickets, and I will do so as soon as possible.

I was unable to contact the lawyer about the court appearance. Can the clerk do it/that tomorrow?

I always eat peas with honey. My wife never does.

②当我们描述某种行为(activity)而不是某个具体的动作(action)时,通常用 do so,不用 do it 或 do that。例如:

Anyone wishing to interrupt with questions should feel free to do so.

When you want to get fit, you should only do so within a planned exercise programme.

3) do so 可用于不是同一主语的情况:

①在 not either 句中。例如:

"Peter can't drive a car." "No, Paul can't do so, either."

②在 neither/nor 引导的倒装句中。例如:

"Peter can't drive a car." "No, neither can Paul do so."

③用疑问句形式以不同主语对前句呼应时。例如:

"Will Susan play the piano?" "Yes, will Ann do so?"

4) 不能用 do so, do it, do that 来替代的情况:

若动词短语描述的是我们无法控制的行为,如由 enjoy, lose, forget, remember 之类的动词构成的短语,只能用 do 来替代。例如:

He lost her money. I wasn't surprised that he $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{did. (正)} \\ \text{did so. (误)} \end{array} \right.$

She told me not to forget the cake in the oven, but I did.

5) in doing so 或 in so doing 是个常见结构。例如:

In doing so, she gave a little sigh.

In so doing they only demonstrated their lack of confidence.

6) do so 一般只用于替代动作动词,不替代静态动词。例如:

She said she would go with me , but she didn't do so.

Does Alice feel better today ? { I think she does. (正)
I think she does so. (误)
Yes , she does so. (误)

4. 替代词 not 的用法

1) 替代词 not 常与下列动词连用 , 代替 that 从句 :

appear , believe , expect , fear , guess , hope , imagine ,
presume , suppose , suspect , think , wish

“ Will it rain today ? ” “ I hope not. ”

“ Do you think he will come today ? ” “ I suppose not. ”

2) 替代词 not 常与下列形容词和副词连用 , 代替 that 从句 :

afraid , perhaps , possibly , probably , certainly ,
absolutely , surely

“ Does he really know you ? ” “ Surely / Certainly not. ”

“ Have you got a 10 to lend me ? ” “ I'm afraid not. ”

3) 替代词 not 可与 why 和 if 连用 , 用来替代完整的从句 , 表示否定。例如 :

“ He didn't catch the bus yesterday. ” “ Why not ? ”

Is anybody feeling cold ? If not , let's turn off the heating.

4) 替代词 not 不可用于个别表示说话的动词后 , 但主语是非特指的人称时除外。例如 :

She said so. (正) She said not. (误)

John told me so. (正) John told me not. (误)

但可以说 :

They say not. It seems/appears not. It says not.

5. 替代词 to 的用法

1) 当从上下文能够知道不定式短语的内容时 , 为避免重复 , 用替代词 to 代替不定式后被省略的动词。替代词 to 常与下列动词连用 :

care , expect , forget , hope , intend , like , love , mean ,
oblige , prefer , refuse , seem , try , want , wish

I asked him to see the film , but he didn't want to.

A :Would you like to go and watch the football game with me ?

B : { Yes , I d like to. In fact I love to.
I prefer not to.

2) 替代词 to 常与下列助动词连用 , 置于句末 :

have , need , ought , be able , be going , used

I didn t want to go there , but I had to.

A :Do they live here ? B :No , but they used to.

3) 替代词 to 常与下列形容词连用 :

afraid , glad , happy , pleased , delighted

A :Will you join us in the game ? B :I d be glad to.

4) 如果不定式之后的动词是 be 或 have , 通常在替代词 to 后保留 be 或 have. 例如 :

A :Aren t you the manager ? B :No , but I used to be.

A :He hasn t finished yet. B :Well , he ought to have.

5) 当 like , want , wish 出现在 as , if , what 或 when 后面时 , to 常省略不用. 例如 :

Come here when you want.

You may stay as long as you like.

You can go out if you like.

6) 注意下面的表达法

I d like to mend your radio , but I don t know how to.

Why didn t he come at eight ? He was told to.

If I forget to do it , would you remind me to ?

第三部分 分类练习

1. “ How do you do ? ” “ _____ ”

A. How do you do ?

B. Quite better.

C. Very well.

D. Fine , thank you.

2. “ How are you ? ” “ _____ ”

A. How do you do ?

B. How are you ?

C. Fine , thank you.

D. All right.

3. "I'm sorry to have caused you so much trouble." " ____ "
- Which of the following is wrong ?
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. Never mind. | B. You're welcome. |
| C. It doesn't matter. | D. Don't worry about it. |
| E. That's all right. | F. It's nothing. |
| G. Don't think any more about it. | H. That's OK. |
4. "Will you carry this box for me please?" " ____ "
- Which of the following is wrong ?
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| A. Certainly. | B. I'd be glad to. |
| C. With pleasure. | D. You're welcome. |
| E. All right. | F. I'd be delighted to. |
| G. I'm sorry I can't. | H. No, I'm afraid I can't. |
5. "I am afraid there's something wrong with my leg." " ____ "
- Which of the following is wrong ?
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| A. Bad luck. | B. Don't worry. |
| C. What a pity ! | D. Don't mention it. |
| E. It's just too bad. | F. I'm sorry to hear that. |
6. " ____ tomorrow?" "It's going to be sunny."
- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. What will the weather be like | B. What does the weather like |
| C. What's the weather like | D. What's the weather going to like |
7. "Thank you for your kind help." " ____ "
- Which of the following is wrong ?
- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| A. You're welcome. | B. Not at all. |
| C. Don't mention it. | D. It doesn't matter. |
| E. That's all right. | F. It's a pleasure |
| G. My pleasure. | |
8. "Hello. 5688572." " ____ "
- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. Hello. Is John in ? | B. Hello. Would you leave a message ? |
| C. Thanks for calling. | D. This is 5688572 ! |
9. "Would you like to leave a message?" " ____ "
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. It's a pleasure. Bye. | B. Thanks a lot. Bye. |
| C. Could you please tell her I rang ? | D. What can I do for you ? |
10. "I'm sorry to have kept you waiting for so long." " ____ "
- "My watch stopped working."

- A. Yes , I do
B. No , I hope not
C. Sorry , I don't think so
D. No , thanks just the same
22. Our monitor thinks Class Two will win the game , but _____.
A. I believe not
B. I'm afraid so
C. I hope so
D. I don't think it does
23. " _____ ? " " It's Mary speaking. "
A. Who are you
B. Who's that speaking
C. Are you Mary
D. What's this
24. " Who's that boy talking to the girl ? " " _____. "
A. He is my brother
B. He is young
C. He is a student
D. He is seventeen
25. " What's his work like ? " " _____. "
A. He works well
B. He is a teacher
C. It's quite good
D. His work is like a nurse
26. " You look very beautiful in that dress. Where did you get it ? "
" _____ "
A. What do you mean by that ?
B. Oh yes. It was very cheap.
C. Thank you. It's a present.
D. Please don't mention it.
27. " I'm sorry. I've lost your pen. Let me buy you a new one. "
" _____ "
A. Thank you just the same.
B. Never mind. I've got several pens.
C. Of course. You may.
D. I do appreciate your offering me a new one.
28. " The music is too loud. Could you please turn down the radio a bit ? "
" _____ "
A. Sorry. I didn't know you were reading.
B. Thank you. It's very kind of you.
C. Don't trouble. I like music.
D. Oh , it's an honour for me to do so.
29. " Do you think living in the country has advantages ? "
" _____. "
A. Yes , perfectly
B. Yes , it is
C. Nothing at all
D. Well , that depends
30. " Shall I help you with the cleaning ? "

“ No , Tom. I can manage , but _____. ”

A. it doesn't matter

B. I don't mind

C. thank you just the same

D. it's my pleasure

第十六章

近两年全国部分省市高考试题 (语法和词汇部分)

一、2006 年

1) 全国(1)	2) 全国(2)	3) 天津	4) 重庆	5) 江苏	6) 浙江
7) 福建	8) 湖南	9) 湖北	10) 广东	11) 安徽	12) 江西
13) 山东	14) 辽宁	15) 四川	16) 陕西		

1) 全国(1)(河南,河北,山西,海南,广西等地区)

- The house belongs to my aunt but she ____ here any more.
A. hasn't lived B. didn't live C. hadn't lived D. doesn't live
- We ____ the last bus and didn't have any money for taxi, so we had to walk home.
A. reached B. lost C. missed D. caught
- See the flags on the top of the building? That was ____ we did this morning.
A. when B. which C. where D. what
- There's no light on - they ____ be at home.
A. can't B. mustn't C. needn't D. shouldn't
- Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest bank is, please?
- ____ Oh, yes! It's past the post office, next to a big market.
A. Mm, let me think. B. Oh, I beg your pardon?
C. You're welcome. D. What do you mean?
- If I can help ____, I don't like working late into the night.
A. so B. that C. it D. them
- Mike didn't play football yesterday because he had ____ his leg.
A. damaged B. hurt C. hit D. struck
- ____ he has limited technical knowledge, the worker has a lot of experience.
A. Since B. Unless C. As D. Although
- The water ____ cool when I jumped into the pool for morning exercise.
A. was felt B. is felt C. felt D. feels
- Hello, could I speak to Mr. Smith?
- Sorry, wrong number. There isn't ____ Mr. Smith here.

- A. / B. a C. the D. one
11. Eliza remembers everything exactly as if it ____ yesterday.
A. was happening B. happens C. has happened D. happened
12. ____ and happy , Tony stood up and accepted the prize.
A. Surprising B. Surprised
C. Being surprised D. to be surprising
13. Please remind me ____ he said he was going. I may be in time to see him off.
A. where B. when C. how D. what
14. - I wonder if I could possibly use your car for tonight ?
- _____. I m not using it anyhow.
A. Sure , go ahead B. I don t know C. Yes , indeed D. I don t care
15. Mary , ____ here - everybody else , stay where are.
A. come B. comes C. to come D. coming

2) 全国(2)(黑龙江 , 吉林等地区)

1. - Will you be able to finish your report today ?
- _____.
A. I like it B. I hope so C. I ll do so D. I d love it
2. We forgot to bring our tickets , but please let us enter , _____.
A. do you B. can we C. will you D. shall we
3. Your story is perfect ; I ve never heard ____ before.
A. the better one B. the best one C. a better one D. a good one
4. It was not until she got home ____ Jennifer realized she had lost her keys.
A. when B. that C. where D. before
5. We hope that as many people as possible ____ join us for the picnic tomorrow.
A. need B. must C. should D. can
6. It is no ____ arguing with Bill because he will never change his mind.
A. use B. help C. time D. way
7. John , a friend of mine , who got married only last week , spent \$ 3 , 000 more than he ____ for the wedding.
A. will plan B. has planned C. would plan D. had planned
8. We thought there were 35 students in the dining hall , ____ , in fact , there were 40.
A. while B. whether C. what D. which
9. - Did you take enough money with you ?
- No , I needed ____ I thought I would.
A. not so much as B. as much as C. much more than D. much less than
10. Mary wanted to travel around the world all by herself , but her parents did not ____

her to do so.

A. forbid B. allow C. follow D. ask

11. - What did your parents think about your decision ?

- They always let me do ____ I think I should.

A. when B. that C. how D. what

12. We often provide our children with toys , footballs or basketballs , ____ that all children like these things.

A. thinking B. think C. to think D. thought

13. There were a lot of people standing at the door and the small girl couldn't get ____.

A. between B. through C. across D. beyond

14. I know you don't like ____ music very much. But what do you think of ____ music in the film we saw yesterday ?

A. / ; / B. the ; the C. the ; / D. / ; the

15. As you can see , the number of cars on our roads ____ rising these days.

A. was keeping B. keep C. keeps D. were keeping

3) 天津

1. We had a picnic last term and it was a lot of fun , so let's have ____ one this month.

A. the other B. some C. another D. other

2. The cost of living in Glasgow is among the lowest in Britain , ____ the quality of life is probably one of the highest.

A. since B. when C. as D. while

3. - Did Linda see the traffic accident ?

- No , no sooner ____ than it happened.

A. had she gone B. she had gone C. has she gone D. she has gone

4. What we used to think ____ impossible now does seem possible.

A. is B. was C. has been D. will be

5. If you are traveling ____ the customs are really foreign to your own , please do as the Romans do.

A. in which B. what C. when D. where

6. We want to rent a bus which can ____ 40 people for our trip to Beijing.

A. load B. hold C. fill D. support

7. A good story does not necessarily have to have a happy ending , but the reader must not be left ____.

A. unsatisfied B. unsatisfying
C. to be unsatisfying D. being unsatisfied

8. Most of us know we should cut down on fat , but knowing such things isn't much help

when it ____ shopping and eating.

A. refers to B. speaks of C. focuses on D. comes to

9. - I'm thinking of the test tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't pass this time.

- ____! I'm sure you'll make it.

A. Go ahead B. Good luck C. No problem D. Cheer up

10. Don't respond to any e-mails ____ personal information, no matter how official they look.

A. searching B. asking C. requesting D. questioning

11. We ____ have proved great adventurers, but we have done the greatest march ever made in the past ten years.

A. needn't B. may not C. shouldn't D. mustn't

12. The Beatles, ____ many of you are old enough to remember, came from Liverpool.

A. what B. that C. how D. as

13. Fitness is important in sport, but of at least ____ importance are skills.

A. fair B. reasonable C. equal D. proper

14. There is much chance ____ Bill will recover from his injury in time for the race.

A. that B. which C. until D. if

15. Finding information in today's world is easy. The ____ is how you can tell if the information you get is useful or not.

A. ability B. competition C. challenge D. knowledge

4) 重庆

1. I have to go to work by taxi because my car ____ at the garage.

A. will be repaired B. is repaired
C. is being repaired D. has been repaired

2. - Would you like some more soup?

- _____. It is delicious, but I've had enough.

A. Yes, please B. No, thank you C. Nothing more D. I'd like some

3. In time of serious accidents, ____ we know some basic things about first aid, we can save lives.

A. whether B. until C. if D. unless

4. I've tried very hard to improve my English. But by no means ____ with my progress.

A. the teacher is not satisfied B. is the teacher not satisfied
C. the teacher is satisfied D. is the teacher satisfied

5. Everywhere man has cut down ____ forests in order to grow crops, or to use ____ wood as fuel or as building material.

A. the; the B. the; / C. /; the D. /; /

6. Isn't it time you got down to _____ the papers ?
 A. mark B. be marked C. being marked D. marking
7. _____ and I'll get the work finished.
 A. Have one more hour B. One more hour
 C. Given one more hour D. If I have one more hour
8. - How are you managing to do your work without an assistant ?
 - Well , I _____ somehow.
 A. get along B. come on C. watch out D. set off
9. My grandma still treats me like a child. She can't imagine _____ grown up.
 A. my B. mine C. myself D. me
10. Customers are asked to make sure that they _____ the right change before leaving the shop.
 A. will give B. have been given C. have given D. will be given
11. I _____ in London for many years , but I've never regretted my final decision to move back to China.
 A. lived B. was living C. have lived D. had lived
12. - Mr. Gordon asked me to remind you of the meeting this afternoon. Don't you forget it !
 - OK , I _____.
 A. won't B. don't C. will D. do
13. Nobody believed his reason for being absent from the class _____ he had to meet his uncle at the airport.
 A. why B. that C. where D. because
14. I saw a woman running toward me in the dark. Before I could recognize who she was , she had run back in the direction _____ she had come.
 A. of which B. by which C. in which D. from which
15. - How about seeing the new movie at the theatre tonight ?
 - _____ , but I've got to go over my notes for tomorrow's exam.
 A. All right B. Sounds great
 C. I can't D. No , I am terrible sorry

5) 江苏

1. - I think I'll give Bob a ring.
 - You _____. You haven't been in touch with him for ages.
 A. will B. may C. have to D. should
2. My most famous relative of all , _____ who really left his mark on America , was Rebs Sussel , my great-grandfather.

- A. one B. the one C. he D. someone
3. - I don't suppose the police know who did it.
 - Well, surprisingly they do. A man has been arrested and ____ now.
 A. has been questioned B. is being questioned
 C. is questioning D. has questioned
4. This new model car is so expensive that it is ____ the reach of those with average incomes.
 A. over B. within C. beyond D. below
5. - Are you going to have a holiday this year?
 - I'd love to. I can't wait to leave this place ____.
 A. off B. out C. behind D. over
6. The committee is discussing the problem right now. It will ____ have been solved by the end of next week.
 A. eagerly B. hopefully C. immediately D. gradually
7. Although medical science ____ control over several dangerous diseases, what worries us is that some of them are returning.
 A. achieved B. has achieved C. will achieve D. had achieved
8. - It took me ten years to build up my business, and it almost killed me.
 - Well, you know what they say. ____.
 A. There is no smoke without fire B. Practice makes perfect
 C. All roads lead to Rome D. No pains, no gains
9. The owner of the cinema needed to make a lot of improvements and employ more people to keep it running, ____ meant spending tens of thousands of pounds.
 A. who B. that C. as D. which
10. Whenever he was asked why he was late for class, he would answer carelessly, always ____ the same thing.
 A. saying B. said C. to say D. having said
11. ____ environmental damage is done, it takes many years for the ecosystem(生态系统) to recover.
 A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once
12. - There is a story here in the paper about a 110-year-old man.
 - My goodness! I can't imagine ____ that old.
 A. to be B. to have been C. being D. having been
13. I wish you'd do ____ talking and some more work. Thus things will become better.
 A. a bit less B. any less C. much more D. a little more
14. A poet and artist ____ coming to speak to us about Chinese literature and painting tomorrow afternoon.

- A. is B. are C. was D. were
15. We haven't settled the question of ____ it is necessary for him to study abroad.
A. if B. where C. whether D. that

6) 浙江

1. - Would you take this along to the office for me ?
- ____.
A. With pleasure B. That's right C. Never mind D. Don't mention it
2. We won't keep winning games ____ we keep playing well.
A. because B. unless C. when D. while
3. Don't worry if you can't come to ____ party - I'll save ____ cake for you.
A. the ; some B. a ; much C. the ; any D. a ; little
4. ____ is our belief that improvements in health care will lead to a stronger , more prosperous economy.
A. As B. That C. This D. It
5. When ____ different cultures , we often pay attention only to the differences without noticing the many similarities.
A. compared B. being compared C. comparing D. having compared
6. This machine _____. It hasn't worked for years.
A. didn't work B. wasn't working C. doesn't work D. isn't working
7. The company had about 20 notebook computers but only one-third ____ used regularly. Now we have 60 working all day along.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
8. We're trying to ring you back , Bryan , but we think we ____ your number incorrectly.
A. looked up B. took down C. worked out D. brought about
9. ____ by keeping down costs will PowerData hold its advantage over other companies.
A. Only B. Just C. Still D. Yet
10. Letterboxes are much more ____ in the UK than in the US , where most people have a mailbox instead.
A. common B. normal C. ordinary D. usual
11. I would like a job which pays more , but ____ I enjoy the work I'm doing at the moment.
A. in other words B. on the other hand
C. for one thing D. as a matter of fact
12. Progress so far has been very good. ____ , we are sure that the project will be completed on time.

A. However B. Otherwise C. Therefore D. Besides

13. I was given three books on cooking , the first ____ I really enjoyed.
A. of that B. of which C. that D. which
14. If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow , why don't you take ____ ? I won't read them this week.
A. all B. any C. either D. both
15. We always keep ____ spare paper , in case we run out.
A. too much B. a number of C. plenty of D. a good many
16. My friend , who ____ on the International Olympic Committee all his life , is retiring next month.
A. served B. is serving C. had served D. has served
17. - If you like I can do some shopping for you.
- That's a very kind ____.
A. offer B. service C. point D. suggestion
18. It remains ____ whether Jim'll be fit enough to play in the finals.
A. seen B. to be seen C. seeing D. to see
19. - Could I have a word with you , Mum ?
- Oh dear , if you ____.
A. can B. must C. may D. should
20. - What should I do first ?
- The instructions ____ that you should mix flour with water carefully first.
A. go B. tell C. write D. say

7) 福建

1. - Who called me this morning when I was out ?
- A man calling ____ Robert.
A. him B. himself C. his D. /
2. Look out ! Don't get too close to the house ____ roof is under repair.
A. whose B. which C. of which D. that
3. Sorry , Madam. You'd better come tomorrow because it's ____ the visiting hours.
A. during B. at C. beyond D. before
4. Ladies and gentlemen , please fasten your seat belts. The plane ____.
A. takes off B. is taking off C. has taken off D. took off
5. - How long do you think it will be ____ China sends a manned spaceship to the moon ?
- Perhaps two or three years.
A. when B. until C. that D. before

6. Green products are becoming more and more popular because they are environmental-ly ____.
- A. friendly B. various C. common D. changeable
7. If it were not for the fact that she ____ sing , I would invite her to the party.
- A. couldn't B. shouldn't C. can't D. might not
8. She ____ Japanese when she was in Japan. Now she can speak it freely.
- A. picked out B. made out C. made up D. picked up
9. I'm sure you'd rather she went to school by bus , ____ ?
- A. hadn't you B. wouldn't you C. aren't I D. didn't she
10. ____ homework did we have to do that we had no time to take a rest.
- A. So much B. Too much C. Too little D. So little
11. The moment the 28th Olympic Games ____ open , the whole world cheered.
- A. declared B. have been declared
- C. have declared D. were declared
12. The workers will go on strike if the demands they ____ put forward are turned down.
- A. could B. would C. / D. had
13. ____ for the breakdown of the school computer network , Alice was in low spirits.
- A. Blaming B. Blamed C. To blame D. To be blamed
14. - It's burning hot today , isn't it ?
- Yes. ____ yesterday.
- A. So was it B. So it was C. So it is D. So is it
15. Always read the ____ on the bottle carefully and take the right amount of medicine.
- A. explanations B. instructions C. descriptions D. introductions

8) 湖南

1. The wild flowers looked like a soft orange blanket ____ the desert.
- A. covering B. covered C. cover D. to cover
2. In ____ review of 44 studies , American researchers found that men and women who ate six key foods daily cut the risk of ____ heart disease by 76% .
- A. a ; the B. the ; a C. a ; / D. / ; the
3. A man cannot smile like a child , ____ a child smiles with his eyes , while a man smiles with his lips alone.
- A. so B. but C. and D. for
4. I was giving a talk to a large group of people , the same talk I ____ to half a dozen other groups.
- A. was giving B. am giving C. had given D. have given

5. Fred , who had expected how it would go with his daughter , had a great worry ____ his mind.
A. on B. in C. with D. at
6. As the busiest woman in Norton , she made ____ her duty to look after all the other people s affairs in that town.
A. this B. that C. one D. it
7. ____ achievement , last week s ministerial meeting of the WTO here earned a low , though not failing , grade.
A. In terms of B. In case of C. As a result of D. In face of
8. If you think that treating a woman well means always ____ her permission for things , think again.
A. gets B. got C. to get D. getting
9. Although she did not know Boston well , she made her way ____ to the Home Circle Building.
A. easy enough B. enough easy C. easily enough D. enough easily
10. We saw several natives advancing towards our party , and one of them came up to us , ____ we gave some bells and glasses.
A. to which B. to whom C. with whom D. with which
11. I had just stepped out of the bathroom and was busily drying myself with a towel ____ I heard the steps.
A. while B. when C. since D. after
12. Some aspects of a pilot s job ____ be boring , and pilots often ____ work at inconvenient hours.
A. can ; have to B. may ; can C. have to ; may D. ought to ; must
13. As the twentieth century came to a close , the raw materials for a great national literature were at hand , waiting ____.
A. to use B. to be used C. to have used D. to be using
14. With his work completed , the businessman stepped back to his seat , feeling pleased ____ he was a man of action.
A. which B. that C. what D. whether
15. In a room above the store , where a party ____ , some workers were busily setting the table.
A. was to be held B. has been held C. will be held D. is being held

9) 湖北

1. To make members of a team perform better , the trainer first of all has to know their ____ and weaknesses.

- A. strengths B. benefits C. techniques D. values
2. One of the best ways for people to keep fit is to ____ healthy eating habits.
A. grow B. develop C. increase D. raise
3. The ____ on his face told me that he was angry.
A. impression B. sight C. appearance D. expression
4. At the meeting they discussed three different ____ to the study of mathematics.
A. approaches B. means C. methods D. ways
5. It's already 10 o'clock. I wonder how it ____ that she was two hours late on such a short trip.
A. came over B. came out C. came about D. came up
6. The building around the corner caught fire last night. The police are now ____ the matter.
A. seeing through B. working out C. looking into D. watching over
7. As I grew up in a small town at the foot of a mountain, the visit to the village ____ scenes of my childhood.
A. called up B. called for C. called on D. called in
8. Although the wind has ____, the rain remains steady, so you still need a raincoat.
A. turned up B. gone back C. died down D. blown out
9. - I was wondering if we could go skiing on the weekend.
- ____ good.
A. Sound B. Sounded C. Sounding D. Sounds
10. I'm certain David's told you his business troubles. ____, it's no secret that he owes a lot of money to the bank.
A. However B. Anyway C. Therefore D. Though
11. ____ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.
A. Would you be B. Should you be C. Could you be D. Might you be
12. I won't tell the student the answer to the math problem until he ____ on it for more than an hour.
A. has been working B. will have worked
C. will have been working D. had worked
13. AIDS is said ____ the biggest health challenge to both men and women in that area over the past few years.
A. that it is B. to be
C. that it has been D. to have been
14. Don't sit there ____ nothing. Come and help me with this table.
A. do B. to do C. doing D. and doing
15. - You know who came yesterday?

- Yao Ming? We had a basketball match.
- _____. He came and watched the game.
- A. You guessed it! B. How did you know that?
C. Well done! D. That was good news!

10) 广东

1. - Andrew won't like it , you know.
- ____? I don't care what Andrew thinks !
A. So what B. So where C. So why D. So how
2. - Must he come to sign this paper himself ?
- Yes , he _____.
A. need B. must C. may D. will
3. I thought she was famous , but none of my friends have ____ heard of her.
A. even B. ever C. just D. never
4. The traffic lights ____ green and I pulled away.
A. came B. grew C. got D. went
5. I was still sleeping when the fire ____ , and then it spread quickly.
A. broke out B. put out C. came out D. got out
6. Jenny was very sad over the loss of the photos she has shot at Canada , ____ this was a memory she especially treasured.
A. as B. if C. when D. where
7. Sarah had her washing machine repaired the day before yesterday , ____ she ?
A. had B. did C. hadn't D. didn't
8. Much of the power of the trade unions has been lost. ____ , their political influence should be very great.
A. As a result B. As usual C. Even so D. So far
9. No matter how frequently ____ , the works of Beethoven still attract people all over the world.
A. performed B. performing C. to be performed D. being performed
10. ____ this cake , you'll need 2 eggs , 175g sugar and 175g flour.
A. Having made B. Make C. To make D. Making
11. " You can't have this football back ____ you promise not to kick it at my car again , " the old man said firmly.
A. because B. since C. when D. until
12. The young girl sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. She ____ before.
A. hasn't flown B. didn't fly C. hadn't flown D. wasn't flying
13. So difficult _____ it to work out the problem that I decided to ask Tom for advice.

- A. I did find B. did I find C. I have found D. have I found
14. You have been sitting on my hat and now it is badly out of ____.
- A. date B. shape C. order D. balance
15. - Excuse me , Sir , is the swimming pool open all day ?
 - _____. Only from 6 00 p. m. to 10 00 p. m.
- A. That s right B. Yes , of course
 C. Sorry , I am not sure D. Sorry , I m afraid not

11) 安徽

1. My cousin came to see me from the country , ____ me a full basket of fruits.
 A. brought B. bringing C. to bring D. had brought
2. Of the two sisters , Betty is ____ one , and she is also the one who loves to be quiet.
 A. a younger B. a youngest C. the younger D. the youngest
3. - How are you getting on with your cleaning ? Do you need my help ?
 - ____ , but I think I m all right.
 A. No , thanks B. That s OK
 C. You are helpful D. That s very kind of you
4. It was already past midnight and only three young men ____ in the tea house.
 A. left B. remained C. delayed D. deserted
5. I ____ along the street looking for a place to park when the accident ____.
 A. went ; was occurring B. went ; occurred
 C. was going ; occurred D. was going ; had occurred
6. It s quite ____ me why such things have been allowed to happen.
 A. for B. behind C. against D. beyond
7. - It s been raining for a whole week. I think it ll get fine soon.
 - _____. We are getting into the rainy season now.
 A. Yes , it will B. Of course not C. It s possible D. It s hard to say
8. Tom sounds very much ____ in the job , but I m not sure whether he can manage it.
 A. interested B. interesting C. interestingly D. interestedly
9. A warm thought suddenly came to me ____ I might use the pocket money to buy flowers for my mother s birthday.
 A. it B. when C. that D. which
10. Most of what has been said about the Smith ____ also true of the Johnsons.
 A. are B. is C. being D. to be
11. Never in my wildest dreams ____ these people are living in such poor conditions.
 A. I could imagine B. could I imagine
 C. I couldn t imagine D. couldn t I imagine

12. You may drop in or just give me a call. ____ will do.
 A. Either B. Each C. Neither D. All
13. - Four dollars a pair ? I think it's a bit too much.
 - If you buy three pairs , the price for each will ____ to three fifty.
 A. come down B. take down C. turn over D. go over
14. Catherine bought a postcard of the place she was visiting , addressed ____ to ____ and then posted it at the nearby post office.
 A. it ; her B. it ; herself C. herself ; her D. herself ; herself
15. Mr. Green stood up in defence of the 16-year-old boy , saying that he was not the one ____.
 A. blamed B. blaming C. to blame D. to be blamed

12) 江西

1. My cousin went to Canada two years ago. He ____ there for a few months and then went to America.
 A. worked B. would work
 C. would be working D. has been working
2. - I'm dead tired. I can't walk any farther , Jenny.
 - _____. Tommy. You can do it !
 A. No problem B. No hurry C. Come on D. That's OK
3. After the earthquake , the injured were cared ____ in the local hospitals or taken by air to the hospitals in the neighboring cities.
 A. of B. for C. after D. with
4. The weather turned out to be fine yesterday. I ____ the trouble to carry my umbrella with me.
 A. should have taken B. could have taken
 C. needn't have taken D. mustn't have taken
5. The hurricane damaged many houses and business buildings ; ____ , it caused 20 deaths.
 A. or else B. therefore C. after all D. besides
6. - Michael was late for Mr. Smith's oral class this morning.
 - ____ ? As far as I know , he never came late to class.
 A. How come B. So what C. Why not D. What for
7. In peace , too , the Red Cross is expected to send help ____ there is human suffering.
 A. whoever B. however C. whatever D. wherever
8. It is said that dogs will keep you ____ for as long as you want when you are feeling

lonely.

A. safety B. company C. house D. friend

9. After he became conscious , he remembered ____ and ____ on the head with a rod.

A. to attack ; hit B. to be attacked ; to be hit

C. attacking ; be hit D. having been attacked ; hit

10. Attention , coffee lovers ! We have for you , the best coffee machine ____ invented.

A. ever B. already C. even D. nowadays

11. - I reminded you not to forget the appointment.

- ____.

A. So you did B. So I do not C. So did you D. So do I

12. It took a long time for the connection between body temperature and illness ____.

A. to make B. to be made C. making D. being made

13. - Do you have anything to say for yourselves ?

- Yes , there s one point ____ we must insist on.

A. why B. where C. how D. /

14. For all these years I have been working for others. I m hoping I ll ____ my own business someday.

A. turn up B. fix up C. set up D. make up

15. I don t think this film is by far the most boring. I have seen ____.

A. better B. worse C. the best D. the worse

13) 山东

1. For him ____ stage is just ____ means of making a living.

A. a ; a B. the ; a C. the ; the D. a ; the

2. - How did you find your visit to Qingdao , Joanna ?

- ____.

A. Oh , wonderful indeed

B. I went there alone

C. First by train and then by ship

D. A guide showed me the way

3. Engines are to machines ____ hearts are to animals.

A. as

B. that

C. what

D. which

4. I d appreciate ____ if you would like to teach me how to use the computer.

A. that

B. it

C. this

D. you

5. Someone who lacks staying power and perseverance is unlikely to ____ a good researcher.

A. make

B. turn

C. get

D. grow

6. We re just trying to reach a point ____ both sides will sit down together and talk.

A. where

B. that

C. when

D. which

7. _____ team wins on Saturday will go through to the national championship.
A. No matter what B. No matter which
C. Whatever D. Whichever
8. Although the causes of cancer _____ , we do not yet have any practical way to prevent it.
A. are being uncovered B. have been uncovering
C. are uncovering D. have uncovered
9. Five people won the "China's Green Figure" award , a title _____ to ordinary people for their contributions to environmental protection.
A. being given B. is given C. given D. was given
10. - May I smoke here ?
- If you _____ , choose a seat in the smoking section.
A. should B. could C. may D. must
11. How can you expect to learn anything _____ you never listen ?
A. in case B. even if C. unless D. when
12. I just wonder _____ that makes him so excited.
A. why it does B. what he does C. how it is D. what it is
13. Police are now searching for a woman who is reported to _____ since the flood hit the area.
A. have been missing B. have got lost
C. be missing D. get lost
14. After he retired from office , Rogers _____ painting for a while , but soon lost interest.
A. took up B. saved up C. kept up D. drew up
15. A clean environment can help the city bid for the Olympics , which _____ will promote its economic development.
A. in nature B. in return C. in turn D. in fact

14) 辽宁

1. Of all ____ reasons for my decision to become a university professor , my father's advice was ____ most important one.
A. the ; a B. / ; a C. / ; the D. the ; the
2. The computer system ____ suddenly while he was searching for information on the Internet.
A. broke down B. broke out C. broke up D. broke in
3. I hear ____ boys in your school like playing football in their spare time , though others prefer basketball.

- A. quite a lot B. quite a few C. quite a bit D. quite a little
4. He was about halfway through his meal ____ a familiar voice came to his ears.
A. why B. where C. when D. while
5. I was told that there were about 50 foreign students ____ Chinese in the school , most ____ were from Germany.
A. study ; of whom B. study ; of them
C. studying ; of them D. studying ; of whom
6. - These books are too heavy for me to carry.
- ____.
A. You may ask for help B. I'll give you a hand
C. I'll do you a favour D. I'd come to help
7. The father as well as his three children ____ skating on the frozen river every Sunday afternoon in winter.
A. is going B. go C. goes D. are going
8. People have always been curious ____ how living things on the earth exactly began.
A. in B. at C. of D. about
9. I think it is necessary for my 19-year-old son to have his own mobile phone , for I sometimes want to make sure if he ____ home for dinner.
A. come B. comes C. has come D. will
10. ____ makes this shop different is that it offers more personal services.
A. What B. Who C. Whatever D. Whoever
11. It is said that the early European playing-cards ____ for entertainment and education.
A. were being designed B. have designed
C. have been designed D. were designed
12. School children must be taught how to deal with dangerous ____.
A. states B. conditions C. situations D. positions
13. - I'm sorry I'm late. I got held up in the traffic on my way here.
- ____.
A. Don't be late next time B. You should be blamed
C. It doesn't matter. I'm also late D. Never mind. Come and sit down
14. I grew up in Africa , ____ at least I should say that I spent much of the first ten years of my life there.
A. and B. or C. so D. but
15. It was after he got what he had desired ____ he realized it was not so important.
A. that B. when C. since D. as

15) 四川

1. - What a beautiful picture you've drawn !
- _____.
A. Not at all B. Thank you C. You're great D. I'm proud of you
2. Look at the timetable. Hurry up ! Flight 4026 _____ off at 18 :20.
A. takes B. took C. will be taken D. has taken
3. - Mom , what did your doctor say ?
- He advised me to live _____ the air is fresher.
A. in where B. in which C. the place where D. where
4. Start out right away , _____ you'll miss the first train.
A. and B. but C. or D. while
5. - The boss said we had only three days to finish the work.
- Don't worry. We have already _____ two thirds of it.
A. got down B. got through C. given in D. given away
6. The Chinese are proud of the 29th Olympic Games _____ in Beijing in 2008.
A. hold B. holding C. held D. to be held
7. - Did you enjoy yourself at the party ?
- Yes. I've never been to _____ one before.
A. a more excited B. the most excited
C. a more exciting D. the most exciting
8. At the foot of the mountain _____.
A. a village lie B. lies a village
C. does a village lie D. lying a village
9. - Can he take charge of the computer company ?
- I'm afraid it's _____ his ability.
A. beyond B. within C. of D. to
10. - It's thirty years since we last met.
- But I still remember the story , believe it or not , _____ we got lost on a rainy night.
A. which B. that C. what D. when
11. Of all the books on the desk , _____ is of any use for our study.
A. nothing B. no one C. neither D. none
12. - Is Jack on duty today ?
- It _____ be him. It's his turn tomorrow.
A. mustn't B. won't C. can't D. needn't
13. _____ with so much trouble , we failed to complete the task on time.
A. Faced B. Face C. Facing D. To face

14. - Do you mind my smoking here ?
 - ____
 A. No , thanks. B. No. Good idea. C. Yes , please. D. Yes. Better not.
15. - Why didn't you tell him about the meeting ?
 - He rushed out of the room ____ I could say a word.
 A. before B. until C. when D. after

16) 陕西

1. I used to earn ____ than a pound a week when I first started work.
 A. a little B. a few C. fewer D. less
2. - You look very tired. ____ at all last night ?
 - No , not really. I'm tired out now.
 A. Do you sleep B. Were you sleeping
 C. Did you sleep D. Had you slept
3. She was educated at Beijing University , ____ she went on to have her advanced study abroad.
 A. after which B. from which C. from that D. after that
4. His plan was such a good one ____ we all agreed to accept it.
 A. so B. and C. that D. as
5. My sister was against my suggestion while my brother was ____ it.
 A. in favour of B. in memory C. in honour of D. in search of
6. - I'm terribly sorry that I made your table cloth dirty.
 - ____.
 A. Never mind B. Don't mention it
 C. That's right D. Sorry
7. The construction of the two new railway lines ____ by now.
 A. has completed B. have completed
 C. have been completed D. has been completed
8. It is difficult to imagine his ____ the decision without any consideration.
 A. accept B. accepting C. to accept D. accepted
9. With no one to ____ in such a frightening situation , she felt very helpless.
 A. turn to B. turn on C. turn off D. turn over
10. According to ____ World Health Organization , health care plans are needed in all big cities to prevent ____ spread of AIDS.
 A. the ; / B. the ; the C. a ; a D. / ; the
11. Only then ____ how much damage had been caused.
 A. she realized B. she had realized

- C. had she realized D. did she realize
12. Faced with a bill for \$ 10 ,000 , ____.
- A. John has taken an extra job B. the boss has given John an extra job
C. an extra job has been taken D. an extra job has been given to John
13. He hurried to the booking office only ____ that all the tickets had been sold.
- A. to tell B. to be told C. telling D. told
14. As you worked late yesterday ,you ____ have come this morning.
- A. mayn t B. can t C. mustn t D. needn t
15. This is a very interesting book. I'll buy it , ____.
- A. how much may it cost B. no matter how it may cost
C. however much it may cost D. how may it cost

二、2007 年

1) 全国(1)	2) 全国(2)	3) 天津	4) 重庆	5) 江苏	6) 浙江
7) 福建	8) 湖南	9) 湖北	10) 安徽	11) 江西	12) 山东
13) 辽宁	14) 四川	15) 陕西			

1) 全国(1) (河北、河南、山西、广西等地区)

- Have you heard the latest news ?
- No , what ____ ?
A. is it B. is there C. are they D. are those
- Some pre-school children go to a day care center , ____ they learn songs.
A. then B. there C. while D. where
- The manager suggested an earlier date ____ the meeting.
A. on B. for C. about D. with
- It s a long time since I saw my sister.
- ____ her this weekend ?
A. Why not visit B. Why not to visit
C. Why not visiting D. Why don t visit
- The last one ____ pays the meal.
- Agreed !
A. arrived B. arrives C. to arrive D. arriving
- I won t call you , ____ something unexpected happens.
A. unless B. whether C. because D. while
- Hows your tour around the North Lake ?Is it beautiful ?
- It ____ be , but it is now heavily polluted.
A. will B. would C. should D. must
- We all know that , ____ , the situation will get worse.
A. not if dealt carefully with B. if not carefully dealt with
C. if dealt not carefully with D. not if carefully dealt with
- I smell something ____ in the kitchen. Can I call you back in a minute ?
A. burning B. burnt C. being burnt D. to be burnt
- Does this meal cost \$50 ?I ____ something far better than this !
A. prefer B. expect C. suggest D. suppose
- Between the two generations , it is often not their age , ____ their education that causes misunderstanding.
A. like B. as C. or D. but

- 2) 全国(2)(贵州、黑龙江、吉林、云南等地区)

- 460

- Oh , nothing much. In fact , I ____ of my friends back home.
 A. have just thought B. was just thinking
 C. would just think D. will just be thinking
11. Some people choose jobs for other reasons ____ money these days.
 A. for B. except C. besides D. with
12. ____ matters most in learning English is enough practice.
 A. What B. Why C. Where D. Which
13. Why don't you just ____ your own business and leave me alone ?
 A. make B. open C. consider D. mind
14. - Could you tell me the way to ____ Johnsons , please ?
 - Sorry , we don't have ____ Johnson here in the village.
 A. the ; the B. the ; a C. / ; the D. the ; /
15. - Tom , you didn't come to the party last night ?
 - I ____ , but I suddenly remembered I had homework to do.
 A. had to B. didn't C. was going to D. wouldn't

3) 天津

1. He didn't make ____ clear when and where the meeting would be held.
 A. this B. that C. it D. these
2. - Could you turn the TV down a little bit ?
 - _____. Is it disturbing you ?
 A. Take it easy B. I'm sorry C. Not a bit D. It depends
3. I wanted to catch ____ early train , but couldn't get ____ ride to the station.
 A. an ; the B. / ; the C. an ; / D. the ; a
4. ____ fire , all exits must be kept clear.
 A. In place of B. Instead of C. In case of D. In spite of
5. Hardly could he ____ this amount of work in such a short time.
 A. get through B. got off C. get into D. get down
6. The glass doors have taken the place of the wooden ones at the entrance , ____ in the natural light during the day.
 A. to let B. letting C. let D. having let
7. Lucy has ____ all of the goals she set for herself in high school and is ready for new challenges at university.
 A. acquired B. finished C. concluded D. achieved
8. It is difficult for us to learn a lesson in life ____ we've actually had that lesson.
 A. until B. after C. since D. when
9. A new ____ bus service to Tianjin Airport started to operate two months ago.

- A. normal B. usual C. regular D. common
10. - I apologize for not being able to join you for dinner.
- _____. We'll get together later.
A. Go ahead B. Not to worry C. That's right D. Don't mention it
11. Those successful deaf dancers think that dancing is an activity ____ sight matters more than hearing.
A. when B. whose C. which D. where
12. One thousand dollars a month is not a fortune but would help cover my living _____.
A. bills B. expenses C. prices D. charges
13. If Newton lived today, he would be surprised by what ____ in science and technology.
A. had discovered B. had been discovered
C. has discovered D. has been discovered
14. The final score of the basketball match was 93 - 94. We were only ____ beaten.
A. nearly B. slightly C. narrowly D. lightly
15. The seaside here draws a lot of tourists every summer. Warm sunshine and soft sands make ____ it is.
A. what B. which C. how D. where

4) 重庆

1. Jim sold most his things. He had hardly ____ left in the house.
A. anything B. everything C. nothing D. something
2. My parents live in a small village. They always keep candles in the house ____ there is a power cut.
A. if B. unless C. in case D. so that
3. - Did Alan enjoy seeing his old friends yesterday?
- Yes, he did. He ____ his old friends for a long time.
A. didn't see B. wouldn't see C. hasn't seen D. hadn't seen
4. George couldn't remember when he first met Mr. Anderson, but he was sure it was ____ Sunday because everybody was at ____ church.
A. / ; the B. the ; / C. a ; / D. / ; a
5. The children went home from the grammar school, their lessons ____ for the day.
A. finishing B. finished C. had finished D. were finished
6. - Now let's move on to another topic. Do you follow me?
- ____, Professor.
A. No, I am not B. Yes, I will C. No, I haven't D. Yes, perfectly
7. It is not who is right but what is right ____ is of importance.

- A. which B. it C. that D. this
8. Leonardo da Vinci (1452 - 1519) ____ birds kept in cages in order to have the pleasure of setting them free.
A. is said to be buying B. is said to have bought
C. had said to buy D. has said to have bought
9. - What do you think we can do for our aged parents ?
- You ____ do anything except to be with them and be yourself.
A. don't have to B. oughtn't to C. mustn't D. can't
10. Human facial expressions differ from those of animals in the degree ____ they can be controlled on purpose.
A. with which B. to which C. of which D. for which
11. She's having a lot of trouble with the new computer , but she doesn't know whom to ____.
A. turn to B. look for C. deal with D. talk about
12. - Do you have any idea what Paul does all day ?
- As I know , he spends at least as much time playing as he ____.
A. writes B. does writing C. is writing D. des write
13. When I called you this morning , nobody answered the phone. Where ____ ?
A. did you go B. have you gone C. were you D. had you been
14. ____ , his idea was accepted by all the people at the meeting.
A. Strange as might it sound B. As it might sound strange
C. As strange it might sound D. Strange as it might sound
15. - I've studied growing plants as one of my interests. Could I make some suggestions ?
- ____.
A. You will make it B. Go right ahead
C. Don't mention it D. Take it easy

5) 江苏

1. We have every reason to believe that ____ 2008 Beijing Olympic Games will be ____ success.
A. / ; a B. the ; / C. the ; a D. a ; a
2. - She looks every happy. She ____ have passed the exam.
- I guess so. It's not difficult after all.
A. should B. could C. must D. might
3. At the end of the meeting , it was announced that an agreement ____.
A. has been reached B. had been reached

- C. has reached D. had reached
4. - Have you ____ some new ideas ?
- Yeah. I'll tell you later.
A. come about B. come to C. come up with D. come out with
5. Choosing the right dictionary depends on ____ you want to use it for.
A. what B. why C. how D. whether
6. You may not have played very well today ,but at least you've got through to the next round and _____.
A. tomorrow never comes B. tomorrow is another day
C. never put off till tomorrow D. there is no tomorrow
7. - ____ you ____ him around the museum yet ?
- Yes. We had a great time there.
A. Have ; shown B. Do ; show C. Had ; shown D. Did ; show
8. - Can I smoke here ?
- Sorry. We don't allow ____ here.
A. people smoking B. people smoke C. to smoke D. smoking
9. With April 18's railway speedup , highway and air transport will have to compete with ____ service for passengers.
A. good B. better C. best D. the best
10. He is very popular among his students as he always tries to make them ____ in his lectures.
A. interested B. interesting C. interest D. to interest
11. - My room gets very cold at night.
- _____.
A. So is mine B. So mine is C. So does mine D. So mine does
12. - "Could we put off the meeting?" she asked.
- "____," he answered politely. "This is the only day everyone is available."
A. Not likely B. Not exactly C. Not nearly D. Not really
13. He was educated at the local high school , ____ he went on to Beijing University.
A. after which B. after that C. in which D. in that
14. - Do you think that housing price will keep ____ in the years to come ?
- Sorry , I have no idea.
A. lifting up B. going up C. bringing up D. growing up
15. My parents always made me ____ about myself , even when I was twelve.
A. feeling well B. feeling good C. feel well D. feel good

1. - Jack bought a new mobile phone the other day.
- ____ ? That's his third one in just one month.
A. Had he B. Did he C. Does he D. Has he
2. It is reported that the floods have left about ____ people homeless.
A. two thousand B. two-thousands C. two thousands D. two thousands of
3. - You should apologize to her , Barry.
- ____ , but it's not going to be easy.
A. I suppose so B. I feel so C. I prefer to D. I like to
4. I like ____ color of your skirt. It is ____ good match for your blouse.
A. a ; the B. a ; a C. the ; a D. the ; the
5. Why not try your luck downtown , Bob ? That's ____ the best jobs are.
A. where B. what C. when D. why
6. Work gets done ____ when people do it together , and the rewards are higher too.
A. easily B. very easy C. more easily D. easier
7. - Look ! He's running so fast !
- Hard to ____ his legs were once broken.
A. know B. imagine C. realize D. find
8. Many of them turned a deaf ear to his advice , ____ they knew it to be valuable.
A. as if B. now that C. even though D. so that
9. The children talked so loudly at dinner table that I had to struggle ____.
A. to be heard B. to have heard C. hearing D. being heard
10. It ____ we had stayed together for a couple of weeks ____ I found we had a lot in common.
A. was until ; when B. was until ; that
C. wasn't until ; when D. wasn't until ; that
11. We firmly believe that war never settles anything. It only ____ violence.
A. runs into B. comes from C. leads to D. begins with
12. Of the seven days in a week , Saturday is said to be the most popular ____ for a wedding in some countries.
A. way B. situation C. event D. choice
13. Would you please ____ this form for me to see if I've filled it in right ?
A. take off B. look after C. give up D. go over
14. Chan's restaurant on Baker Street , ____ used to be poorly run , is now a successful business.
A. that B. which C. who D. where
15. - My cat's really fat.
- You ____ have given her so much food.

- A. wouldn't B. couldn't C. shouldn't D. mustn't
16. - He got his first book published. It turned out to be a bestseller.
 - When was ____ ?
 - ____ was in 2000 when he was still in college.
- A. that ; This B. this ; It C. it ; This D. that ; It
17. Professor James will give us a lecture on the Western culture , but when and where ____ yet.
- A. hasn't been decided B. haven't decided
 C. isn't being decided D. aren't decided
18. The play had already been on for quite some time when we ____ at the New Theatre.
- A. have arrived B. arrived C. had arrived D. arrive
19. The open-air celebration has been put off ____ the bad weather.
- A. in case of B. in spite of C. instead of D. because of
20. ____ by a greater demand for vegetables , farmers have built more green houses.
- A. Driven B. being driven C. to Drive D. Having driven

7) 福建

1. - I saw Jane and her boyfriend in the park at eight yesterday evening.
 - Impossible. She ____ TV with me in my home then.
- A. watched B. had watched C. would watch D. was watching
2. - How about ____ Christmas evening party ?
 - I should say it was ____ success.
- A. a ; a B. the ; a C. a ; / D. the ; /
3. The book is of great value. ____ can be enjoyed unless you digest it.
- A. Nothing B. Something C. Everything D. Anything
4. Jenny hopes that Mr. Smith will suggest a good way to have her written English ____ in a short period.
- A. improved B. improving C. to improve D. improve
5. My MP4 player isn't in my bag. Where ____ I have put it ?
- A. can B. must C. should D. would
6. - Come on , please give me some ideas about the project.
 - Sorry. With so much work ____ my mind , I almost break down.
- A. filled B. filling C. to fill D. being filled
7. The village has developed a lot ____ we learned farming two years ago.
- A. when B. which C. that D. where
8. - Excuse me , do you have the time ?

6. It's hard for him playing against me. I've got nothing to play for, but for him, he needs to win so ____.
- A. far B. well C. little D. badly
7. To save class time, our teacher has ____ students do half of the exercise in class and complete the other half for our homework.
- A. us B. we C. our D. ours
8. Having checked the doors were closed, and ____ all the lights were off, the boy opened the door to his bedroom.
- A. why B. that C. when D. where
9. As the light turned green, I stood for a moment, not ____, and asked myself what was going to do.
- A. moved B. moving C. to move D. being moved
10. We live day by day, but in the great things, the time of days and weeks ____ so small that a day is unimportant.
- A. is B. are C. has been D. have been
11. Cathy is taking notes of the grammatical rules in class at Sunshine School, where she ____ English for a year.
- A. studies B. studied C. is studying D. has been studying
12. By serving others, a person focuses on someone other than himself or herself, ____ can be very eye-opening and rewarding.
- A. who B. which C. what D. that
13. Most birds find it safe to sleep in the trees, but ____ they have eggs or young chicks, they don't use a nest.
- A. why B. how C. unless D. where
14. "Things ____ never come again!" I couldn't help talk to myself.
- A. lost B. losing C. to lose D. have lost
15. There is an old proverb, "Love me, love my dog." But there is ____ wisdom in this: "Love me, love my book."
- A. some B. much C. more D. most

9) 湖北

1. The magazine is very ____ with young people, who like its content and style.
- A. familiar B. popular C. similar D. particular
2. Emergency line operators must always ____ calm and make sure that they get all the information they need to send help.
- A. grow B. appear C. become D. stay
3. Despite such a big difference in ____ towards what one eats, there is no doubt that

people in the west regard the Chinese food as something special.

- A. point B. idea C. attitude D. sight
4. If the firms failed to make enough money ,they would _____.
A. close down B. call off C. turn down D. set off
5. She devoted herself _____ to her research and it earned her a good reputation in her field.
A. strongly B. extremely C. entirely D. freely
6. People try to avoid public transportation delays by using their own cars , and this _____ creates further problems.
A. in short B. in case C. in doubt D. in turn
7. If we can _____ our present difficulties , then everything should be all right.
A. come across B. get over C. come over D. get off
8. He began to take political science _____ only when he left school.
A. strictly B. truly C. carefully D. seriously
9. Surely it doesn't matter where the student associations get their money from ; what _____ is what they do with it.
A. counts B. applies C. stresses D. functions
10. Water can absorb and give off a lot of heat without big changes in temperature , thus creating a _____ environment.
A. peaceful B. sensitive C. common D. stable

10) 安徽

1. The field research will take John and Paul about five months ; it will be a long time _____ we meet them again.
A. after B. before C. since D. when
2. Little _____ that we were watching his every move , so he seemed to be going his own way in this business.
A. he realized B. he didn't realize
C. didn't he realize D. did he realize
3. The teacher _____ have thought Johnson was worth it or she wouldn't have wasted time on him , I suppose.
A. should B. can C. would D. must
4. - Was Martin sorry for what he'd done ?
- _____. It was just like him !
A. Never mind B. All right C. Not really D. Not surprisingly
5. In my opinion , life in the twenty - first century is much easier than _____.
A. that used to be B. it is used to C. it was used to D. it used to be

6. They became friends again that day. Until then , they ____ to each other for nearly two years.
- A. didn't speak B. hadn't spoken
C. haven't spoken D. haven't been speaking
7. - Don't you have a good time at the party ?
- Of course I did. As a matter of fact , I had such fun that time seemed to ____ so quickly.
- A. go by B. go away C. go out D. go over
8. The school's music group will be giving a big show tomorrow night and two ____ on the weekend.
- A. more B. other C. else D. another
9. John received an invitation to dinner , and with his work ____ , he gladly accepted it.
- A. finished B. finishing C. having finished D. was finished
10. - Robert is indeed a wise man.
- Oh , yes. How often I have regretted ____ his advice !
- A. to take B. taking C. not to take D. not taking
11. - Bill , if it doesn't rain , we can go straight on and spend more time in Vienna.
- ____ I just want to hear Mozart.
- A. Well done ! B. No problem. C. That's great ! D. That's it.
12. The practice of hanging clothes across the street is a common ____ in many parts of the city.
- A. look B. sign C. sight D. appearance
13. You can only be sure of ____ you have at present ; you cannot be sure of something ____ you might get in the future.
- A. that ; what B. what ; / C. which ; that D. / ; that
14. Last week , only two people came to look at the house , ____ wanted to buy it.
- A. none of them B. both of them C. none of whom D. neither of whom
15. - Did Peter fix the computer himself ?
- He ____ , because he doesn't know much about computers.
- A. has it fixed B. had fixed it C. had it fixed D. fixed it

11) 江西

1. - Will you join us in the game ?
- Thank you , _____.
A. but why not B. but I d rather not
C. and I won t D. and I ll join
2. Don t take too much of the medicine ; it does you more harm than good if you _____.

- A. do B. take C. like D. have
3. Scientists are concerned ____ the positive effect of laughter ____ physical and mental health.
- A. of ; at B. by ; in C. of ; on D. on ; at
4. When asked why he went there , he said he was sent there ____ for a space flight.
- A. training B. being trained C. to have trained D. to be trained
5. A survey of the opinions of experts ____ that three hours of outdoor exercise a week ____ good to one s health.
- A. show ; are B. shows ; is C. show ; is D. show ; are
6. Many people have to realize that they should go on ____ balanced diet and make ____ room in their day for exercise.
- A. a ; / B. the ; a C. the ; the D. / ; a
7. - Where is my dictionary ? I remember I put it here yesterday.
- You ____ it in the wrong place.
- A. must put B. should have put
C. might put D. might have put
8. - What do you think of the performance today ?
- Great ! ____ but a musical genius could perform so successfully.
- A. All B. None C. Anybody D. Everybody
9. He was told that it should be at least three more months ____ he could recover and return to work.
- A. when B. before C. since D. that
10. The melon the Smiths served at dinner would have tasted ____ if it had been put in the fridge for a little while.
- A. good B. better C. best D. well
11. - I have got a headache.
- No wonder. You ____ in front of that computer too long.
- A. work B. are working
C. have been working D. worked
12. After graduation she reached a point in her career ____ she needed to decide what to do.
- A. that B. what C. which D. where
13. Experts have been warning ____ of the health risks caused by passive smoking.
- A. at a time B. at one time C. for some time D. for the time
14. I don t mind her criticizing me , but ____ is how she does it that I object to.
- A. it B. that C. this D. which
15. - Ouch ! You hurt me !

- I am sorry. But I ____ any harm. I ____ to drive a rat out.
 A. didn't mean ; tried B. don't mean ; am trying
 C. haven't meant ; tried D. didn't mean ; was trying

12) 山东

- ____ walk is expected to last all day , so bring ____ packed lunch.
 A. A ; a B. The ; / C. The ; a D. A ; /
- Could I speak to ____ is in charge of International Sales , please ?
 A. anyone B. someone C. whoever D. no matter who
- Have you been wasting time on computer games again ?
 - _____. I've been studying a lot and I need a break.
 A. No way B. Not really C. I don't agree D. I couldn't agree more
- ____ worries me the way he keeps changing his mind.
 A. This B. That C. What D. It
- It's the sort of work that ____ a high level of concentration.
 A. calls for B. makes up C. lies in D. stands for
- Please remain ____ until the plane has come to a complete stop.
 A. to seat B. be seated C. seating D. seated
- I can't say which wine is best - it's a(n) ____ of personal taste.
 A. affair B. event C. matter D. variety
- I have offered to paint the house ____ a week's accommodation.
 A. in exchange for B. with regard to C. by means of D. in place of
- ____ I really don't like art , I find his work impressive.
 A. As B. Since C. If D. While
- Where did you get to know her ?
 - It was on the farm ____ we worked.
 A. that B. there C. which D. where
- It is not socially ____ for parents to leave children unattended at that age.
 A. accessible B. adorable C. adaptable D. acceptable
- They ____ two free tickets to Canada , otherwise they'd never have been able to afford to go.
 A. had got B. got C. have got D. get
- The country has already sent up three unmanned spacecraft , the most recent ____ at the end of last March.
 A. has been launched B. having been launched
 C. being launched D. to be launched
- In this seaside resort , you can ____ all the comfort and convenience of modern

tourism.

A. enjoy B. apply C. receive D. achieve

15. The book was written in 1946 , ____ the education system has witnessed great changes.

A. when B. during which C. since then D. since when

13) 辽宁

1. Christmas is ____ special holiday when ____ whole family are supposed to get together.

A. the ; the B. a ; a C. the ; a D. a ; the

2. - Have you handed in your schoolwork yet ?

- Yes , I have. I guess it ____ now.

A. had graded B. is graded C. is being graded D. is grading

3. I have been living in the United States for twenty years , but seldom ____ so lonely as now.

A. have I felt B. I had felt C. I have felt D. had I felt

4. Eric received training in computer for one year , ____ he found a job in a big company.

A. after that B. after which C. after it D. after this

5. Health problems are closely connected with bad eating habits and a ____ of exercise.

A. limit B. lack C. need D. demand

6. - Excuse me , could you tell me the way to the British Museum ?

- Sorry , I'm a stranger here.

- ____.

A. Thanks anyway

B. It doesn't matter

C. Never mind

D. No problem

7. The information on the Internet gets around much more rapidly than ____ in the newspaper.

A. it B. those C. one D. that

8. Help others whenever you can ____ you will make the world a nicer place to live in.

A. and B. or C. unless D. but

9. The crowd cheered wildly at the sight of Liu Xiang , who was reported ____ the world record in the 110-meter hurdle race.

A. breaking B. having broken C. to have broken D. to break

10. - Turn off the TV , Jack. ____ your homework now ?

- Mum , just ten more minutes , please.

A. Should you be doing

B. Shouldn't you be doing

- C. Couldn't you be doing D. Will you be doing
11. Don't be _____ by products promising to make you lose weight quickly.
A. taken off B. taken out C. taken away D. taken in
12. We had to wait half an hour _____ we had already booked a table.
A. since B. although C. until D. before
13. - Has your father returned from Africa yet ?
- Yes , but he _____ here for only three days before his company sent him to Australia.
A. was B. has been C. will be D. would be
14. You can't imagine what difficulty we had _____ home in the snowstorm.
A. walked B. walk C. to walk D. walking
15. - Tony said he could fix my bicycle , but I really doubt it.
- _____. He's very good at this sort of thing.
A. Don't worry B. I couldn't agree more
C. Of course D. A piece of cake

14) 四川

1. - Thank you for joining in our conversation tonight.
- _____.
A. It's my duty B. It's all right
C. It's my pleasure D. It's nice to say so
2. How about taking _____ short break ? I want to make _____ call.
A. the ; a B. a ; the C. the ; the D. a ; a
3. When you get the paper back , pay special attention to what _____.
A. have marked B. have been marked
C. had marked D. had been marked
4. - What does the sign over there read ?
- " No person _____ smoke or carry a lighted cigarette , cigar or pipe in this area. "
A. will B. may C. shall D. must
5. Some students often listen to music _____ classes to refresh themselves.
A. between B. among C. over D. during
6. Peter received a letter just now _____ his grandma would come to see him soon.
A. said B. says C. saying D. to say
7. It is reported that two schools , _____ are being built in my hometown , will open next year.
A. they both B. which both C. both of then D. both of which
8. Mum _____ to us , " Be quiet ! Your little sister's sleeping. "

- A. whispered B. shouted C. explained D. replied
9. I'd like to study law at university ____ my cousin prefers geography.
A. though B. as C. while D. for
10. - Did you see a man in black pass by just now?
- No, sir. I ____ a newspaper.
A. read B. was reading C. would read D. am reading
11. Of the two coats, I'd choose the ____ one to spare some money for a book.
A. cheapest B. cheaper C. more expensive D. most expensive
12. Little joy can equal ____ of a surprising ending when you read stories.
A. that B. those C. any D. some
13. It was so dark in the cinema that I could hardly ____ my friend.
A. turn out B. bring out C. call out D. pick out
14. - Dad! Tom's broken a glass!
- _____. Accidents will happen.
A. No way B. Doesn't matter
C. No trouble at all D. Don't mention it.
15. The flowers his friend gave him will die unless ____ every day.
A. watered B. watering C. water D. to water

15) 陕西

1. - Could I use your computer for a few moments, please?
- _____. I'm not using it myself.
A. Come on B. It depends C. Go ahead D. That's great
2. Though he started late, Mr. Guo played the piano as well as, if ____, Miss Liu.
A. not better than B. not better C. no better than D. no better
3. ____ parents say and do has a life-long effect on their children.
A. That B. Which C. What D. As
4. As a result of the serious flood, two-thirds of the buildings in the area ____.
A. need repairing B. needs to repair C. needs repairing D. need to repair
5. ____ that Marie was able to set up new branches elsewhere.
A. So successful her business was B. So successful was her business
C. So her business was successful D. So was her successful business
6. We had wanted to finish our task by noon, but it didn't quite ____ as planned.
A. find out B. give out C. hand out D. work out
7. He and his wife are of the same ____; they both want their son to go to college.
A. soul B. spirit C. heart D. mind
8. - I think he is taking an active part in social work.

- I agree with you ____.
- A. in a way B. on the way C. by the way D. in the way
9. I told your friend how to get to the hotel , but perhaps I ____ have driven her there.
A. could B. must C. might D. should
10. ____ that she didn't do a good job , I don't think I am able than her.
A. To have said B. Having said C. to say D. Saying
11. - There is still a copy of the book in the library. Will you go and borrow ____ ?
- No , I'd rather buy ____ in the bookstore.
A. it ; one B. one ; one C. one ; it D. it ; it
12. In ____ film Cast Away , Tom Hanks plays ____ man named Chuck Noland.
A. a ; the B. the ; a C. the ; the D. a ; a
13. - ____ when has the country been open to international trade ?
- 1978 , I suppose.
A. Since B. In C. From D. after
14. I ____ there little more than a week when I set to work with the scientist.
A. would be B. have been C. had been D. will be
15. Today , we'll discuss a number of cases ____ beginners of English fail to use the language properly.
A. which B. as C. why D. where

参 考 答 案

一、名词和主谓一致

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. DACAC | 6. BCBCD | 11. ACABA | 16. ABACD | 21. DABCB |
| 26. BCBA A | 31. ACDBC | 36. DACBC | 41. CBADB | 46. BBCCB |
| 51. BBAAC | 56. BDABC | 61. DBCCB | 66. ABABB | |

二、冠词和数词

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. BBADC | 6. DBCAB | 11. CCCCC | 16. DDBCD | 21. AACDD |
| 26. DDBBC | 31. CACAA | 36. DCBB D | | |

三、代词

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. DDDBA | 6. DDCBC | 11. BAABC | 16. DDADA | 21. CACCB |
| 26. CDABB | 31. DBBDA | 36. ADCBC | | |

四、形容词和副词

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. AAACA | 6. CBDBA | 11. BBCBD | 16. AADCD | 21. ADBDB |
| 26. DADDC | 31. BBDCA | 36. ABACC | 41. ABCCA | 46. CCDAD |
| 51. DBADA | 56. CDBDC | 61. CBBBA | | |

五、情态动词

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. CCAAD | 6. BCAAA | 11. BDBDB | 16. DADDA | 21. BCBCC |
| 26. ACBCC | 31. AAADD | 36. ABCBD | 41. BDCBC | 46. BDCAC |

六、动词的时态和语态

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. CAACB | 6. DCDDC | 11. ADCDD | 16. CCBDD | 21. BABDD |
| 26. CABBD | 31. DAAAC | 36. DCABB | 41. DCDAD | 46. ABDDC |
| 51. DDDAC | 56. BCADD | 61. CDDCC | 66. DABCC | 71. BDDDD |
| 76. AACDB | 81. BDCDD | 86. DCDAD | 91. CABAD | 96. DBDDA |

七、虚拟语气

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. ACBBB | 6. BABBC | 11. CDBDC | 16. CCDCC | 21. ADDDA |
| 26. DCCBD | 31. ABCAB | 36. CBDCA | 41. CCCCA | 46. BABBD |

八、动词的非谓语形式

1. 动词不定式专项练习

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. BBACC | 6. CDABB | 11. AACAC | 16. CBACD |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|

2. 动名词专项练习

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. DCDBD | 6. CBBCA | 11. ACDDDB | 16. DDCCD |
|----------|----------|------------|-----------|

3. 分词专项练习

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. BABCD | 6. CBCDD | 11. ADDCB | 16. AACDD |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|

4. 动词的非谓语形式综合练习

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. AACAB | 6. BAACB | 11. DACDA | 16. ADDDA | 21. ADCDC |
| 26. BABAA | 31. CCADB | 36. CDCBB | 41. BCBAD | 46. ACBCD |
| 51. ACCBC | 56. BADBC | 61. ACADD | 66. DBDBB | 71. BBACD |
| 76. DAAAC | 81. BCBBA | 86. DDCDB | | |

九、介词

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. CCCAA | 6. BBCBD | 11. BDBDD | 16. BCAAD | 21. CDCBB |
| 26. ADBAB | 31. CBAAB | 36. CACAA | 41. DABAB | 46. ACABD |

十、简单句

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. CDBCC | 6. ADBBC | 11. DBDAA | 16. BDBDB | 21. BCACD |
| 26. DDAAA | 31. CADBA | 36. DDCAD | 41. CDCAB | 46. BBBDC |

十一、复合句

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. ADABC | 6. BACAC | 11. CBAAA | 16. BADCB | 21. DDBC B |
| 26. ADAAC | 31. CCABB | 36. DAADA | 41. CBDBD | 46. CCDBB |
| 51. BACAC | 56. DBAAA | 61. DABAD | 66. AADBC | 71. DACDD |
| 76. DDADD | 81. DACDA | 86. ADDAC | 91. ABBBC | 96. CCBCD |
| 101. ADCDA | 106. BCBAD | 111. DADDD | 116. DADBB | |

十二、it 的用法

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. AABCD | 6. CCADB | 11. CDACC | 16. ADCBA | 21. DBCDA |
| 26. CCAAD | 31. ACBDB | | | |

十三、倒装

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. CADCC | 6. BBDBB | 11. ADCCA | 16. BCDBA | 21. DCBBB |
| 26. CBAAA | 31. DDCCA | 36. CBCAB | 41. DDBDD | |

十四、词的用法

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. BBABD | 6. DCDBD | 11. DACBC | 16. ABDAB | 21. BDABC |
| 26. DDDDA | 31. CCCBC | 36. BDCBA | 41. BBCDB | 46. CBDAC |
| 51. CCDDD | 56. AABCA | 61. DBADA | 66. DBBAD | 71. CCDCB |
| 76. CABAC | 81. CBDDD | 86. ACABC | 91. CBDCE | 96. DAAAA |
| 101. DACCD | 106. DDBAD | 111. BBBDB | 116. DBADB | 121. DBBBC |
| 126. BBBAC | 131. ABCBB | 136. CBCAB | 141. CBCDB | 146. ADACD |
| 151. CADAD | 156. AACBD | 161. CCAAC | 166. AADCC | |

十五、日常交际用语

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. ACBDD | 6. ADACD | 11. DCBDA | 16. CCBBD | 21. DABAC |
| 26. CBADC | | | | |

十六、近两年全国部分省市高考试题(语法和词汇部分)

一、2006 年

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1) 全国(1) : 1. DCDA | 6. CBDCB | 11. DBBAA | |
| 2) 全国(2) : 1. BCCBD | 6. ADACB | 11. DABDC | |
| 3) 天津 1. CDABD | 6. BADDC | 11. BDCAC | |
| 4) 重庆 1. CBCDC | 6. DBADB | 11. AABDB | |
| 5) 江苏 1. DBBCC | 6. BBDDA | 11. DCAAC | |
| 6) 浙江 1. ABADC | 6. CDBAA | 11. BCBDC | 16. DABBD |
| 7) 福建 1. BACBD | 6. ACDBA | 11. DCBAB | |
| 8) 湖南 1. ACDCA | 6. DADCB | 11. BABBA | |
| 9) 湖北 1. ABDAC | 6. CACDB | 11. BADCA | |
| 10) 广东 1. ABBDA | 6. ADCAC | 11. DCBBD | |
| 11) 安徽 1. BCDDB | 6. DDACB | 11. BAABC | |
| 12) 江西 1. ACBCD | 6. ADBDA | 11. ABDCB | |
| 13) 山东 1. BACBA | 6. ADACD | 11. DDAAC | |
| 14) 辽宁 1. DABCD | 6. BCDDA | 11. DCDBA | |
| 15) 四川 1. BADCB | 6. DCBAB | 11. DCADA | |
| 16) 陕西 1. DCDCA | 6. ADBAB | 11. DABDC | |

二、2007 年

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|
| 1) 全国(1) : 1. ADBAC | 6. ACBAB | 11. DCDBC |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|

2) 全国(2) :	1. DCABC	6. BCADB	11. CADBC	
3) 天津	1. CBDCA	6. BDACB	11. DBDCA	
4) 重庆	1. ACDCB	6. DCBAB	11. ABCDB	
5) 江苏	1. CCBCA	6. BADBA	11. CDABD	
6) 浙江	1. BAACA	6. CBCAD	11. CDDBC	16. DABDA
7) 福建	1. DBAAA	6. BDCBC	11. DACBB	
8) 湖南	1. CACBB	6. DABBA	11. DBCAC	
9) 湖北	1. BDCAC	6. DBDAD		
10) 安徽	1. BDDCD	6. BAAAD	11. CCBDC	
11) 江西	1. BACDB	6. ADBBB	11. CDCAD	
12) 山东	1. CCBDA	6. DCADD	11. DBBAD	
13) 辽宁	1. DCABB	6. ADACB	11. DBADA	
14) 四川	1. CDBCA	6. CDACB	11. BADBA	
15) 陕西	1. CACAB	6. DDADB	11. ABACD	

**历届全国高考和上海高考
单项填空各项语法考查统计表**

年 份 语法分类	98	99	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	
名词和主谓一致	1	2		1		1	1	1			
冠词和数词	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	
代 词	2	2	2		1	2	2		1	1	
形容词和副词	2		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
情态动词	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
动词的时态和语态	3	2	3	3	2	2	3	3	3	3	
虚拟语气			1	1	2						
动词的非谓语形式	2	2	2	1	3	1	2	4	2	2	
介 词	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
简单句	1	2	3	2	1	1	2	2		2	
复合句	1	6	3	4	1	2	3	4	4	3	
IT 的用法	2		1	1			1	1			
倒 装	1	2		1		1	1	1			
词的用法	3	3	3	3	3	2	1	1		1	
日常交际用语	1	1	2	1	1	1					
总 计	20	20	20	20	20	15	15	15	15	15	
	20	20	45	40	40	30	30	30	20	20	

说明 ①斜线上方的统计数字从 1998 年至 2003 年为全国高考统考单项选择试题，从 2004 年至 2007 年为北京高考单项选择试题。

②斜线下方的统计数字为上海高考单项选择试题。